Zbornik radova ljetne škole o staroj knjizi

Summer School in the Study of Old Books

Proceedings

Sveučilište u Zadru
www.unizd.hr

Za nakladnika
prof.dr.sc. Ante Uglešić

Predsjednik Povjerenstva za izdavačku
djelatnost Sveučilišta u Zadru
prof. dr. sc. Srećko Jelušić

Odjel za knjižničarstvo
Studije iz knjižnične
i informacijske znanosti

Knjiga 1

Urednice
Prof.dr.sc. Mirna Willer
Marijana Tomić, asistent

Urednički odbor
prof. dr. sc. Tatjana Aparac-Jelušić
prof. dr. sc. Srećko Jelušić
dr. sc. Franjo Pehar
doc. dr. sc. Ivanka Stričević
dr. sc. Nives Tomašević
prof. dr. sc. Mirna Willer

Glavni urednik
prof. dr. sc. Tatjana Aparac-Jelušić

Poslijediplomski studij "Društvo znanja
i prijenos informacija"

Voditeljica doktorskog studija
Prof. dr. sc. Tatjana Aparac-Jelušić

Ljetna škola o staroj knjizi
Zadar, Hrvatska, 28.09.2009.-2.10.2009.
http://ozk.unizd.hr/ssob/

Voditeljica Ljetne škole
Prof. dr. sc. Mirna Willer

Tajnica Ljetne škole
Marijana Tomić, asistent

Financirano uz potporu Nacionalne zaklade za
znanost, visoko školstvo i tehnologijski razvoj
Republike Hrvatske

Recenzenti
Dr. sc. Cristina Dondi
Prof. dr. sc. Emil Hilje
Mr. sc. Tinka Katić

Prijevod na engleski jezik
& urednik tekstova na engleskom jeziku
Jasenka Zajec

ISBN 978-953-7237-64-6

Grafičko oblikovanje
Ljubica Marčetić Marinović

Priprema za tisak
Denis Gospić

Tisak
Naklada
200

University of Zadar
www.unizd.hr

For the Editor
Ante Uglešić PhD, Full professor

President of the Publishing
Committee of the University of Zadar
Srećko Jelušić, PhD, Associate professor

Department of Library and Information Science
Studies in Library and
Information Science

Volume 1

Editors
Mirna Willer, PhD, Associate Professor
Marijana Tomić, Research Assistant

Editorial Board
Tatjana Aparac Jelušić, PhD, Full Professor
Srećko Jelušić, PhD, Associate Professor
Franjo Pehar, PhD
Ivanka Stričević PhD, Assistant Professor
Nives Tomašević, PhD
Mirna Willer, PhD, Associate Professor

Editor-in-Chief
Tatjana Aparac Jelušić, PhD, Full Professor

Postgraduate Programme „Knowledge Society
and Information Transfer"

Director of the PhD Programme
Tatjana Aparac Jelušić, PhD, Full Professor

Summer School in the Study of Old Books
Zadar, Croatia, 28. Sept. to 2. Oct. 2009
http://ozk.unizd.hr/ssob/

Director of the Summer School
Mirna Willer, PhD, Associate Professor

Secretary to the Summer School
Marijana Tomić, Research Assistant

Financially supported by the National
Foundation for Science, Higher Education
and Technological Development of the Republic
of Croatia

Referees
Cristina Dondi, PhD
Emil Hilje, PhD, Full Professor
Tinka Katić, MIsc

Translation into English &
English Language Editor
Jasenka Zajec

ISBN 978-953-7237-64-6

Graphic design
Ljubica Marčetić Marinović

Computer processing and layout
Denis Gospić

Printed by
Issued by
200

SVEUČILIŠTE U ZADRU
UNIVERSITAS STUDIORUM JADERTINA

Summer School in the Study of Old Books

Proceedings

Edited by Mirna Willer and Marijana Tomić

Sveučilište u Zadru
Zadar, 2010.

CIP-Katalogizacija u publikaciji
Znanstvena knjižnica Zadar

UDK 094(100)(063)

LJETNA škola o staroj knjizi (2009 ; Zadar)

Zbornik radova Ljetne škole o staroj knjizi = Summer school in the study of old books : proceedings / <glavni urednik, editor-in-chief Tatjana Aparac Jelušić ; urednice Mirna Willer, Marijana Tomić ; prijevod na engleski jezik, urednik tekstova na engleskom jeziku, translation into English, English language editor Jasenka Zajec>. - Zadar : Sveučilište = University, 2010. - 342 str. : ilustr. ; 24 cm. - (Studije iz knjižnične i informacijske znanosti = Studies in library and information science ; knj. 1)

Bibliografija. - Sažeci.

ISBN 978-953-7237-64-6

130906085

CONTENTS

Foreword

In autumn 2009 the University of Zadar and its Department of Library and Information Science proudly announced the first Summer School in the Study of Old Books that was tied to the PhD programme Knowledge Society and Information Transfer. The idea of such a summer school dated from years ago but only when we started the PhD program was it possible to submit a proposal to the National Foundation for Science, Higher Education and Technological Development of the Republic of Croatia and start planning its realisation.

Since Zadar and major part of Dalmatian coast are known for their rich heritage, the main purpose of the new PhD programme was based upon the idea of interdisciplinary approach to the written cultural phenomena. In addition to the valuable archaeological sites there are many other proofs of the cultural history that makes us proud and responsible for the future and urges us to find the best ways of using our heritage. When preparing the new PhD programme we were aware of the social need to explore the written heritage, its origin, organisation, preservation and usage as part of the social memory. This approach is also in accordance with the priorities given in the national scientific research strategies, especially in regard to Croatian and Slovenian cultural identity.

We also recognised the necessity for systematic exploration of citizens' information needs and habits in the modern society with the goal to contribute towards strengthening of the role of national cultures in the development of global and especially European information infrastructure, as well as the need for systematic exploration of publishing and bookselling, other two modules offered to PhD students.

An important part of the PhD program is the so called "Heritage Module" pertaining to the necessity of stimulating and supervising research that would shed more light and bring out the data about the origin, organisation, preservation and usage of the written heritage, especially in regard to the influence of new technologies on the development of knowledge society and the transfer of information. It would also encourage critical thinking and provide prerequisites for a successful and responsible scientific work in the field of information sciences in line with the highest professional and ethical standards.

Since the beginning we aimed to enable the assessment of students' workload and their research in the framework of two basic categories: research and learning within the programme and outside it (e.g.

published research papers). Thus, the summer school was planned as a module to experience both learning and publishing in proceedings.

The Summer School in the Study of Old Books was a great challenge for a young, though ambitious department. Thanks to the well established connections with several university departments and important libraries in Europe and the United States, the recognised value of the Libraries in the Digital Age (LIDA) conference and personal efforts of professor Mirna Willer and her research assistant Marijana Tomić, we succeeded not only in involving excellent lecturers but also in getting financial support from the National Foundation for Science, Higher Education and Technological Development of the Republic of Croatia. The students came from other PhD programme as well. Among 25 PhD students, 12 were from our own PhD programme Knowledge Society and Information Transfer, 6 PhD students came from the University of Zagreb (programmes in Mediaeval Studies, Information Sciences and Linguistics), one student was from the University of Ljubljana (Academy of Fine Arts, Restoration of Book Bindings), one student from the University of Prague (Library and Information Science), two graduate students from the University of Graz and three librarians and one faculty.

Proceedings that we publish with the support of the National Foundation for Science, Higher Education and Technological Development of the Republic of Croatia and the University of Zadar contain the presentations of distinguished speakers to whom we are grateful for their valuable contributions and engagement in workshops, formal and informal communications and fruitful discussions.

Zadar, April 2010

Tatjana Aparac-Jelušić
Dean of the LIS Department and
Dean of the PhD programme

Introduction

The Summer School in the Study of Old Books (Zadar, Croatia, 28th September to 2nd October 2009) was the first one in the series of summer schools that the Department of Library and Information Science, University of Zadar, plans to organise primarily for doctoral students, but also for faculty members and interested practitioners in their specialised field of interest. The specific field of interest of the first Summer School was the study of old books and the main goal was to acquaint participants with the most recent developments and newly emerged concepts in the fields of historical method and epistemology, old book research and bibliography, bibliographic information organisation and its relation to the archival context, conservation and preservation, and to provide practical introduction to old books collection management with contemporary approaches to digitisation.

In this Proceedings thirteen delivered lectures are published together with a lecture on European heritage collections delivered for doctoral students a day before the Summer School, and a student's essay supervised by the lecturer. The papers are divided in five thematic units.

Two articles published in the first thematic unit, New Cultural History, deal with manuscripts. The first one deals with manuscripts from Frankish Europe, questioning the degree to which lay people as well as clergy in the early Middle Ages used documents (W. Brown), while the second one describes representative mediaeval manuscript documents that are held in Zadar State Archives and the modes of their usage and research (M. Lončar). The third paper in this group investigates the models for placing the author's name on the title page of the early modern religious books published in Croatian vernacular, as well as the problem of anonymity and the modes of detecting the authors of anonymous books (Z. Velagić).

The second thematic unit, Old Book as a Topic for Research and Bibliography, gathers six papers. The first paper gives a comprehensive overview of the written heritage in European and Croatian libraries together with a brief description of the most important heritage library collections (D. Sečić) while the second one describes the process of creating access to widely unknown collections of manuscripts in the countries of Eastern and South-Eastern Europe and examines problems of digitisation, conservation, cataloguing and scientific studies based on those collections (E. Renhart). The theme is deepened with a paper that gives a short outline of the history of Croatian bibliographies from the late 16th century together with research possibilities of those bibliographies (J. Lakuš), as well as with a paper that presents a printed description of the Bibliothèque nationale de France's rich collection of bookseller's catalogues printed in Europe form 1473 until 1810 as a source for book historian (E. Netchine). The thematic unit is closed with a paper on the provenance studies on heritage collections in European countries (D. Shaw) and a student's essay on provenance information in Croatian catalogues (M. Tomić, supervised by D. Shaw).

The third thematic unit, which emphasis the New Conceptual Models for Information Organisation, begins with a paper on the basic concepts of FRBR and RDA, and on the application of RDA to description of rare books, manuscripts and their digital surrogates (G. Dunsire). This unit continues with a demonstration of FRAD and its application to old books (M. Willer), and concludes with a paper which focuses on the CERL Thesaurus as an example of building the European authority file relating to the early printed book production (C. Fabian).

The fourth thematic unit is on Conservation and Preservation of Cultural Heritage. After the paper on archival preservation and access that identifies some major areas of change for archives and their content, and reviews what has been happening to key traditional archival ideas and principles in a digital world (A. Gilliland), the paper on practical issues in preservation and conservation of old books is given (D. Hasenay, M. Krtalić, I. Gobić Vitolović).

The last, fifth thematic unit is on Old Book Collection Management and is represented by a paper on collection management of special collections material in an emerging university environment in which principles and practices of collection management of special collections material with an emphasis on digital projects goals, digitisation criteria, and management of digital assets are introduced (L. Miletić-Vejzović).

We hope that the wide spectrum of topics introduced in this Proceedings will promote the interdisciplinary approach in the study of old books and induce further researches in the fields of bibliographic organisation, preservation and presentation of old and rare books as well as in the history of the book, bibliography and related disciplines.

Editors

I.

New Cultural History

MANUSCRIPTS AND THE PAST IN EARLY MEDIEVAL EUROPE

THE CASE OF LAY PEOPLE AND DOCUMENTS[1]

Warren Brown
California Institute of Technology, Pasadena, CA, USA

Abstract

Students of archival documents from early medieval Europe depend heavily on manuscript books because most early medieval documents survive as copies in such books rather than as originals. Virtually all surviving document texts from the period have been edited and published. Brown argues in this essay, however, that to rely on published editions can be misleading; to completely understand early medieval documents and to produce reliable history from them, one has to study them as they were actually copied in the original manuscripts. To illustrate the rewards that can come from exploring manuscripts, Brown explores a particular genre of manuscript from Frankish Europe, namely collections of document formulas, and a particular question the formulas illuminate, namely the degree to which lay people as well as clergy in the early Middle Ages used documents.

Keywords:
archival documents, manuscript books, formula collections, lay people

Historians of early medieval Europe, that is, Europe in the period before the turn of the first millennium, depend almost exclusively on manuscript books for their information. This truism, however, encompasses not only the sorts of texts one would expect to find in books, such as histories, chronicles, saints' lives, etc., but also documentary or archival texts, such as property and judicial records, royal privileges, letters, and the like. The reason for this is that most such records from the

1 This essay includes a condensed survey of work that will be published in more extensive detail in Documentary practices and the laity in the early Middle Ages / edited by Warren Brown, Marios Costambeys, Matthew Innes, and Adam J. Kosto. (forthcoming)

early Middle Ages do not survive in their original form, that is, on loose sheets of papyrus or parchment. They survive instead because they were later copied into books; their originals were then either discarded or simply lost.[2] It is in most cases, therefore, on these copies that we must depend if we want to understand how early medieval people did things like give, sell, or exchange property, settle disputes, administer estates, grant powers and privileges, or communicate with one another.

It is now relatively easy to get at the texts of early medieval documents preserved in manuscript books, because virtually all of them have been edited and published. The process of collecting and publishing them began already in the early modern period. It reached its high point in the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries with great national publishing projects such as the *Monumenta Germaniae Historica* in Germany.[3] Published editions save historians a great deal of effort, especially when the historians do not reside in the same country, or even on the same continent, as the documents they want to study. An American, for example, instead of having to travel to a European archive or library and negotiate with its staff to see a manuscript, can simply go to a local university library, find the edition of the documents in which he or she is interested, and get to work. As digitized versions of such editions multiply on the Internet, even going to a library is becoming less and less necessary.

This freedom comes with a price, however, because the process of editing and publishing texts alters them. In particular, it takes them out of their original context in ways determined by the editor's priorities. A notorious example is the edition of the earliest charters of the Bavarian cathedral church of Freising that was carried out by Theodor Bitterauf

2 Important exceptions include royal diplomas, which survive in the original in much greater numbers than other kinds of documents, and isolated (and sometimes quasi-miraculous) survivals of original documents from ecclesiastical or monastic archives, such as those from the monastery of St. Gall. On early medieval sources in general and documentary or archival sources in particular see: Geary, Patrick J. Phantoms of remembrance : memory and oblivion at the end of the first millennium. Princeton : Princeton University Press, 1994. See esp. c. III, pp. 81-114. Halsall, Guy. The sources and their interpretation. // The new Cambridge medieval history, vol. I c. 500 – c. 700 / edited by Paul Fouracre. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 2005. Pp. 56-90 and esp. pp. 70-73. McKitterick, Rosamond. Introduction : sources and interpretation. // The new Cambridge medieval history, vol. II c. 700 – c. 900 / edited by Rosamond McKitterick. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 1995. Pp. 3-17.

3 McKitterick, Rosamond. Introduction. // The early Middle Ages : Europe 400-1000 / edited by Rosamond McKitterick. Oxford : Oxford University Press, 2001. Pp. 1-19, here 5-6. Geary, Patrick J. The myth of nations : the medieval origins of modern Europe. Princeton : Princeton University Press, 2002. Pp. 15-40.

and published in 1905. These charters, which go back into the 740s, were originally collected from the Freising archives and copied into a book by a priest named Cozroh between the years 824 and ca. 855.[4] Cozroh arranged the documents according to the successive reigns of Freising's bishops, and thus in a rough chronological order. But within each reign, he copied them essentially as he found them in the archives. He therefore preserved the archive's original groupings of related documents. When it came to editing Cozroh's copies, Bitterauf decided to dispense with Cozroh's ordering. Instead, he dated each document as precisely as he could and then arranged them in strict chronological order. As a result, the original groupings are hidden; one has to go to a great deal of work to reconstruct them.[5]

The editing process can also sometimes create texts that did not exist before. When documents or groups of documents survive in different versions in different manuscripts, the editor faces the task of deciding which text to publish. During the nineteenth and much of the twentieth century, editors often did not publish texts as they stood in any one manuscript. Instead, they tried to reconstruct and publish original urtexts, or as close to original urtexts as they could manage.[6] To do this, they built, using the tools of philology, paleography, and codicology, trees of manuscript transmission that often included manuscripts that do not actually survive but that they suspected must have once existed. Then they reverse-engineered the surviving texts to derive what they thought were (or resembled) the original texts. Many of these efforts produced results that are sound and valuable. Some did not. But in either case the reality remains that without actual manuscript witnesses, we cannot be certain that these hypothetical manuscripts and reconstructed urtexts ever existed. They are editorial creations that reflect decisions made by their editors about how to interpret their evidence. However, if they come stamped with the authority of, say, the *Monumenta Germaniae Historica* (especially in its early volumes, whose contents are titled in an authoritative looking Latin), they can take on lives of their own and be treated by scholars as if they were real – with often positive but sometimes very misleading consequences.

4 Brown, Warren. Unjust seizure : conflict, interest, and authority in an early medieval society. Ithaca, N.Y. : Cornell University Press, 2001. Pp. 19-21.

5 Jahn, Joachim. Virgil, Arbeo und Cozroh. Verfassungsgeschichtliche Beobachtungen an Bairischen Quellen des 8. und 9. Jahrhunderts. // Mitteilungen der Gesellschaft für Salzburger Landeskunde 130 (1990), 201-91, esp. pp. 240-42.

6 See, for example, Rio, Alice. Legal practice and the written word in the early Middle Ages : Frankish formulae, c. 500–1000. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 2009. Pp. 167-69.

To grasp early medieval documents completely (or any other text, for that matter), we need to study them in the form in which an actual person wrote them down. This applies to collections of documents as well as to individual document texts. When documents or document collections survive in different versions in different manuscripts, the differences can reveal how the documents were understood – or not – in different times and places. We also need to consider the context in which they were written down. In many cases, early medieval scribes copied document collections into books alongside other kinds of texts. Seeing what other texts they copied them with can tell us a great deal about why they copied the collections and about how the collections might have been used.[7]

Manuscript books can, however, tell us even more. As artifacts they are sources of information in their own right. Handwritten books are like living things; no one is just like the other. Each has its own unique design and decoration. Each contains mistakes that were corrected, or not, in ways that can let us into the minds of those who commissioned it and those who put it together.

In this essay, I would like to work through an example that shows the kinds of information one can pull out of early medieval manuscript books and the kinds of historical problems that this information can help solve. The particular historical problem I want to explore is whether lay people in early medieval Europe used documents, and if so, how and for what. It is a pervasive commonplace that in Europe north of the Alps, between the end of the Roman Empire in the west (say, the end of the fifth century) and the high Middle Ages (the twelfth century), writing was used mainly by Christian clergy and monks. This is held to be true not only of high culture writing, such as histories, theology, saints' lives, etc., but also of pragmatic or documentary writing.[8] According to this traditional picture, while in the Roman world a wide variety of people had used written documents for personal, legal, or administrative matters, by the early Middle Ages only the clergy preserved this aspect of Roman civilization. Lay people carried out their business and

7 On the consequences of not doing so see, for example, Rio, A. Op. cit., pp. 45-46.

8 See inter alia: Clanchy, Michael. From memory to written record : England 1066-1307. 2nd edition. Oxford : Blackwell, 1993. Stock, Brian. The implications of literacy : written language and models of interpretation in the eleventh and twelfth centuries. Princeton : Princeton University Press, 1983. More recently: Richter, Michael. The formation of the medieval west : studies in the oral culture of the Barbarians. New York : St. Martin's Press, 1994.

transmitted information mainly through the spoken word and symbolic or ritual acts. Clerics and monks used documents above all to keep track of their property rights. Accurate property records were especially important for monks, whose monasteries over the centuries received often vast amounts of property from pious donors and therefore had large estates and large numbers of dependents to manage.

This conventional wisdom makes perfect sense in light of the evidence. The manuscripts that preserve early medieval written records come overwhelmingly from churches and monasteries. The documents that they preserve deal overwhelmingly with church or monastery property rights. And yet, there are exceptions. For example, odd pockets of documents survive in some collections of monastic records concern property transactions among lay people only. Efforts to explore such evidence have so far been isolated. Perhaps the most visible has been the 1989 book *The Carolingians and the Written Word* by the Cambridge medievalist Rosamond McKitterick.[9] In this book, McKitterick explored traces of lay document use that survive among the charters of the monastery at St. Gall, now in Switzerland. Her evidence suggests that a culture of document use probably extended far outside the monastery's walls deep into the lay population of the surrounding region, and that this culture did not originally derive from or depend on the monastery itself.

Recently, a number of scholars from North America and the United Kingdom, myself included, have undertaken to challenge the conventional wisdom on a number of fronts. By pooling our resources, and combining all of the traces of which we are collectively aware, we have come to the conclusion that lay people in the early Middle Ages used documents much more widely than has been assumed.[10] I say "used documents" deliberately, for focusing on whether and how lay people might have used documents allows us to sidestep the question of who in the early Middle Ages was "literate" and what literacy in an early medieval context even meant. Literacy and document use are not the same thing, and the latter does not necessarily require the former. Using documents means employing written documents for pragmatic purposes without necessarily being able to read any of them beyond their titles, or even any of them at all. It means simply believing that documents

9 McKitterick, Rosamond. The Carolingians and the written word. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 1989.

10 Brown, W.; Costambeys, M.; Innes, M.; Kosto, A. J. Op. cit.

were necessary for certain purposes, knowing where to get them and what to do with them, and, if necessary, storing them for future use.

My particular part of this effort lies with the so-called Frankish formula collections. These are collections of document texts with most or all of their specific information, such as names, places, dates, etc., removed to render them generic.[11] Formula collections survive in manuscript books that were written in various parts of the Frankish world north of the Alps and that range in date from the eighth to the tenth century. The document formulas in these collections can be traced to as early as the sixth century, but most of them stem from the eighth century and later. They cover various kinds of documents, as well as letters. They appear to have been models or templates that scribes could use when they needed to draw up real documents. They also served as sources for language; scribes could take bits and pieces of them to use as they were putting documents together. Some formulas were written for students to study when learning the craft of producing documents. Others look like they were copied from real documents because they were interesting, that is, because the transaction or legal procedure recorded in the original document was so unusual that someone wanted a copy of it in their formula collection.

The Frankish formula collections contain a great number of models for documents and letters involving lay people, not just with clerics or monks, but with other lay people, in situations where no clergy were involved, or were involved only tangentially. These formulas have not gotten a great deal of attention, however, because the formulas in general are hard to work with.[12] They are hard to work with because they are disembodied texts, that is, they are disconnected from an identifiable, real-life context. Moreover, by their very nature they are inherently conservative; by preserving models of the typical, useful, or interesting they by definition tend to memorialize older ways of doing things. In this sense they resemble books of legal forms kept by modern lawyers, which are full of language or descriptions of procedure that are old, sometimes very old, and often very difficult for non-lawyers to understand. They use this archaic language

11 Edition: Formulae Merowingici et Karolini aevi / edited by Karl Zeumer. Monumenta Germaniae Historica Legum Sectio 5. Hanover : Hahn, 1886. Introductory literature: Buchner, Rudolf. Deutschlands Geschichtsquellen im Mittelalter. Beiheft: die Rechtsquellen. Weimar: Hermann Böhlaus Nachfolger, 1953. Here pp. 49-55. Rio, A. Op. cit.

12 Cf. Rio, A. Op. cit, pp. 167-211.

because it is traditional, and because tradition and precedent are very important to lawyers. The same holds true for the early medieval formulas: tradition and precedent, and connection with an authoritative past, were very important for early medieval people. As a consequence, the language in the Frankish formulas is often older than the formula texts themselves, and sometimes much older. When we look at a formula for a document that was written out in the eighth or ninth century, but whose language is older, when can we say that it applied? Just because someone in the ninth century copied or drew language from an older document, and that language shows lay people using documents, are we entitled to say that lay people in the ninth century used documents, or are we just looking at a fossil?

The problem is made more difficult by the way that the early medieval formulas have been edited and published. The standard edition of the formulas was published in the 1880's for the *Monumenta Germaniae Historica* and edited by Karl Zeumer. Zeumer approached the formulas in a way typical for his time: he compared manuscripts and peeled away textual variants to reconstruct as best he could the origins and original texts of each formula group. Sometimes Zeumer's conclusions and reconstructions are perfectly sound.[13] Sometimes, however, they are hypothetical and speculative; it is risky to treat them as something that actually existed in a particular time and place.[14] Moreover, as Zeumer sought to reconstruct the most "original" or the "best" texts of a given set of formulas, he weeded out differences, alterations – in short, any variations from what he thought was the best text – and relegated them to his footnotes. It is possible to reconstruct from Zeumer's footnotes the texts as they actually survive in the manuscripts, but it is difficult and time-consuming. The temptation lies unfortunately all too near at hand simply to avoid the effort.

Zeumer's edition of the formulas is extremely valuable. It gathers all the formulas together in one place, and makes it easy to get at them and get a sense for what sorts of information they contain. However, by creating his urtexts and ur-formula collections, Zeumer disconnected the formulas even farther from the real world than they were already.

13 For example, the Marculfi Formulae and the Formulae Turonenses (see notes 15 and 16 below), which rest on many manuscript witnesses.

14 For example, the Formulae Salicae Lindenbrogianae, pp. 265-82 of Zeumer's edition, whose two manuscript witnesses raise doubt about whether it ever formed a coherent formula collection as Zeumer presents it. See Rio, A. Op. cit., 103-105.

For the point at which the formulas undeniably connect to a real world is in the manuscripts; it is the manuscripts that capture a moment when someone found it worth the time, effort, and expense to copy out the formulas onto parchment and bind the parchment leaves into a book. At this moment of contact between formula text and reality, what is important is not a hypothetical urtext but the text as it appears in the manuscript, with all of its variations from other versions, its modifications, and its mistakes. For when someone changed, rewrote, or updated an older text, or chose to copy one formula text from an older group of formulas and leave out others, that someone had decided that the text was important. It was relevant somehow to his world, and comprehensible to him in some fashion. When someone made a mistake and tried to correct it, we know that he understood the text he was copying. When a mistake remained uncorrected and rendered a passage meaningless, we can suspect that while the passage remained part of the formulaic tradition associated with a given document type, its content was no longer completely understood.

The particular examples I would like to discuss here come from a manuscript book now kept at the Bibliothéque Nationale in Paris: Paris, BN lat. 2123 (Plate 1). This book mostly contains texts of canon law (that is, papal decrees, writings of the church fathers, etc.), but it also includes a collection of over one hundred formulas. The book was clearly copied out as a single project: its layout and decoration, and the style of its script, remain the same from beginning to end. The manuscript itself dates to the last years of the eighth century, or the first years of the ninth, and it was most likely produced somewhere in Burgundy.[15] The formula collection it contains, however, covers a larger envelope of space and time: from the second half of the seventh century through the first half of the ninth, and from what is now northwestern France, to the area around Tours, to Burgundy.[16] We know this because this formula collection was assembled from pieces of two other well-known formula collections. One was compiled by a monk named Marculf, somewhere in the region around Paris, sometime between 650 and 700.[17] The other was put together at

15 Rio, A. Op. cit., p. 252.

16 Collectio Flaviniacensis (henceforth Flavigny). Zeumer, K. Op. cit., pp. 469-92. See Rio, A. Op. cit., pp. 117-21.

17 Marculfi Formulae (henceforth Marculf). Zeumer, K. Op. cit., pp. 32-112. See Rio, A. Op. cit., 81-101. An excellent English translation of the Marculf formulas is offered in The formularies of Angers and Marculf : two Merovingian legal handbooks / edited and translated by Alice Rio. Liverpool : Liverpool University Press, 2008.

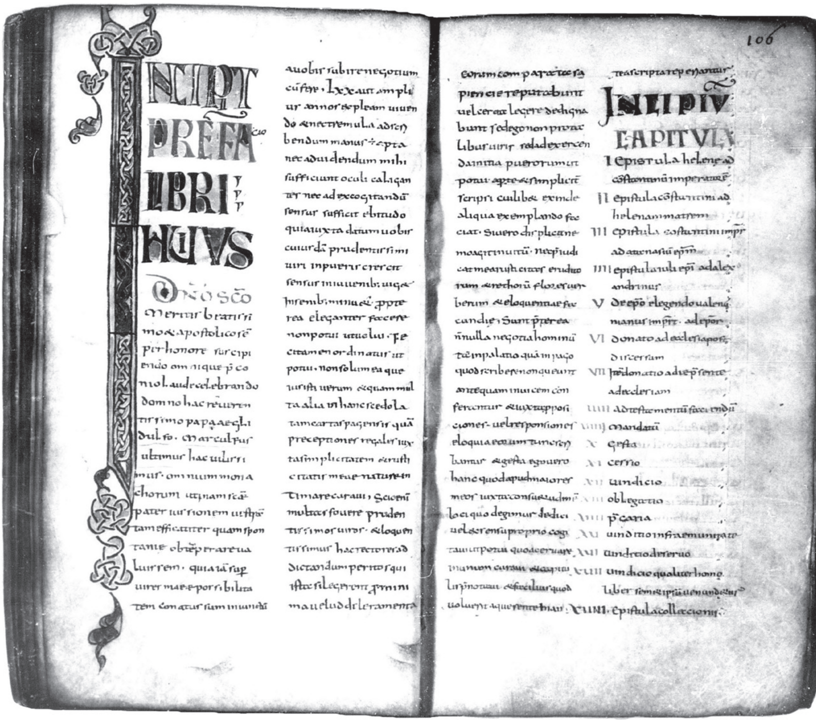


Plate 1.
A manuscript book kept at the Bibliothéque Nationale in Paris: Paris, BN lat. 2123.

the monastery of St. Martin in Tours around 750.[18] The scope of our collection extends even farther back in time, however. Many of its formula texts contain fragments of legal language from Roman late antiquity, in references to such things as Roman citizenship, late Roman governmental institutions, etc. These fragments tell us that the documentary culture captured in this collection had roots in that of late Rome.

The 117 formulas in this manuscript offer a gold mine of information about the sorts of situations in which lay men and women might have used documents. More than half of them have only lay people as actors. These actors produced or acquired documents in a variety

18 Formulae Turonenses vulgo Sirmondicae dictae (henceforth Tours). Zeumer, K. Op. cit., pp. 128-65. See Depreux, Philippe. La tradition manuscrite des "formules de Tours" et la diffusion des modèles d'actes aux viii[e] et ix[e] siècles. // Annales de Bretagne et des pays de l'ouest 111, 3 (2004), 55-71 and Rio, A. Op. cit., pp. 112-17.

of situations that speak volumes about early medieval society. In one example, a father declares that the usual custom, according to which only sons should inherit, is impious and that he will not follow it. He therefore gives his daughter a share in the family inheritance equal to that of her brothers.[19] Another tells that a man got into some sort of trouble for which he was unable to pay compensation. His lord stepped forward and paid the compensation for him; in return for this, the man agrees to become the lord's unfree dependant.[20] A third involves violence. It represents a letter from members of a kin-group to a man who had killed their brother. The letter declares that the man had paid the agreed-upon blood-price (*wergeld*), and that he should henceforth remain free from trouble about the matter.[21] Other examples were written so that they could be used for different but related situations. In one such, a man comes before a judicial assembly and charges another with having unjustly seized his property. An optional variant prologue changes the charge from property seizure to homicide.[22]

Several of the formulas tell us that lay people not only used documents but also that they kept them. A letter in which a judge assigns a guardian for an orphan specifies that two copies of the document be made, one for the guardian and one for the person who would serve as the guarantor for the arrangement.[23] A royal diploma reports that a man's house had burned down, and that in the fire he had lost all of his documents. The king confirms for the man all of the property rights that had been covered by the lost documents.[24] A man in this situation would certainly want to keep such a diploma.

If this collection of formulas shows us images of lay people using documents, we still face the question of how to connect them to a real, historical world. Answers to this question lie at several points along a line of time. We need to explore where these document formulas came from, how they were selected, and how they ended up in our manuscript. This requires taking the work done by Karl Zeumer for his edition of the formulas and adding to it information that we can only get from the manuscript.

19 Marculf Book II no. 12, p. 83.
20 Marculf Book II no. 28, p. 93.
21 Marculf Book II no. 18, pp. 88-89.
22 Tours no. 29, p. 152.
23 Tours no. 24, pp. 148-49.
24 Tours nos. 27-28, pp. 150-51. See Brown, Warren. When documents are destroyed or lost : lay people and archives in the early Middle Ages. // Early medieval Europe 11, 4 (2002), 337-66.

As noted above, the formula collection in this manuscript is a hybrid; it weaves together formulas from different sources. The first source that it draws on is perhaps the most well known of the early medieval formula collections, namely the one compiled by the monk Marculf. Marculf's collection survives in several manuscripts. These manuscripts correspond well enough to each other that we can be fairly certain that we know what the original collection looked like.[25] Internal evidence, such as references to kings or events, tells us that Marculf compiled it sometime between 650 and 700, somewhere in that region of northwestern France around Paris that was then known as Neustria. In a prologue, he tells us why he compiled it: he did so at the request of a bishop, for the education of students.[26] Marculf's formula collection must, therefore, reflect the sorts of documents Marculf thought students learning to write documents needed to know about. Roughly half of the formulas he included involve lay people only.

The second source of the formulas in our manuscript was a formula collection from the monastery of St. Martin at Tours. We know this because several of the formulas in it refer to the city of Tours or to the monastery of St. Martin. Internal evidence dates the collection to ca. 750. It is made up almost entirely of lay documents. We do not know for sure why the Tours collection was put together. However, we do know that it struck a chord or met some kind of need; it survives complete in more manuscripts than does Marculf's collection, and in parts in even more.[27]

The third point on our timeline takes us to the monastery of St. Praiectus, at Flavigny in Burgundy. The monks at Flavigny took the Tours and Marculf formula collections and copied most of the formulas in them. They left some of the formulas out, however, and they added copies of documents taken directly from their own archive. Finally, they reordered the formulas, to produce what was in the end their own, unique formula collection.[28] Oblique references to rulers tell us that this happened in the second half of the eighth century, and most likely towards the end of the century. That the selection and reordering of the formulas in the Flavigny collection was purposeful is indicated by the way that the formulas are arranged; they are placed in groupings that,

25 See Rio, A. as note 15 above.
26 Marculf Prologue, pp. 36-37: *ad exercenda initia puerorum*.
27 See Depreux, P. and Rio, A. as note 16 above.
28 See Rio, A. as n. 14 above.

while often different from those of the Marculf or Tours collections, do make sense. The groupings arrange the formulas by the type of transaction or issue they cover, that is, inheritance, marriage, free and unfree status, property sales or exchanges, etc.

More important evidence for deliberate purpose in this collection, however, lies in the fact that the Flavigny copyists were not always satisfied with what the Marculf or Tours formulas, or even their own archives offered them. To get exactly what they wanted, the scribes were willing to take pieces of different formulas from different sources and blend them together. A good example is provided by a formula for a will.[29] Most of this formula is taken from the testament of Flavigny's first abbot, Widerad (d. ca. 719?) which must have been in the monastery's archives.[30] But the scribe or scribes putting together the Flavigny formula collection did not think that Widerad's opening prologue fit their needs. So they replaced it with the prologue from a similar will formula in the Marculf collection (the rest of which they naturally left out of their collection).[31]

A similar example of purposeful alteration, this one having to do exclusively with lay people, is provided by a pair of formulas describing how to have a document validated by the civic authorities.[32] This is a very late Roman procedure; it is visible in Italian documents from the fifth and sixth centuries.[33] A man wishing to give property to someone else has a charter recording the gift drawn up and witnessed. He then asks another man to take the charter to a nearby city and have it validated by the civic authorities (in the so-called *gesta municipalia*). The second man does so; he takes the charter to the city and reads it out loud before the city council (*curia*). He then gets a document issued to him saying that the charter had been validated. Despite the antiquity of this procedure and of the language associated with it, and despite the fact that we can find little reliable evidence for *gesta municipalia* or even functioning city councils in the west much after the sixth century, formulas describing this process kept getting copied into formula books deep into the

29 Flavigny no. 8, pp. 476-77.
30 The cartulary of Flavigny / edited by Constance Brittain Bouchard. Cambridge, Massachusetts : The Medieval Academy of America, 1991. No. 1, pp. 19-28.
31 Marculf Book II, no. 17, pp. 86-88.
32 Flavigny nos. 9-10, p. 477 = Tours, Additamenta nos. 4-5, pp. 160-61.
33 Brill's New Pauly : encyclopaedia of the Ancient World / edited by H. Cancik and H. Schneider. Vol. 5. Leiden : Brill, 2004. S. v. gesta, pp. 827-28; Johanek, Peter. Gesta Municipalia // Lexikon des Mittelalters. Vol. IV no. 8. Munich and Zürich : Artemis Verlag, 1988. P. 1408.

ninth century.[34] Both the Marculf and the Tours collections contain examples.[35] But the Flavigny copyist, who had both the Marculf and Tours versions in front of him, did not think that either was quite right. So he took language from both of them and blended them together to make new formulas, which he then placed among other Tours formulas in the spot where the Tours versions would have logically been.[36]

The final point on our timeline is represented by the manuscript itself, which, as noted above, was written out somewhere in Burgundy sometime in the last years of the eighth century or the first years of the ninth. The manuscript's very existence indicates that at this point its contents were in some way important to someone. Parchment is expensive; it takes effort to make.[37] Moreover, writing out texts by hand, especially in a script of the clarity of the one used here,[38] is time and labor intensive. Many of the capitals at the beginnings of texts are decorated; this too takes work. If someone bothered to do all of the work of copying these formulas out, by hand, on expensive parchment, and do all the decorations as well, and then bind them in with the other contents of this book, the formulas had to be important enough to be worth the effort.

Seen as a whole, the manuscript tells us that its compilers intended it to be a practical reference book, and that they planned for people to refer to it.[39] Most of the book is taken up with texts of canon law. It resembles many other surviving books of canon law in this age before canon law was systematized; it contains eclectic collections of religious authorities to which clerics and monks could refer at need.[40] The manuscript also includes a text on weights and measures by the great seventh-century encyclopedist Isidore of Seville. In short, it is a collection of useful texts for people living and working in a church or a monastery.

The formula part of the manuscript reflects this purpose. First, individual formulas come with numbers, rubrics, and capitals that make it relatively easy to scan the pages to find what you need (Plate 2). Second, some of the formulas that give options for different cases are

34 Brown, Warren. *Gesta municipalia* in the Carolingian empire? On the public validation of documents in early medieval Europe. (forthcoming).
35 Marculf Book II nos. 37-38, pp. 97-98; Tours nos. 2-3, pp. 136-37.
36 That is, in place of Tours nos. 2-3.
37 Bischoff, Bernhard. Latin paleography : antiquity and the Middle Ages / translated by Dáibhí ó Cróinin and David Ganz. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 1990. Pp. 8-11.
38 A pre-caroline minuscule. See Bischoff, B. Op. cit., esp. pp. 100-109 and 112-18.
39 For the contents and organization of Paris, BN lat. 2123, as well as a bibliography, see Rio, A., as note 14 above.
40 See Brundage, James. Medieval canon law. London : Longman, 1995.

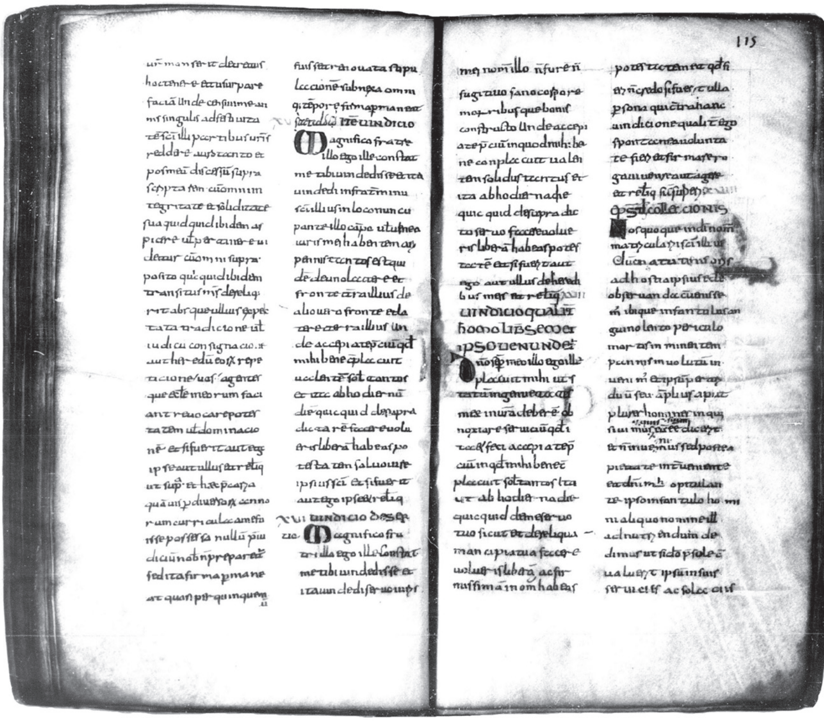


Plate 2.
The formula part of the manuscript.

copied in a way that makes it easy to distinguish the options. For example, the formula for a dispute record discussed above, that contains an optional prologue for the case that the dispute concerned homicide rather than property seizure, includes the directions, "If the case concerns homicide then use this opening."[41] These words are written in a very flowery script that is much different from the script used to write the rest of the text, thus making them easy to see and to distinguish from the actual document text (Plate 3). Third, the manuscript includes cross-references that link formula texts. Next to a formula in which a king confirms the property rights of a man who had lost his documents to a fire, for example, appears the marginal note: "for another one see

41 F. 121v col. 1: *Et si de homicidio accusatio facta fuerit secundum hanc sententiam inscriptio celebretur.*

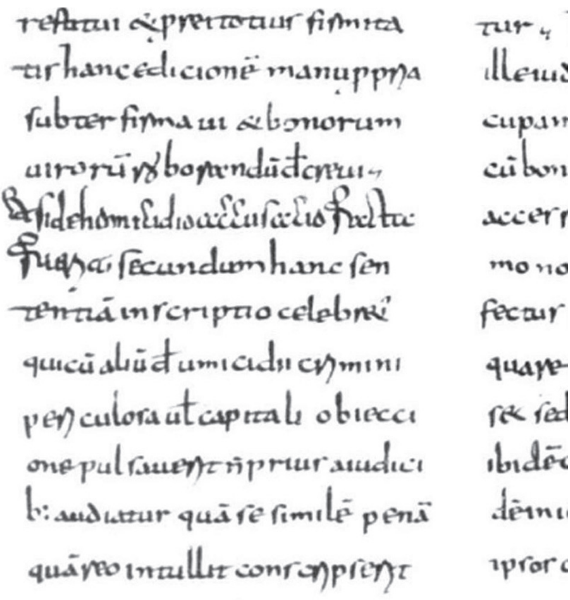


Plate 3.
Words are written in a flowery script.

number 78 (Plate 4)."[42] Sure enough, number 78 is a similar royal letter confirming the contents of a lost lay archive.[43]

The copyist or copyists involved in this manuscript took great care to correct mistakes, in a way revealing that he or they understood what he or they was/were writing and thought it important to get it right. For example, at the beginning of number 92 in the Flavigny collection, the scribe copied the title of the formula that according to the table of contents is supposed to be here.[44] However, the text that follows is from the wrong formula.[45] After a bit the scribe noticed his error; he stopped, drew a new capital, and then started with the correct text. He bracketed the incorrect text with two X marks to show readers that they should skip from the first X to the second (Plate 5).

42 F. 120r col. 2: *alibi require sub hera lxxviii.*

43 Flavigny no. 78, p. 484 = Marculf Book I no. 33, pp. 63-64.

44 Fol. 147r col. 2: *Carta qui filio aut nepote de aliquid meliorare voluerit*. From Flavigny no. 92 = Marculf Book II no. 11, pp. 82-83.

45 Marculf Book II no. 15, p. 85: *Quod bonum filex prosperumque veniat disponsandis maritandisque ordinibus ac procreatione liberorum causis.*

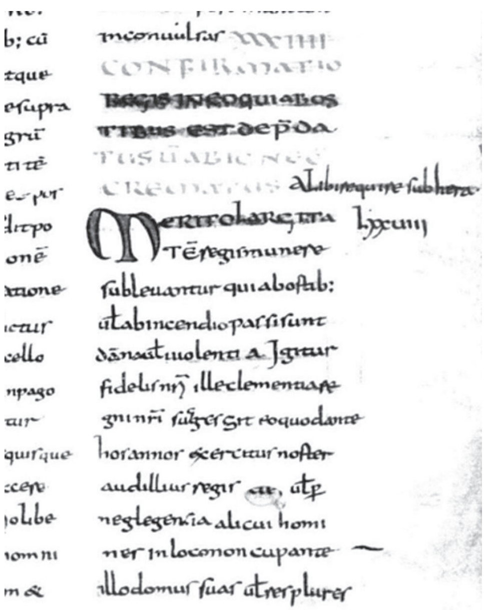


Plate 4.
The marginal note next to a formula.

In short, we get a clear sense from this manuscript that its creators did not simply copy old texts that had no connection to their world. They knew what they were copying, expected their book to be referred to by others, and tried to get their copies right. So what conclusions can we draw? We have before us, encapsulated in our manuscript, evidence for a persistent interest across centuries and in several areas of the Frankish world in documents that lay people of all social classes would have needed. That an active culture of document use existed in the Paris region between 650 and 700, and in the area around Tours ca. 750, we can infer from the formulas contained in the Marculf and Tours collections respectively. That the same held true for the society around Flavigny towards the end of the eighth century is visible in the decisions made by the monks of Flavigny about which formulas from the Marculf and Tours collections to include in their own collection and how to blend them together. It is in our manuscript that brings the evidence for this lay documentary culture in Burgundy to the turn of the ninth century and makes it immediate. A formula collection including a great many formulas that dealt only with lay affairs, and that show lay

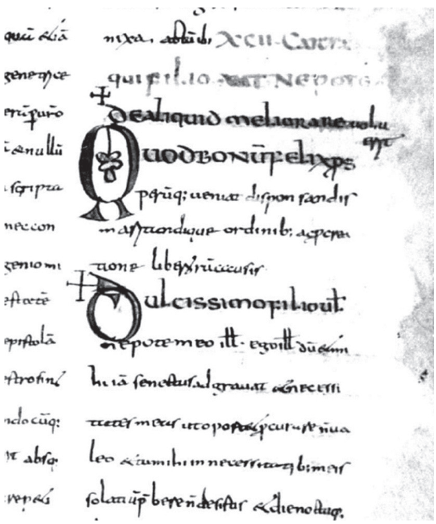


Plate 5.
The correct text with bracketed incorrect text.

people actively using documents to carry out a variety of kinds of business, was copied by people who understood and valued its contents, in such a way as to be accessible for practical use, into a book containing other practical texts.

But this manuscript tells us even more when we put it in its larger context: this repeated interest in lay documentary culture on the part of our compilers and scribes, and thus this evidence telling us that a lay documentary culture was "out there" in the early medieval world, was located in monasteries and churches. Marculf was a monk who compiled his formula collection at the request of a bishop. The Tours formula collection was put together at the monastery of St. Martin in Tours. The Flavigny collection was woven together at the abbey of St. Praiectus in Flavigny. We do not know exactly where the manuscript itself was copied out, but its contents clearly point to an ecclesiastical milieu.

In this regard, our manuscript resembles many of the other manuscripts in which formulas survive. The forty-odd manuscript books that contain formula collections all date from the eighth century to the tenth; most of them come from the late eighth and ninth. Some of these manuscripts are impossible to localize precisely, but many can be connected to specific churches or monasteries.[46] The origins, dates, and contents of these manuscripts suggest two things. First, since many of the formula collections in these manuscripts, and the older formula collections on which they drew, mix formulas that would have been useful only to lay people with formulas that addressed the needs of clergy and their institutions, it appears that throughout the seventh, eighth, and ninth centuries both lay people and clergy in the Frankish world participated in a common culture of document use. Second, starting at some point in the late seventh century, but especially from the middle of the eighth century onwards, churches and monasteries took an active interest in knowing how to produce not only documents for their own use, but also for the use of the lay people around them.

The timing is no accident. The later eighth and ninth centuries are the period of the great Carolingian kings and emperors: Charlemagne, his son Louis the Pious, and in western Europe his grandson Charles the Bald.[47] Charlemagne in particular was very interested in monasteries. The largest monasteries in particular were powerful institutions, with great resources in moveable wealth and in land and therefore in soldiers and supplies. Monasteries were also, along with the cathedral churches of the Frankish bishops, the only stable and long-lived institutions remaining in Europe after the administrative apparatus of the late Roman state had withered away. They could provide organized services, such as prayer but also administration and record keeping; they had organized staffs and they had schools. Charlemagne set himself up as the protector and benefactor of powerful monasteries. At the same time, he pressured them to start keeping written records of their property holdings and estate administration – the better to get at their resources for his own purposes.[48] Many clerics and monks became quasi-officials in a Carolingian government that was also using writing heavily, more heavily in fact than any European government since that of Rome, to carry out the business of legislation and administration. As the Carolingians started embedding churches and monasteries as institutions into the fabric of political life, clerical and monastic scribes must have taken over the role that lay notaries had played earlier in serving the

46 Rio, A., Legal Practice. Pp. 241-71.

47 Fouracre, Paul. Frankish Gaul to 814 // New Cambridge medieval history II. Pp. 85-109. Nelson, Janet L. The Frankish kingdoms, 814-898 : the west. // Ibid. Pp. 110-41.

48 Hummer, Hans J. Property and power in early medieval Europe : Alsace and the Frankish realm, 600-1000. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 2005. Pp. 76–104.

documentary needs of the people around them. The existence of formula manuscripts like the one examined in this essay certainly indicate that churches and monasteries wanted to know about documents that lay people needed, and to be able to study them and produce them. So at the same time that our manuscript tells us that lay people continued to use documents throughout the early Middle Ages, it is also helps to show us how the production of documents, and the institutional memory of what documents people might need for what kinds of situations, were under the Carolingians becoming the affair of churches and monasteries. In other words, it captures a moment in which the connection between clergy and writing that many think of as typical of the Middle Ages was in the process of being formed.

References

Bischoff, Bernhard. Latin paleography : antiquity and the Middle Ages / translated by Dáibhí ó Cróinin and David Ganz. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 1990.

Brill's New Pauly: Encyclopaedia of the Ancient World / edited by H. Cancik and H. Schneider. Vol. 5. Leiden : Brill, 2004.

Brown, Warren. *Gesta municipalia* in the Carolingian empire? On the public validation of documents in early medieval Europe. (forthcoming).

Brown, Warren. Unjust seizure : conflict, interest, and authority in an early medieval society. Ithaca, N.Y. : Cornell University Press, 2001.

Brown, Warren. When documents are destroyed or lost : lay people and archives in the early Middle Ages. // Early medieval Europe 11, 4 (2002), 337-66.

Brundage, James. Medieval canon law. London : Longman, 1995.

Buchner, Rudolf. Deutschlands Geschichtsquellen im Mittelalter. Beiheft: die Rechtsquellen. Weimar : Hermann Böhlaus Nachfolger, 1953.

The cartulary of Flavigny / edited by Constance Brittain Bouchard. Cambridge, Massachusetts : The Medieval Academy of America, 1991.

Clanchy, Michael. From memory to written record : England 1066-1307. 2nd edition. Oxford : Blackwell, 1993.

Depreux, Philippe. La tradition manuscrite des "formules de Tours" et la diffusion des modèles d'actes aux viiie et ixe siècles. // Annales de Bretagne et des pays de l'ouest 111, 3 (2004), 55-71

Documentary practices and the laity in the early Middle Ages / edited by Warren Brown, Marios Costambeys, Matthew Innes, and Adam J. Kosto. (forthcoming)

Formulae Merowingici et Karolini aevi / edited by Karl Zeumer. Monumenta Germaniae Historica Legum Sectio 5. Hanover : Hahn, 1886.

The formularies of Angers and Marculf : two Merovingian legal handbooks / edited and translated by Alice Rio. Liverpool : Liverpool University Press, 2008.

Fouracre, Paul. Frankish Gaul to 814. // New Cambridge medieval history II c. 700 – c. 900 / edited by Rosamond McKitterick. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 1995. Pp. 85-109.

Geary, Patrick J. The myth of nations : the medieval origins of modern Europe. Princeton : Princeton University Press, 2002.

Geary, Patrick J. Phantoms of remembrance : memory and oblivion at the end of the first millennium. Princeton : Princeton University Press, 1994.

Halsall, Guy. The sources and their interpretation. // The new Cambridge medieval history, vol. I c. 500 – c. 700 / edited by Paul Fouracre. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 2005.

Hummer, Hans J. Property and power in early medieval Europe : Alsace and the Frankish realm, 600-1000. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 2005.

Jahn, Joachim. Virgil, Arbeo und Cozroh. Verfassungsgeschichtliche Beobachtungen an Bairischen Quellen des 8. und 9. Jahrhunderts. // Mitteilungen der Gesellschaft für Salzburger Landeskunde 130 (1990), 201-291.

Johanek, Peter. Gesta Municipalia // Lexikon des Mittelalters. Vol. IV no. 8. Munich and Zürich : Artemis Verlag, 1988.

McKitterick, Rosamond. The Carolingians and the written word. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 1989.

McKitterick, Rosamond. Introduction. // The early Middle Ages : Europe 400-1000 / edited by Rosamond McKitterick. Oxford : Oxford University Press, 2001.

McKitterick, Rosamond. Introduction : sources and interpretation. // The new Cambridge medieval history, vol. II c. 700 – c. 900 / edited by Rosamond McKitterick. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 1995.

Nelson, Janet L. The Frankish kingdoms, 814-898 : the west. // New Cambridge medieval history II c. 700 – c. 900 / edited by Rosamond McKitterick. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 1995. Pp. 110-41.

Richter, Michael. The formation of the medieval west : studies in the oral culture of the Barbarians. New York : St. Martin's Press, 1994.

Rio, Alice. Legal practice and the written word in the early middle ages : Frankish formulae, c. 500–1000. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 2009.

Stock, Brian. The implications of literacy : written language and models of interpretation in the eleventh and twelfth centuries. Princeton : Princeton University Press, 1983.

Biographical sketch

Warren Brown received his PhD in medieval history from the University of California, Los Angeles, in 1997. He then joined the humanities faculty at the California Institute of Technology in Pasadena, California, where he is now an Associate Professor of History.

Much of Brown's work concerns conflict resolution and political power. His first book, *Unjust Seizure: Conflict, Interest, and Authority in an Early Medieval Society* (Cornell, 2001), studies changing disputing practices in Bavaria against the backdrop of the Carolingian conquest of the region. His second, *Violence in Medieval Europe* (Longman, in press), examines norms of violence in Europe from the sixth through the fourteenth centuries. He has co-edited, with Piotr Górecki, *Conflict in Medieval Europe: Changing Perspectives on Society and Culture* (Ashgate, 2003).

Brown also studies the use of written documents in early medieval Europe, particularly by lay people. He has published individual articles in this area, e.g., "When documents are destroyed or lost: lay people and archives in the early Middle Ages," *Early Medieval Europe* 11 no. 4 (2002), pp. 337-366. He is also contributing to an international research project on the subject, whose results are forthcoming as *Documents and the Laity in the Early Middle Ages*.

RUKOPISI I PROŠLOST U RANO SREDNJEVJEKOVNOJ EUROPI NA PRIMJERU LAIKA I DOKUMENATA

Sažetak

Istraživači arhivskih dokumenata europskog ranog srednjeg vijeka uvelike ovise o rukopisnim knjigama budući da većina ranosrednjovjekovnih dokumenata nije sačuvana u izvornicima, nego u prijepisu u takvim knjigama. Gotovo svi do danas sačuvani tekstovi iz toga razdoblja redigirani su i objavljeni. U ovome radu Brown, međutim, ukazuje na to da oslanjanje na objavljena izdanja može dovesti do zabuna. Kako bi se ranosrednjovjekovni dokumenti potpuno razumjeli i kako bi se iz njih izvele pouzdane povijesne činjenice, potrebno ih je proučavati u obliku u kojem su bili prepisivani u izvorne rukopise. Da bi prikazao nagradu za trud uložen pri istraživanju rukopisa, Brown istražuje određeni žanr rukopisa iz razdoblja franačke Europe, i to zbirke formula koje se pojavljuju u dokumenatima. Posebno istražuje pitanje na koje te formule upućuju, a to je pitanje u kojoj su mjeri laici i svećenstvo u srednjem vijeku koristili dokumente.

Ključne riječi: arhivski dokumenti, rukopisne knjige, zbirke formula, laici

OLD MANUSCRIPTS IN ZADAR
A VERY SHORT INTRODUCTION INTO THE PRESENT STATE AND DOUBTS RELATED TO THE MODES OF PUBLISHING

Milenko Lončar
University of Zadar, Department of Classical Philology, Croatia

Abstract
In the introduction, explained are the historical circumstances of the appearance of old manuscripts in Zadar and enumerated the institutions in Zadar where these manuscripts are stored. Presented is the classification of old manuscripts and the role of persons ordering and producing them. Basic parts of each notary document are described on the example of the note by Petar Parençan, notary from Zadar from the second half of the 14th century. Finally, a question of transcription of notary documents was tackled, especially the challenges whether to explain the abbreviations and mediaeval style of writing, like diphthongs, double vowels, letter *h*, some inserted phonemes, possible mistakes.

Key words:
manuscripts, notary documents, Zadar

Introduction

Since I do not have detailed knowledge of the presentations of other lecturers, and I do not know the majority of listeners and their background knowledge of the subject, it might be possible that this lecture will overlap with another one or that somebody knows the subject matter already. I apologize for possible repetitions. I hope that everybody will find at least something new in this presentation.

Origin of old manuscripts in Zadar

Already in the Byzantine times, somewhere around the 9th century, Zadar was the capital of Dalmatia and the focus of the early mediaeval

Croatian state, the well known triangle of Nin, Knin and Solin, was in its hinterland. For this reason many official documents originated in, or were sent to Zadar. For instance, the major part of deeds of gift by one of the greatest Croatian kings, Petar Krešimir IV are stored here, although some of them in later transcripts, but they are none the less valuable for the cognizance of early Croatian past.[1] The Zadar seafront where the university is located was named after King Petar Krešimir IV.

Where are the manuscripts kept

Although there are several church archives (e.g. in the Benedictine nunnery of Saint Mary in the Zadar Archdiocese), the majority of the materials is kept in the Zadar State Archives.

Classification of old manuscripts

The materials are classified into six groups. The first five follow the historical periods of authority from the Venetian Republic, two Austrian and French rules in the meantime, up to Italian rule in the first half of the 20th century. The sixth group consists of the oldest and thus the most valuable collection of the Zadar State Archives, including the manuscripts from dissolved monasteries and church documents. The seventh group consists of the old archives of Dalmatian towns, from Pag in the north, via Šibenik, Trogir and Split to Korčula in the south, to mention only the biggest. The Zadar State Archives is the biggest one of the group. Its oldest part belongs to the notaries of Zadar and covers the period from the end of the 13th to the middle of the 19th century. It contains about five hundred items.[2] Here we shall pause a while.

Who were public notaries

Notaries were the "points of public trust", an institution set up by the appropriate authorities, where all the legal documents were written. One copy remained with the notary, and the customer received another

1 The documents were published in: Diplomatički zbornik kraljevine Hrvatske, Dalmacije i Slavonije. Sv. 1 : Listine godina 743-1100. / uredio Marko Kostrenčić ; sakupili i obradili Jakov Stipišić i Miljen Šamšalović [edited by Marko Kostrenčić, collected and interpreted by Jakov Stipišić and Miljen Šamšalović]. Zagreb : Jugoslavenska akademija znanosti i umjetnosti, 1967.

2 According to: Usmiani, Ante. Arhivska građa za srednjodalmatinsko područje u Historijskom arhivu u Zadru. // Građa i prilozi za povijest Dalmacije 11(1990), 83-93.

one. In case of fraudulent conduct the notary was banned from practicing his skills for the rest of his life. Thus, they obviously enjoyed the total trust of the public.[3]

What did they record

Judging by the type and quantity of the preserved documents, it seems that the scope of the work of the notary public was greater than today, and that there also existed a greater need or simply greater culture of concluding deals in a literate manner. Recorded was and accordingly, notarised every deal involving money or material goods above a certain value (land, houses, boats, goods, works), for instance: buying, selling, credit, lease, dowry contract, testament, gift, tenure, exchange, power of attorney, auction...

Who is interested in the documents today

The Archives is definitely most frequented by our colleagues historians and art historians. Notary work reflects everyday economic life of the town and its surroundings in the late mediaeval and early centuries of the modern era. Although the documents are largely similar to one another, thus monotonous and dull in expressions, each one of them has something special that forces the reader to proceed, to see what happened, who were those people, where from...[4]

The special value lies in the fact that the documents were systematically created for centuries, so that their longevity could also be followed.

To the language specialists, first of all those specialising in Roman and Slavic languages, but also for the Latinists, the documents provide an opportunity to follow the tracks and development of the language from their own point of view, because of the language in which all the mediaeval and the better part of later documents were written.

It is interesting that our ancestors at the Department of Classical Languages, in the half century that it has existed, never dealt with the documents from the Zadar Archives, although there was a course

3 The work of notaries was regulated by the rules of the Statutes of Zadar. The modern edition: Zadarski statut : sa svim reformacijama, odnosno, novim uredbama donesenima do godine 1563. / sada ponovno izdali, kritičkim aparatom opskrbili te kazalom osoba, mjesta i stvari obogatili i na hrvatski jezik preveli Josip Kolanović i Mate Križman [was now reissued, critically interpreted, accompanied by an index of persons, places and subjects, and translated into Croatian by Josip Kolanović and Mate Križman]. Zadar : Matica hrvatska, ogranak : Hrvatski državni arhiv, 1997. On notary service: pp. 207-219.

4 For me for instance, it was especially interesting that today a very rare name Cvitko (my son's name) occurred quite frequently in the 14th century documents.

on mediaeval Latin. Prompted by frequent queries for help to read the documents from the colleagues from other departments and by the awareness of the huge wealth that lies inaccessible in the Archives, we decided to direct some of our younger colleagues to that field. Today, three colleagues are specialising in mediaeval Latin. Moreover, just over two years ago we were granted the project to publish the manuscript of Petar Perençan, the notary from Zadar from the second half of the 14th century and this lecture is based on that moderate experience.

What do we need to read the documents

Naturally, it is necessary to know Latin for Latin documents. (Finally some use of all those studies!) It is interesting that the texts are searched by professionals with meagre knowledge of Latin, and they are quite successful; which should be a boost for those who have not tried yet. Since it is the case of manuscripts, it is necessary to become familiar with palaeography, but soon enough one gets used to the reading itself. When necessary, one can always consult the manual.[5] For better understanding of the contents, it is recommendable to have some knowledge of the period and area in question.

What does the document consist of

In the left margin, at the same level with the beginning of the text there is a "title" or brief definition of contents, in one or two words the nature of the legal business and the main participants are described. Below that one regularly, but not always, finds the word *facta*, meaning that the business was really finished and concluded. The name of the judge – authenticator is regularly recorded in the third place, but sometimes the document lacks it which means that it was not publicly authenticated. The document itself always begins with invocation or calling of God's name and date, first chronological, and after that according to secular and spiritual authority; then follows a description of the legal business with the envisaged penalty in case the stipulations are violated, and it ends with quotation of the place where the business was performed and names of two witnesses.

5 Summarised in: Stipišić, Jakov. Pomoćne povijesne znanosti u teoriji i praksi. 2. dopunjeno izd. Zagreb : Školska knjiga, 1985. Pp. 99-125; very clearly at: Paleographic fonts for Latin script. Version 2.00, September 2008 [cited: 2010-04-14]. Available at: http://guindo.pntic.mec.es/jmag0042/palefont.html; in detail by: Novak, Viktor. Latinska paleografija. 2. izd. Beograd : Naučna knjiga, 1980. Pp. 231-256.

What does the document look like

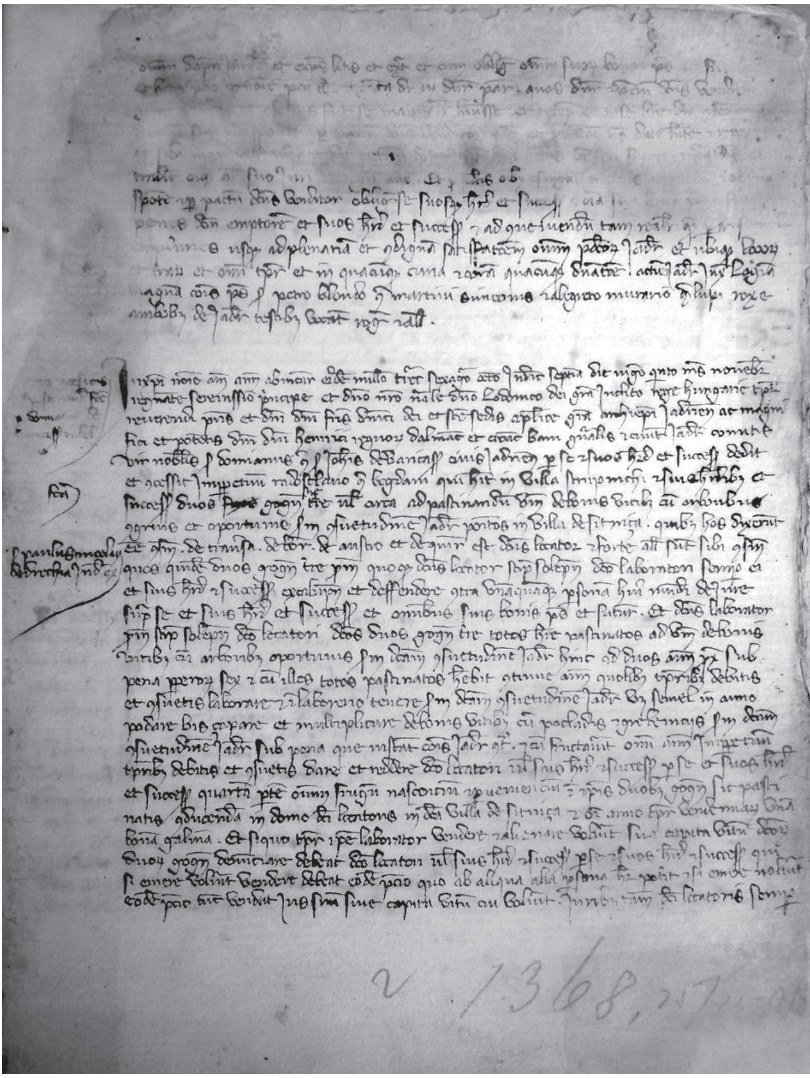


Figure 1.
Photography of the note of Petar Perençan, vol. 10, 2r, Photo by Linda Mijić.

What and how was the document written

The new document begins approximately on the second third of the page. Below is the transcript of the first nine lines of the document on leasing a piece of land to plant a vineyard, the text from the left margin was put in the title.

[Ca]rta c*on*cesio*n*is // ad pastinand*um* f*act*e // p*er* Damianu*m* de // Varicass*is* [...]
F*act*a.
S*er* Paulus Nicolay // de Drechia iud*ex* ex*aminator*.

1	In Xpi*sti* no*min*e, am*en*. Ann*o* ab incar*natione* ei*us*de*m* mill*esim*o tre-
2	c*entesimo* sexag*esim*o oct*au*o, indic*tione* septi*m*a, die
	vig*esim*o q*ui*nto m*ens*is noue*m*br*is*,
3	regna*n*te serenissi*m*o p*r*incipe et d*om*ino n*ost*ro n*atur*ale, d*omi*no Lo-
4	douico, Dei gra*tia* inclito rege Hungarie, t*em*por*e*
5	reuerendi p*at*ris et d*omi*ni, d*omi*ni f*rat*ris D*omi*nici, Dei et S*anct*e Se-
6	dis Ap*osto*lice gra*tia* archiepi*scopi* Iadrien*sis* ac magni-
7	fici et pote*n*tis d*om*ini, d*om*ini Hemrici, regnor*um* Dalmac*ie* et Croa-
8	c*ie* bani gen*er*alis et civit*atis* Iadr*e* comitis,
9	vir nob*i*lis s*er* Domianus c*ondam* s*er* Ioh*ann*is de Varicass*is*, civis
10	Iadrien*sis*, p*er* se et suos h*e*red*es* et success*ores*, dedit
11	et c*on*cessit imp*er*petuu*m* Radostlauo c*ondam* Bogdani, qui h*abit*a*t* in
12	villa Strupnichi, *et* suis h*er*edibu*s* et
13	success*oribus* duos ~~suos~~ gogn*aos* <sue> t*er*re u*e*l circa ad pastinandu*m*
14	vin*eam* de bonis vitib*us* cu*m* arboribus
15	c*on*gruis et oportunis, s*ecundu*m c*on*suetudine*m* Iadr*e*, po*s*itos in villa
16	de Sitniça, quib*us* hos dixeru*n*t
	e*ss*e c*on*fin*es*: de traue*r*sa, de bor*ea*, de austro et de quir*ina* est d*ict*us
	locator et forte al*ii* su*n*t sibi
	c*on*fines...

Definitely the most conspicuous characteristic of the text is that the words were abbreviated. The already mentioned manuals by Stipišić and Novak can be of help, but by far the most complete is Cappelli's *Lexicon abreviaturarum.*[6] The abbreviation system was such that it regularly gave a clear enough context to interpret the abbreviated words or the abbreviation symbol was unequivocal; for instance ***millo*** is easily deciphered as ***mill***esim***o*** in the context of dating, and the case ending ***–o*** is the key for the next word ***trec-*** that should be in the same case ***trec***entisimo. The word ***ei***us***sd***en is written in the form *eide*, but an abbreviation symbol is placed over ***ei*** in the shape of semicircle that always replaces ***us***.

6 Cappelli, Adriano. Lexicon abbreviaturarum : dizionario di abbreviature latine ed italiane. 6a ed. Milano : Ulrico Hoepli, [s. a.]

The greatest problems present the names of people and places. They cannot be found in dictionaries, they are of different etymologies (Croatian, Romanic, Germanic ...), and all the handwritten letters are not unambiguous. It is practically impossible to differentiate between *m, n, u, i*...if one does not recognize the word. Thus the indexes of the already published notaries' documents and Internet sources are of avail to determine whether the presumed form of the name is present anywhere. This gives at least some certainty that we are on the right track.

Should notary documents be published

In addition to the fact that the communication with manuscripts is an impossible mission, there is no doubt that they will be much more accessible if they are transcribed and published either on paper or in a digital form. Only seven were published up to now,[7] which is perhaps two percent of the total. It is encouraging that an ever greater number of professionals take interest in this work.

How to transcribe

The question is to what extent one should remain faithful to the original, and to what extent should the text be adapted to the modern reader. In principle, we tend to remain as close to the original as possible. The greatest quandary is whether to mark the abbreviated words in some way. If we decide to mark them, in what way should they be marked: in brackets, italics (as in the above example), bold? Perhaps we should

7 Spisi zadarskih bilježnika = Notarilia Jadertina. Zadar : Državni arhiv u Zadru, 1959-
1 : Spisi zadarskih bilježnika Henrika i Creste Tarallo : 1279-1308. = Notariorum Jadrensium Henrici et Creste Tarallo acta quae supersunt : 1279-1308. / prepisao i indeks sastavio = transcripsit et indices digessit Mirko Zjačić. 1959.
2 : Spisi zadarskih bilježnika Ivana Qualis, Nikole pok. Ivana Gerarda iz Padove : 1296 ... 1337. = Notariorum Jadrensium Johannis Qualis Nicolai quandam Johannis Gerardi di Padua acta quae supersunt : 1296 ... 1337. / prepisali i indekse sastavili = transcripserunt et indices digesserunt Mirko Zjačić i Jakov Stipišić. 1969.
3 : Spisi zadarskog bilježnika Franje Manfreda de Surdis iz Piacenze : 1349-1350 = Notarii Jadrensis Francisci ser Manfredi de Surdis de Placentia acta quae supersunt : 1349-1350 / prepisao i indekse sastavio = transcripsit et indices digessit Jakov Stipišić. 1977.
4 : Andrija pok. Petra iz Cantùa : bilježnički zapisi = Andreas condam Petri de Canturio : quaterni imbreviaturarum
Sv. 1 : 1353. - 1355. / prepisao latinski tekst te izradio hrvatske sažetke i kazala Robert Leljak ; s izvornikom sravnio, izvršio redakciju teksta i kazala te izradio kritički aparat i bilješke Josip Kolanović [Latin text transcribed and Croatian summaries by Robert Leljak; compared with the original, editing of text and indexes, and critical apparatus and comments by Josip Kolanović]. 2001.
Sv. 2 : 1355-1356. / za tisak priredili Josip Kolanović i Robert Leljak [prepared for printing by Josip Kolanović and Robert Leljak]. 2003.

prepare such an edition only in digital form and the printed edition should be published without distinguishing the abbreviations, as it was customary in the already published editions in Croatia?

There are big differences in the presentation of capitals and punctuation. The text might be overburdened if it contained the original way of writing, although that can be interesting to somebody as well. In that case it will be necessary to consult the original.

The same goes for some other orthographic issues, i. e. the difference between antique and mediaeval style of writing, like diphthongs, double vowels, letter *h*, some inserted phonemes, possible mistakes. In this matter, we tend to stick to what was written, without "correcting" notary's forms.

The result of marking the abbreviations

Although the reader would get a more correct insight into the way the notary wrote, there are cases, albeit rare, where we are not certain how to interpret the abbreviation. In such a situation everybody could find a solution himself/herself, having an insight into the way the notary registered words. We are wondering whether it is worth it, because graphical marking of abbreviations slows down the work twice, the letter types should be changed several times. For instance, the notary writes the word *nomine* as *noie* with an abbreviation mark above it. Accordingly, one should first write *no*, then switch back to italics (or bold, or open a parenthesis) and write *m*, then switch back to normal type and write *i*, again switch to italic for *n* and finally switch back to normal type for the last letter *e: nomine.* And the text is full of such words. Thus no final decision was made.

Post scriptum

However, after the reaction of listeners to the question, we are convinced that any kind of abbreviation marking would only slow down the reading. Thus we lean towards not marking them at all, and the rare difficult parts will be explained in footnotes.

References

Cappelli, Adriano. Lexicon abbreviaturarum : dizionario di abbreviature latine ed italiane. 6a ed. Milano : Ulrico Hoepli, [s. a.]

Diplomatički zbornik kraljevine Hrvatske, Dalmacije i Slavonije. Sv. 1 : Listine godina 743-1100. / uredio Marko Kostrenčić ; sakupili i obradili Jakov Stipišić i Miljen Šamšalović. Zagreb : Jugoslavenska akademija znanosti i umjetnosti, 1967.

Novak, Viktor. Latinska paleografija. 2. izd. Beograd : Naučna knjiga, 1980.

Paleographic fonts for Latin script. Version 2.00, September 2008 [cited: 2010-04-14]. Available at: http://guindo.pntic.mec.es/jmag0042/palefont.html

Spisi zadarskih bilježnika = Notarilia Jadertina. Zadar : Državni arhiv u Zadru, 1959-

1 : Spisi zadarskih bilježnika Henrika i Creste Tarallo : 1279-1308. = Notariorum Jadrensium Henrici et Creste Tarallo acta quae supersunt : 1279-1308. / prepisao i indeks sastavio = transcripsit et indices digessit Mirko Zjačić. 1959.

2 : Spisi zadarskih bilježnika Ivana Qualis, Nikole pok. Ivana Gerarda iz Padove : 1296 ... 1337. = Notariorum Jadrensium Johannis Qualis Nicolai quandam Johannis Gerardi di Padua acta quae supersunt : 1296 ... 1337. / prepisali i indekse sastavili = transcripserunt et indices digesserunt Mirko Zjačić i Jakov Stipišić. 1969.

3 : Spisi zadarskog bilježnika Franje Manfreda de Surdis iz Piacenze : 1349-1350 = Notarii Jadrensis Francisci ser Manfredi de Surdis de Placentia acta quae supersunt : 1349-1350 / prepisao i indekse sastavio = transcripsit et indices digessit Jakov Stipišić. 1977.

4 : Andrija pok. Petra iz Cantùa : bilježnički zapisi = Andreas condam Petri de Canturio : quaterni imbreviaturarum

Sv. 1 : 1353. - 1355. / prepisao latinski tekst te izradio hrvatske sažetke i kazala Robert Leljak ; s izvornikom sravnio, izvršio redakciju teksta i kazala te izradio kritički aparat i bilješke Josip Kolanović [Latin text transcribed and Croatian summaries by Robert Leljak; compared with the original, editing of text and indexes, and critical apparatus and comments by Josip Kolanović]. 2001.

Sv. 2 : 1355-1356. / za tisak priredili Josip Kolanović i Robert Leljak [prepared for printing by Josip Kolanović and Robert Leljak]. 2003.

Stipišić, Jakov. Pomoćne povijesne znanosti u teoriji i praksi. 2. dopunjeno izd. Zagreb : Školska knjiga, 1985.

Usmiani, Ante. Arhivska građa za srednjodalmatinsko područje u Historijskom arhivu u Zadru. // Građa i prilozi za povijest Dalmacije 11(1990), 83-93.

Zadarski statut : sa svim reformacijama, odnosno, novim uredbama donesenima do godine 1563. / sada ponovno izdali, kritičkim aparatom opskrbili te kazalom osoba, mjesta i stvari obogatili i na hrvatski jezik preveli Josip Kolanović i Mate Križman. Zadar : Matica hrvatska, ogranak : Hrvatski državni arhiv, 1997.

Biographical sketch

Milenko Lončar, PhD, is a Senior Lecturer at the Department of Classical Philology, University of Zadar. He graduated in Classical Sciences and Classical Philology at the Faculties of Philosophy in Belgrade and Zagreb, respectively, and in Byzantology on the postgraduate study in

Belgrade. He obtained his doctoral degree with the thesis entitled *Porphyrogenitus' Reports about Croatia* at the Faculty of Philosophy in Zadar in 2002. He publishes independent papers in professional journals as well as in domestic and foreign proceedings.

STARI RUKOPISI U ZADRU

VRLO KRATAK UVOD U STANJE I U NEDOUMICE OKO NAČINA OBJAVLJIVANJA

Sažetak

U uvodnom dijelu članka objašnjene su povijesne okolnosti pojave starih rukopisa u Zadru te nabrojane zadarske institucije u kojima se ti rukopisi nalaze. Nadalje je opisan način razvrstavanja rukopisa te uloga osoba koje su ih naručivale i stvarale. Opisani su i osnovni dijelovi svakog notarskog zapisa koji su prikazani na primjeru zapisa Petra Perençana, zadarskog bilježnika iz druge polovice 14. stoljeća. Zaključno je otvoreno pitanje transkripcije latinskih notarskih zapisa, osobito problem (ne)razrješivanja kratica, razlike između antičkog i srednjovjekovnog načina pisanja, kao što je pisanje diftonga, dvostrukih suglasnika, slova *h*, nekih umetnutih glasova ili eventualnih pogrešaka.

Ključne riječi: rukopisi, notarski zapisi, Zadar

THE HIDDEN AUTHOR
FORMS OF AUTHOR'S "I" ON THE EARLY MODERN FRONT PAGES

Zoran Velagić
University of J. J. Strossmayer in Osijek, Faculty of Philosophy, Department of Information Sciences, Croatia

Abstract
The aim of this essay is to investigate three aspects of authorial practices in the 18th century. Firstly, could the author's name alone authorise the contents of the early modern religious books published in Croatian vernacular; in this context, the models for placing the author's name on the title page will be investigated. Secondly, was the title page the place where author's "I" searched for recognition; in this perspective it will be shown that instead on the title page, reserved for saints and patrons, the author's "I" could speak in prefaces and dedications. Thirdly, was the book which is today considered anonymous, thus unauthored, and also anonymous for the literary community at the time when it was published.

Key words:
author, authorisation, religious vernacular books, paratextuality.

The Catholic Church resolved at the Council of Trent the question whether the author should be hidden or visible in a printed book. At its 4th session, incited primarily by the growth of evangelist publications, it was ordered that in future all books on sacred matters should be examined, approved, and finally, they should all, without exception, display the names of the author, censor and printer.

> "And wishing, as is just, to impose a restraint, in this matter, also on printers, who now without restraint, – thinking, that is, that whatsoever they please is allowed them, – print, without the license of ecclesiastical superiors, the said books of sacred Scripture, and the notes and comments upon them of all persons indifferently, with the press ofttimes unnamed, often even fictitious, and what is more grievous still, without the author's name; and

also keep for indiscriminate sale books of this kind printed elsewhere; (this Synod) ordains and decrees (...) that it shall not be lawful for any one to print, or cause to be printed, any books whatever, on sacred matters, without the name of the author; nor to sell them in future, or even to keep them, unless they should have been first examined and approved of, by the Ordinary; (...) And the said approbation of books of this kind shall be given in writing, and for this end it shall appear authentically at the beginning of the book."[1]

What were the reasons that such a decree was frequently neglected in the country that was well-known for its faithfulness,[2] and where the authors wrote that

"we must often humbly praise the Lord for great, undeserved grants and His mercy, that He allowed us to be born where we are, and to be baptised in such a Catholic kingdom (...)"?[3]

The models for placing the author's name on the title page could possibly answer this question, and they will take us back to the concept of author-function developed by Michel Foucault in his famous essay "What is an author".[4] Roger Chartier latter pinpointed particularly this aspect of his thinking, but he also refuted strict bounding of the author's functionality to his judicial responsibility, as Foucault did. Chartier advocates a need to grasp the author's function in relation to all other factors involved in book production.

"Thought of (and thinking of himself or herself) as a demiurge, the writer none the less creates in a state of dependence. Dependence upon the rules (of patronage, subsidy, and the market) that define the writer's condition."[5]

1 The canons and decrees of the Sacred and Oecumenical Council of Trent, Celebrated under the Sovereign Pontiffs. Paul III., Julius III., and Pius IV. / translated by the Rev J. Waterworth. London : C. Dolman, 1848. Pp. 20.

2 For example, when Rudolph II in the Treaty of Vienna confirmed religious tolerance and the rights of the Protestants in Hungary, the Croatian Diet adopted in 1606 an article that only Catholicism is to be allowed as a denomination in Croatia. Rudolph II verified this article in 1608.

3 Mulih, Juraj. Poszel Apostolszki [The Work of Apostles]. Zagreb, 1742. Pp. 1317.

4 Foucault, Michael. What is an author. // Rethinking popular culture : contemporary perspectives in cultural studies / edited by Chandra Mukerji, Michael Schudson. Berkley : University of California Press, 1991. Pp. 453.

5 Chartier, Roger. The order of books : readers, authors, and libraries in Europe between the fourteenth and eighteenth centuries. Cambridge : Polity Press, 1994. Pp. x.

Likewise, he depends on publishers, booksellers, and readers. But he is also constrained,

> "in that he undergoes the multiple determinations that organize the social space of literary production and that, in a more general sense, determine the categories and the experiences that are the very matrices of writing."[6]

The author cannot be separated from his social context, nor can he be observed in any other way but through the various functions performed towards his home institution, patrons, censors, printers, booksellers, fellow-authors, and readers.

Although a small number of Croatian early modern religious books have been published entirely anonymously (that is to say without the author's name and without the place and date of publication),[7] in many books, instead of the author's name the title page exhibited his functions. Thus, we read: by certain pious monk of St. Paul's order; made by an Observantine; by a son of St. Francis from the province of John Capistran etc.

Even when we proceed to the signed books, we shall notice the same: the author's name was insufficient; he was obliged to identify himself further. Members of religious orders always recorded their belonging to a group or order: by Father Boltižar Milovac, member of the Society of Jesus; by Juraj Habdelić, missionary of the Society of Jesus; by Juraj Mulih, missionary of the Society of Jesus and Apostolic missionary; or by Josip Stojanović from Brod, member of St. Francis Order. We also read: Authore M.V.P. F. Fortunato Svagel. Concionatore generali, nec non Provinciae Observantis Divi Ladislai Regis in Sclavonia alumno, where the author placed a Latin signature on the title page of a vernacular book.[8] There is a case where authorship was identified only by the order: "[this book] was sent from fathers Franciscans in Zagreb to all Seraphic Province of St. Ladislaus."[9]

6 Ibid., pp. 28-29.

7 For example a small primer attributed to Juraj Mulih and perhaps published in 1737 in Zagreb (compare Velagić, Zoran. Štokavska početnica Jurja Muliha iz 1737. godine. // Gazophylacium 5, 1-2(2000), 16-48.).

8 Švagelj, Fortunat, Opus selectum concionum festivalium ordinariarum et extraordinariarum. Zagreb : no date. This book was written for parish priests. While the basic text is in the Croatian vernacular, all the comments, preface and even the title page are in Latin.

9 Manuale Confessariorum, iliti Ruchna Knisicza Szpovednikov [Manuale Confessariorum, or the Handbook for Father Confessors]. Zagreb, 1725.

Identification was also customary for secular priests: by Štefan Fuček, priest from Krapina; by Josip Krmpotić, priest born in Lika; by Antun Josip Turković, priest from Upper Osijek, Retfala and Gravica.[10]

It would seem that what mattered was the author's function in the authorisation of a text. His name could be omitted, a book could be anonymous although it dealt with religious matters, but the author's functions had to be on display. To put it simply, in religious works the author, as an individual, existed only as a representative of the institution – the Catholic Church (*see illustrations 1 and 2*). This is why in *such a Catholic kingdom* the decrees of the Council of Trent were not literally implemented. It was not the author's name that vouched for the truthfulness of a book, but the institution behind him, irrespective of whether the work was a translation, a compilation or an original text.

When we search for the author's 'I' in the production that could hardly have been innovative, we must for the most part turn to the so-called extra-textual items such as introductions, prefaces, dedications, and title pages. There we find the author's personal motives, difficulties he encountered, his needs and hopes. To ensure the author's visibility in a book, the title page is such a place *per excellence*. Anyone wishing to identify himself as an author would place his proper name on the title page. Moreover, the assumed new economics of writing that was discussed in the previous chapter "supposed the full visibility of the author, the original creator of a work."[11] Nothing is more contrary to such a presumption than the actual visibility of the author's name on the early modern Croatian title pages. Before the end of the eighteenth century the author's name on popular religious works rarely occupied a whole line and was only sporadically emphasised by conspicuous typography. Title pages of religious works did

10 Such a way of identification was also accepted by most authors who published books on secular issues, for example, by Antun Romani, imperial and royal inspector of mulberry-trees and silk in Croatia, by Ivan Mihael Schosulan, professor of medicine, and so on. Only in the last decade of the 18th century we spot the authors who moved away from the usual scheme, and who assumed their name would suffice: "Events of the World, by Daniel Emerik Bogdanić"; "Basis of cereal trade (...) by Josip Šipuš, a Croat from Karlovac". These authors discussed questions of general history in ancient times and commerce, so they did not directly challenge any established authority. They were certainly the forerunners of the times to come in their concept of authorship, new book topics and even layout of the title pages (shorter and freed of superfluous detail) but in their period they were isolated. Apparently, books on religious matters did not change, not one was published bearing exclusively the author's name, without noting his function and the authority behind him that authorised the content.

11 Chartier, R. Op. cit., p. 39.

not change much throughout the early modern period. Titles usually run across the width of the page and frequently contain comments, a few key words of the title or the name of a Saint or donor which are generally highlighted. The author's name was, more often than not, left out or disguised by the running lines, often placed close to the very bottom of the page (*see illustrations 3-5*).[12] Although a prevalent model of displaying the author's name on the title page did not exist, in an overwhelming majority of preserved books it was not visible at a first glance, as the titles preferred to emphasise the name of the patron or a few words of a title (*see illustration 6*).

The author's 'I' certainly had more opportunity to speak in other extra-textual forms – dedications and prefaces. Generally speaking, the extra-textual forms were, undoubtedly, "a dynamic interaction between interlocutors"[13] or "an interplay between the writer and the public sphere",[14] albeit a one-way interplay. In dedications and prefaces the authors set the text within the cultural and social tradition, by mentioning prominent precursors, patrons, their religious order, social class and the like.

The author's 'I' appears in extra-textual items in many forms, and one of the most frequent is clarifying the motivation for writing: books were written to teach and to help, whether in religious or in secular matters.

> "Your love, dear Christian and respected reader, touched me to write this book. That you can, by frequent reading, understand the love of your Saviour who loved you so much, when He died for you; and after you think of His love, that you can fittingly thank Him".[15]

12 In the overall Croatian early modern book production there are rare exceptions to this model. Chartier wrote that the most spectacular "is the physical representation of the author in his book. The portrait of the author (...) makes the assignation of the text to a single 'I' immediately visible (...)." (Chartier, R. Op. cit., p. 52). According to the preserved Croatian early modern books, we have but one such example, that of Matija Antun Reljković (Reljković, Matija Antun. Nova Slavonska, i Nimacska Gramatika [New Slavonian and German Grammar]. Zagreb, 1767.).

13 Losse, Deborah N. Sampling the book : Renaissance prologues and the French conteurs. Lewisburg : Bucknell University Press ; London and Toronto : Associated University Press, 1994. P. 13.

14 Dunn, Kevin. Pretext of authority : the rhetoric of authorship in the Renaissance preface. Stanford : Stanford University Press, 1994. P. 7.

15 Velikanović, Ivan. Razmishljanja Bogoljubna sv. Bonaventure [Pious Meditations of St. Bonaventura]. Osijek, 1776. Preface, no pagination.

> "Nothing delights our Lord more, but helping the sinner to get out from Devil's web (...). This is that stirred me up to write this book".[16]

Some authors ask their readers to respond, promising new editions if they find the book useful and pleasant. This was particularly the case with books of sermons that could be published successively.

> "If I find that these sermons [published for autumn and winter period] please parish priests and preachers, those for spring and summer will follow".[17]

When Ivan Mulih, parish priest from Zagreb, published the second part of his sermons, he felt compelled to give an explanation that is not unfamiliar even to modern authors:

> "I am very late in fulfilling the promise I gave in my last book, because I was extremely busy, and the printer had many problems (...)."[18]

Some authors, while explaining their motivation for writing their latest book, used the opportunity to inform the readers that they had already published some useful texts.

> "From my early days I thought how I could please my compatriots, and I could not find anything else, but to publish several books. So I decided to make one, and I called it Heavenly Way, and I have completed another one, and named it Spiritual Thoughts. I have The Lives of Saints in progress, so be patient my compatriots in waiting for its publication. Now take the Life of St. Ivan of Nepomuk (...). Take all of these from your native man, and pray to the Lord for me."[19]

> "Here, my lovely brothers, are the Holy Gospels and sermons, from the first to the last letter (...). If someone asks to read, hear, and understand the events from the Holy Gospel, he can find them in my Core of the Holy Gospel, that I published four years ago for the pleasure of soul and salutary advantage."[20]

16 Pavić, Emerik. Rucsna Knjixica [Handbook]. Pest, 1769. Preface, no pagination.

17 Pavić, Emerik. Prosvitljenje i Ogrianje Jesenog i Zimnog Doba [Enlightening and Warming for Autumn and Winter]. Buda, 1762. Preface, no pagination.

18 Mulih, Ivan. Prodestva Kratka [Short Sermons]. Zagreb, 1784. P. 4.

19 Knezović, Antun Josip. Kruna obderxavaiucsiu stanie apostolsko [The Crown for Keeping the Apostles Faith]. Pest, 1759. Preface, no pagination.

20 Pavić, Emerik. Epistole, i Evangjelja [Epistles and Gospels]. Buda, 1764. Preface, no pagination.

In all these examples, the authors emphasise their care for the community. They write for people's benefit and act in order to ensure the salvation of souls. They take the opportunity to connect the book at hand with other useful texts. Although their names were hidden or even omitted from the title pages, they appear on the pages that immediately follow, where they elaborately explain that the function of books is to strengthen the believers in true faith.

This aim is even more obvious when we read the accounts of the life situations that stirred the writers to write. These give us a unique and singularly important opportunity to relate the writings to everyday life.

The first example is an encounter of the Franciscan Emerik Pavić with an Orthodox believer. As life in the neighbourhood of the Orthodox Church community caused inevitable communication with its members, Pavić wished to equip every Catholic meeting an Orthodox with a suitable answer, making sure that the possible exchange of ideas would persuade the latter to accept the authority of the Catholic Church.[21]

> "It often happens that those who possess the true faith encounter an Orthodox believer, as it happened to me in a tavern in 1761, where I dropped in with my fellow travellers. An Orthodox believer asked me about the true faith. My short, 'traveller's reply to him I now present in this book, so that it may help any of my brothers and other faithful Christians."[22]

The Jesuit Juraj Mulih expounded Evangelical teaching.

> "Misbelievers hate the word *tradition* very much. They say they do not believe in anything but just in what is written in the Holy Scripture. But they interpret it however they want (...). And everything just so that they can settle their wrong teaching on the Holy Scripture, mislead poor people and take them to eternal perish."[23]

Mulih pinpointed subjectivity in Evangelical teaching that caused the aberrations from the tradition. The "misbelievers" hate the word tradition, but tradition was exactly what Croatian writers eagerly endeavoured to preserve – this is why every one of Mulih's writings on Evangelical teachings starts off from the tradition. To make a parallel, the Franciscan Bernardin Leaković in his *Weekly Sermons* wrote:

21 Compare Velagić, Zoran. The Croatian author at the frontier of Catholicism and Orthodoxy in Croatia. // Frontiers of faith / edited by Eszter Andor, István György Tóth. Budapest : Central European University and European Science Foundation, 2001. Pp. 89-97.

22 Pavić, E. Rucsna Knjixica. Op. cit., preface, no pagination.

23 Mulih, J. Poszel Apostolszki. Op. cit., p. 463.

> "Nothing new will you find here my brother, but only that the older speech and thought."[24]

Henri-Jean Martin put forward an appropriate general interpretation of this attitude:

> "The Catholic religion, a religion of the book, was thus also a religion of a tradition, so the church considered it logical that it be designated by the supreme Power as the interpreter of the book and the guardian of a custom."[25]

The third example shows how an author, compiling his work from different foreign books, performs censorship. The Franciscan Aleksandar Tomiković published a biography of the Russian emperor Peter the Great, but decided not to use the books published in England and Germany.

> "For both writers were Protestants, they used the occasion to foolishly attack the Moscow law, particularly Ruthenian Church, that is united with Rome (...). Since the aforementioned books contain puzzling and foolish writings, it was neither allowed nor gentle to bring them to honourable readers."[26]

The fourth example, given by Ivan Marević, the canon in Pécs and parish priest in the Slavonian village Nijemci, shows his feelings for the French Revolution, Napoleonic wars and, consequently, for the French in general. Marević translated the book of Thierry Ruinart, *Acta sanctorum Ordinis S. Benedicti* (1668), and explained that Ruinart had researched libraries all over the Europe.

> "And this is immense luck, even merciful Lord's providence that is luck itself, that he did it. Because now the Frenchmen – enemies both of any royal dignity and of the holy Catholic faith which they, although baptised soullessly abandoned; blasphemers and killers of their king and queen – are spreading the fear of their weapon all around Europe and even broader. They disturbed all kingdoms and conquered many states, more by promising the false freedom than by virtue of soldiers' weapon. At the same time, they burned down and robbed, attacking even the best li-

24 Bernardin Leaković, Govorenja za sve Nedilje [The Weekly Sermons] (Osijek, 1795): preface.

25 Martin, Henri-Jean. The history and power of writing. Chicago and London : The University of Chicago Press, 1994. P. 269.

26 Tomiković, Aleksandar Xivot. Petra Velikoga Czara Russie [The Life of Russian Emperor Peter the Great]. Osijek, 1794. Preface, no pagination.

> braries, which stored the books with the lives of the Saints. These books they took away and scattered, so today no man could write the lives of the Saints."[27]

The last example comes from Pater Grgur Kapucin (that was the nickname for the Capuchin Juraj Maljevac), who wrote a poem about the war between the Habsburg Monarchy and the Ottoman Empire (1787-1791).

> "The writer does not fawn upon any troop, he objectively writes who did what without his additions, but using only facts from the newspaper published by the Court".

In the footnote he explained what newspapers were used: "Viennese special newspaper called Hofbericht. That everything that happened was published truthfully there was made sure by the Court alone."[28]

Here we have five examples that addressed the Orthodox, the Evangelicals, the Frenchmen and the objectivity in writing. While the first four speak for themselves, the last deserves special consideration. There was no suspicion in Maljevac's mind that something published by the Court in Vienna could be one-sided or prejudiced. Even when writing about the enemy, the Court was to be trusted absolutely. Even though Maljevac belonged to a religious order, he believed in secular authority. Not only would he not violate the system of the Catholic Church, but he would not even think of challenging or disobeying state authority.

What those examples also prove is that no transgression was to be found among the early modern Croatian authors. They never attacked the system, but were, quite to the contrary, amongst its toughest upholders. At the moment their 'I' becomes visible, it is in the function of protecting the system.

There is perhaps one more reason while the decrees from Trent were not literally implemented in Croatian vernacular book production. Working inside the same institutional framework created co-operative ambience that granted support to every member of the institution. Thus, one should be very careful before proclaiming a book anonymous, for what is unknown to us today, was, most likely, well known to the author's contemporaries, in a period when all members of a tiny

27 Marević, Ivan Dilla. Svetih Mucsenikah [Deeds of the Holy Martyrs]. Osijek, 1800. Introduction, no pagination.

28 Kapucin, Grgur. Neztranchno vezdassnyega tabora izpiszavanye za leto 1788 [The Objective Writings on Current Wars for 1788]. Zagreb, 1789. Preface, no pagination.

literate community knew one another very well. It was well known that the book for Croats in Burgenland entitled *Marian Flowers* (Sopron, 1781),[29] with only the preface signed with initials "J. S. Franciscan" was written by Jeremija Šoštarić, a local parish priest. When in 1760 the second Croatian issue of *De Imitatione Christi* was published (first issue in 1710), it was well known that the book was translated, adopted and edited by the Paulist Ivan Krištolovec, which was written on the title page, alas by hand. For over half a century his name was known, but he remained a "certain monk". It should be noted that Krištolovec usually signed his Latin works. We read that *Panegyricon Austriacum* (no place or date of printing) was written by Joannis Kristolovecz Croatae Varasdinensis Ord. S. Pauli pr. Eremitae Vicarii Generalis SS. Theologiae Doctoris (...). There are also instances where authors hid their names somewhere in the text. Although the Franciscan Blaž Bošnjak did not sign his poem about the war between the Habsburg Monarchy and the Ottoman Empire (1787-1791), we can read:

"All the heroes joined together,
but no priest was with them,
only lonely Blaž Bošnjak (...)."[30]

However, the title page highlighted that it was a military chaplain who wrote the book. Here, in the poem form, a wholly different genre, what was brought into focus was not the name but the function. And in the first case, even when signed only by his initials, the author had to identify his belonging to the institution.

Many examples prove that authors knew and supported each other, studied each other's books and dedicated poems and other works to one another.

The system of censorship in the early modern Croatia provides perhaps the best evidence of the authors' mutual help and collaboration. It would be simply impossible to bring out all the examples, but for the purpose of this work it will suffice to show that a single person did perform both the function of an author and that of a censor. However, it must be noted that this form of collaboration was limited to one order. The exceptions were the Jesuits appointed as censors at the university presses (for example in Graz). They were obliged to censor and give permission for all the books printed there. The Paulists, on the

29 Šoštarić, Jeremija. Marianszko Czveche [Marian Flowers]. Soproni, 1781.
30 Bošnjak, Blaž. Ispisanje Ratta Turskoga pod Josipom Cesarom II [Writings on Turkish Wars under the Emperor Joseph II]. Osijek, 1792.

other hand, regularly censored and approved books of other Paulists. The Latin work of Josip Bedeković, his famous *Natale solum* published in Vienner Neustadt in 1752, had the approbation of his fellow Hrizostom Križ, at that time the definitor of the Province. Križ also signed a second approbation for *The Flower of Saints* (Graz, 1752), by Hilarion Gašparoti, but Bedeković, author of *Natale solum*, signed the first one. A single person appeared as censor and author in the same year.

An example in the Franciscan order is even more striking. *Consolation of the Rueful* (Pest, 1797) by Grgur Peštalić had approbations signed by Aleksandar Tomiković and Ivan Velikanović. The approbation for *Holy Sermons* (Osijek, 1797) by the same Tomiković was signed by Bernardin Leaković and *The Weekly Sermons* (Osijek, 1795) written by Leaković were approved by Tomiković. The censor and author simply reversed positions: one that was the censor became the author and the author became the censor. The same Franciscans also collaborated on Latin works. Ivan Velikanović as "Lector Jubilatus & Ex-Minister Provincialis" signed the approbation for Josip Pavišević's *Saecula seraphica ex illustrioribus gestis* (Osijek, 1777) and Ivan Velikanović and Jerolim Lipovčić were among the eight signers for Emerik Pavić's *Ramus Viridantis Olivae* (Buda, 1766), the history of the province of Bosna Argentina.

It is quite clear that manuscripts circulated among the members of the literary community. An author could become a censor and *vice versa*. The tiny community performed all the functions involved in the institutionalised prepublication censorship. Before the book was sent to the printer, it was approved by the system. This again confirms that the authors knew the works of their colleagues well, participated in their writing and could rely on them when necessary.

However, while censorship was performed inside an order, the use of the predecessors' or colleagues' books did not always take into consideration such boundaries. The Paulist Hilarion Gašparoti, writing his four volumes of *The Flower of Saints*, used works of his fellows Ivan Krištolovec and Josip Bedeković, the Jesuits Juraj Habdelić and Juraj Mulih, the Franciscan Štefan Zagrebec, and the works of secular priests Štefan Fuček and Adam Baltazar Krčelić,[31] clearly showing that their different church orders would not deter him from his purpose.

The works of the predecessors were particularly helpful when authors encountered problems in writing, such as, for example, the problems relating to orthography. Franciscans Ivan Velikanović (*Catholic In-*

structions, Osijek, 1787) and Marijan Lanosović (*Illyrian Gospels*, Buda, 1794) pointed out that they used the *Dizionario italiano-latino-illirico* published in 1728 by Ardelio Della Bella, a Jesuit from Dubrovnik. Another Franciscan, Emerik Pavić, praises his fellow Stjepan Vilov who in *Friendly Talks* (Buda, 1736) outlined the rules of orthography, and Lovro Bračuljević (*Knot of Seraphic Burning Love*, Buda, 1730) states that he followed the writing of the Franciscan provincial Mihael Radnić. Antun Josip Turković, parish priest in Osijek, refers to Velikanović:

> "Regarding orthography, or accurate writing, I followed father Franciscan Ivan Velikanović (...)".[32]

The Jesuit Antun Kanižlić writes:

> "As we have different ways of writing in our language, one using this, another that, I followed the way that was used in primers distributed in the recent years."[33]

Besides finding models and support in the works of the colleagues and predecessors, authors often dedicated their books to one another. In *Honourable Memory of the Old and Noble County of Bačka* (Kaloča, 1790) Franciscan Grgur Peštalić published a poem dedicated to "Josip Krmpotić, military chaplain." Franciscan Matija Petar Katančić in *Fructus auctumnales* (1791) dedicated poems to his comrades Blaž Tadijanović and Josip Pavišević. Another work, *Specimen philologiae et geographiae Pannoniorum* (Zagreb, 1794), was dedicated by Katančić to "Josip Pavišević, Historiar. et omnis literaturae elegantioris studiosissimo" and others. Not many necrologies of the Croatian authors have been preserved, but we know that Zagreb professor and Latin writer Vinko Kalafatić delivered a sermon for Adam Baltazar Krčelić, that was published under the title *Oratio funebris quam dum 8. Idus Aprilis Anno 1778. Balthasari Adamo Kerchelich grati animi ergo parentabat regia Zagrebienis Academia in templo academico habuit Vincentius Kallafatich juris nature atem professor, Zagrabiae 1778*.

Finally, authors appear as editors of their colleagues' works after they passed away. Franciscan Ivan Velikanović edited *The Life of Virgin Mary* (Pécs, 1773) by Antun Bačić stating in *Warning* to the book:

31 Compare Galinec, Franjo. Habdelićev utjecaj u Gašparotijevoj legendi 'Cvet sveteh'. // Vrela i prinosi 6(1936), 108-138.

32 Turković, Antun Josip. Xivot Svetoga Eustachie [The Life of Holy Eustachian]. Osijek, 1795. Preface, no pagination.

33 Kanižlić, Antun. Utocsiste Blaxenoj Divici Marii [The Shelter of Virgin Mary]. Venice, 1759. Preface, no pagination.

> "Twenty two years have passed after father Antun Bačić completed and even composed this book. But when it was ready to be published, he exchanged the temporary life for eternity."

The proof that the greater Franciscan community participated in publishing of Bačić's book are the signatures of approvals by Josip Pavišević and Emerik Pavić. One book featured four early modern Croatian authors. It was similar to the *Epistles and Gospels* (Buda, 1740), composed by the Franciscan Nikola Kesić. In the midst of writing the work he died of plague, and brothers Franciscans from the Buda monastery completed and published the book.

The most telling evidence of the perception of an established literary community is certainly the histories of literature. Admittedly, the eighteenth century Croatian histories of literature were no more than collections of sparse biographical and bibliographical facts about the authors, but they reveal a vivid interest in the literary production and in the intellectuals who wrote books. Many such collections remained in the form of a manuscript, like *Catalogus autorum ex religiosis ord. S. Pauli* by Nikola Benger,[34] or *Scriptores Interamniae vel Pannoniae Saviae, nunc Slavoniae dictae, anno 1795. conscripti*, by the Franciscan Josip Jakošić.[35] We find a lot of valuable information about the authors in books on the history of a specific state, province, or order, like in Andrija Eggerer's *Fragmen Panis Corvi Proto-Eremitici* (Vienna, 1663), a history of the Paulists, in Emerik Pavić's *Ramus Viridantis Olivae* (Buda, 1766), a history of the Franciscan province of Bosna Argentina, in Josip Pavišević's *Saecula Seraphica* (Osijek, 1777), a chronological survey of the Franciscan order, or in Baltazar Krčelić's works *De Regnis Dalmatiae Croatiae Sclavoniae Notitiae Praeliminares* (Zagreb, 1770) and *Historiarum Cathedralis Ecclesiae Zagrabiensis* (Zagreb, 1770).

The first printed history of literature in the Croatian North was published in the form of a university thesis defended in Zagreb in August 1774 by students Matija Krčelić and Ivan Smendrović studying with the professor Adalbert Adam Barić, entitled *Scriptorum ex Regno Sclavoniae a Seculo XIV. Usque ad XVII (...)* (Varaždin, 1774). This text was later attributed to Adam Baltazar Krčelić.

A year later the Hungarian Alexius Horányi published the first volume of his *Memoria Hungarorum et Provincialium Scriptis Editis No-*

34 Tkalčić, Ivan. O stanju više nastave u Hrvatskoj prije, a osobito za Pavlinah. // Rad JAZU XCIII(1888). P. 93.

35 Šrepel, Milivoj. Jakošićev spis: Scriptores Interamniae. // Građa JAZU II(1899), 116-153.

torum (Vienna; the second volume in Vienna in 1776; the third volume in Bratislava in 1777), in which he gathered data on about 60 Croatian authors. Horányi's work remained the most extensive summary of Croatian book production until the end of the eighteenth century.

There is little doubt that authors communicated in ways other than those related to book production. Examples reveal that their relations must have included not only book business, but also friendship, and, finally, a common interest in book production such as it was in the eighteenth century. To one another, and most importantly, to the Catholic Church, the authors were clearly visible.

The author's 'I' certainly had another, perhaps even more important task to perform. The writer was obliged to prove profound and straightforward piousness and show to the readers his esteem for the Saints and, consequently, for the Faith. We are completing this essay with two remarkable dedications to Virgin Mary, where the author's 'I' truly shines, making him visible through the most private place of an individual, i.e. his feelings.

> "And truly, my Lady, Blessed Virgin! I confess: if I were so lucky that I could compete in writing with Sulpicius, who published 180 books, or with Theophrastus, who published 300 books, or Crispin, who published 700, or Aristarchus, who published 1,000, or with Origen who wrote 3,000 big books – I would fill the libraries of all the world with praises for you."[36]

> "How much, oh beloved Mother! From the time when my mother, who brought me into this world, passed from mortality to immortality and left me, and when I became Your son (...). How much I owe for your merciful motherly kindness, I know very well (...). This is why, poor as I am and worthless of Your maternal goodness, owing to You for merciful benefits, I dare to dedicate this unworthy gift to You, my loving mother."[37]

References

Bogdanić, Daniel Emerik. Dogodjaji Svieta [History of the World]. Vienna : 1792.

Bošnjak, Blaž. Ispisanje Ratta Turskoga pod Josipom Cesarom II [Writings on Turkish Wars under the Emperor Joseph II]. Osijek : 1792.

36 Gašparoti, Hilarion. Czvét Szvéteh [The Flower of Saints]. Graz, 1756. Dedication, no pagination.

37 Papuslić, Antun. Duxna slava sinovskoga bogoljubstva [Son's God-Loving Owing Glory]. Buda, 1751. Dedication, no pagination.

Chartier, Roger. The order of books: readers, authors, and libraries in Europe between the fourteenth and eighteenth centuries. Cambridge : Polity Press, 1994.

Dunn, Kevin. Pretext of authority : the rhetoric of authorship in the Renaissance preface. Stanford : Stanford University Press, 1994.

Foucault, Michael. What is an author. // Rethinking popular culture : contemporary perspectives in cultural studies / edited by Chandra Mukerji, Michael Schudson. Berkley : University of California Press, 1991.

Galinec, Franjo. Habdelićev utjecaj u Gašparotijevoj legendi 'Cvet sveteh'. // Vrela i prinosi 6(1936), 108-138.

Gašparoti, Hilarion. Czvét Szvéteh [The Flower of Saints]. Graz : 1756.

Kanižlić, Antun. Utocsiste Blaxenoj Divici Marii [The Shelter of Virgin Mary]. Venice, 1759.

Kapucin, Grgur. Neztranchno vezdassnyega tabora izpiszavanye za leto 1788 [The Objective Writings on Current Wars for 1788]. Zagreb, 1789.

Knezović, Antun Josip. Kruna obderxavaiucsiu stanie apostolsko [The Crown for Keeping the Apostles Faith]. Pest : 1759.

Leaković, Bernardin. Govorenja za sve Nedilje [The Weekly Sermons]. Osijek, 1795.

Losse, Deborah N. Sampling the book : Renaissance prologues and the French conteurs. Lewisburg : Bucknell University Press ; London and Toronto : Associated University Press, 1994.

Marević, Ivan Dilla. Svetih Mucsenikah [Deeds of the Holy Martyrs]. Osijek : 1800.

Martin, Henri-Jean. The history and power of writing. Chicago and London : The University of Chicago Press, 1994.

Mulih, Ivan. Prodestva Kratka [Short Sermons]. Zagreb : 1784.

Mulih, Juraj. Poszel Apostolszki [The Work of Apostles]. Zagreb : 1742.

Manuale Confessariorum, iliti Ruchna Knisicza Szpovednikov [Manuale Confessariorum, or the Handbook for Father Confessors]. Zagreb, 1725.

Papuslić, Antun. Duxna slava sinovskoga bogoljubstva [Son's God-Loving Owing Glory]. Buda, 1751.

Pavić, Emerik. Epistole, i Evangjelja [Epistles and Gospels]. Buda, 1764.

Pavić, Emerik. Prosvitljenje i Ogrianje Jesenog i Zimnog Doba [Enlightening and Warming for Autumn and Winter]. Buda, 1762.

Pavić, Emerik. Rucsna Knjixica [Handbook]. Pest, 1769.

Reljković, Matija Antun. Nova Slavonska, i Nimacska Gramatika [New Slavonian and German Grammar]. Zagreb, 1767.

Šipuš, Josip. Temely xitne tergovine [Basis of Cereal Trade]. Zagreb, 1796.

Šoštarić, Jeremija. Marianszko Czveche [Marian Flowers]. Soproni, 1781.

Šrepel, Milivoj. Jakošićev spis: Scriptores Interamniae. // Građa JAZU II(1899), 116-153.

Švagelj, Fortunat, Opus selectum concionum festivalium ordinariarum et extraordinariarum. Zagreb, [?].

The canons and decrees of the Sacred and Oecumenical Council of Trent, Celebrated under the Sovereign Pontiffs. Paul III., Julius III., and Pius IV. / translated by the Rev J. Waterworth. London : C. Dolman, 1848.

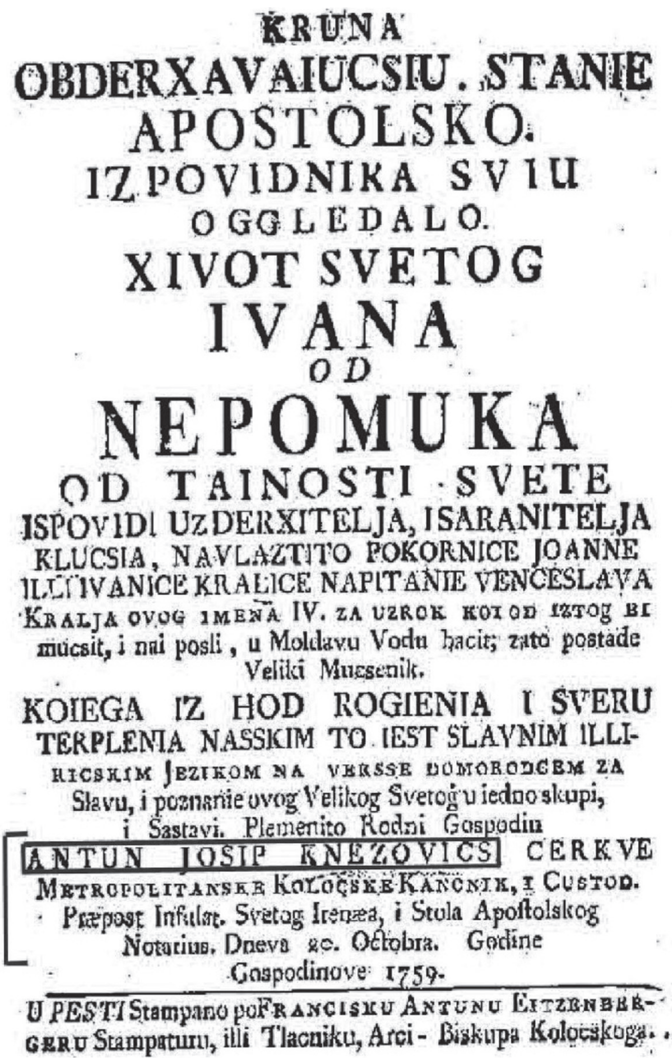
Tkalčić, Ivan. O stanju više nastave u Hrvatskoj prije, a osobito za Pavlinah. // Rad JAZU XCIII(1888), 78-104.

Tomiković, Aleksandar Xivot. Petra Velikoga Czara Russie [The Life of Russian Emperor Peter the Great]. Osijek, 1794.
Turković, Antun Josip. Xivot Svetoga Eustachie [The Life of Holy Eustachian]. Osijek, 1795.
Velagić, Zoran. Štokavska početnica Jurja Muliha iz 1737. godine. // Gazophylacium 5, 1-2(2000), 16-48.
Velagić, Zoran. The Croatian author at the frontier of Catholicism and Orthodoxy in Croatia. // Frontiers of faith / edited by Eszter Andor, István György Tóth. Budapest : Central European University and European Science Foundation, 2001. Pp. 89-97.
Velikanović, Ivan. Razmishljanja Bogoljubna sv. Bonaventure [Pious Meditations of St. Bonaventura]. Osijek : 1776.

Biographical sketch

Zoran Velagić is assistant professor of book history and publishing studies at the Department of Information Sciences, Faculty of Philosophy, University of J. J. Strossmayer in Osijek, Croatia. He has published a number of articles on early modern book history and one book, *The Writer and Authority*. He is the editor of *Libellarium, journal for the history of writing, books, and memory institutions*. He is currently dealing with the concepts of authorship and uses of the texts in the 18th century Croatia.

Appendix



KRUNA
OBDERXAVAIUCSIU. STANIE
APOSTOLSKO.
IZPOVIDNIKA SVIU
OGGLEDALO.
XIVOT SVETOG
IVANA
OD
NEPOMUKA
OD TAINOSTI SVETE
ISPOVIDI UZDERXITELJA, ISARANITELJA
KLUCSIA, NAVLAZTITO POKORNICE JOANNE
ILLI IVANICE KRALICE NAPITANIE VENCESLAVA
Kralja ovog imena IV. za uzrok koi od iztog bi
mucsit, i nai posli, u Moldavu Vodu bacit; zato postade
Veliki Mucsenik.
KOIEGA IZ HOD ROGIENIA I SVERU
TERPLENIA NASSKIM TO IEST SLAVNIM ILLI-
RICSKIM JEZIKOM NA VERSSE DOMORODCEM ZA
Slavu, i poznanie ovog Velikog Svetog u iedno skupi,
i Sastavi. Plemenito Rodni Gospodin
ANTUN JOSIP KNEZOVICS CERKVE
Metropolitanske Koloçske Kanonik, i Custod.
Præpost Infulat. Svetog Irenæa, i Stola Apostolskog
Notarius. Dneva 20. Octobra. Godine
Gospodinove 1759.

U PESTI Stampano po Francisku Antunu Eitzenber-
geru Stampaturu, illi Tlacniku, Arci - Biskupa Kolocskoga.

FIGURE 1.
Author and his functions: *Antun Josip Knezović, canon and custodian in the metro-politan church of Kalocsa, praeposit of St. Irenej, notarius of apostolic table* (Kruna obderxavaiucsiu stanie Apostolsko. Pest, 1759.)

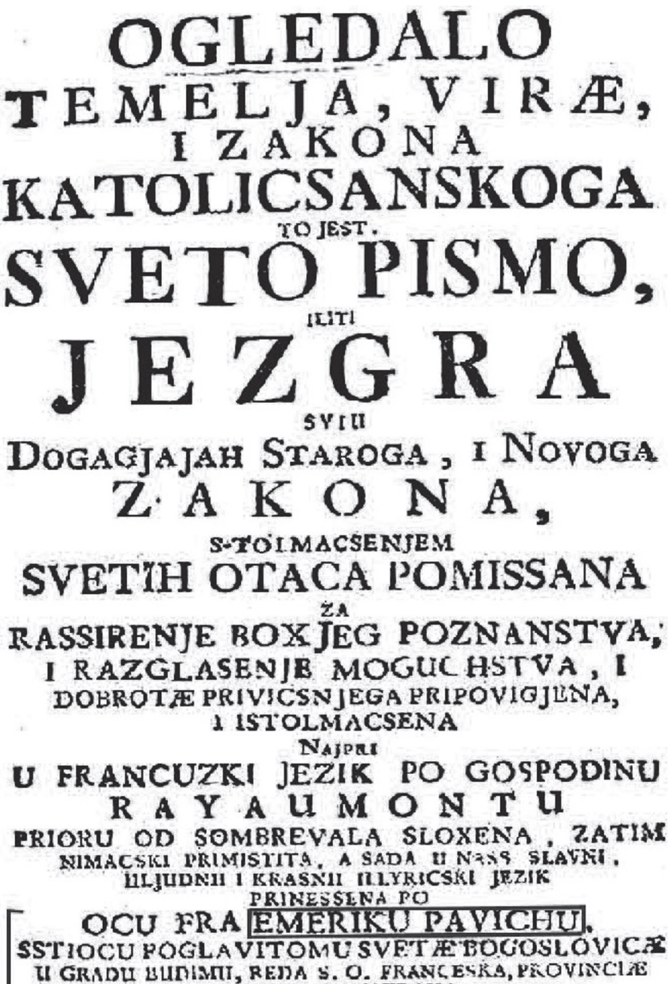

OGLEDALO
TEMELJA, VIRÆ,
I ZAKONA
KATOLICSANSKOGA
TO JEST.
SVETO PISMO,
ILITI
JEZGRA
SVIU
DOGAGJAJAH STAROGA, I NOVOGA
ZAKONA,
S-TOLMACSENJEM
SVETIH OTACA POMISSANA
ZA
RASSIRENJE BOXJEG POZNANSTVA;
I RAZGLASENJE MOGUCHSTVA, I
DOBROTÆ PRIVICSNJEGA PRIPOVIGJENA,
I ISTOLMACSENA
NAJPRI
U FRANCUZKI JEZIK PO GOSPODINU
RAYAUMONTU
PRIORU OD SOMBREVALA SLOXENA, ZATIM
NIMACSKI PRIMISTITA, A SADA U NASS SLAVNI,
ILJUDNII I KRASNII ILLYRICSKI JEZIK
PRINESSENA PO
OCU FRA EMERIKU PAVICHU,
SSTIOCU POGLAVITOMU SVETÆ BOGOSLOVICÆ
U GRADU BUDIMU, REDA S. O. FRANCESKA, PROVINCIÆ
S. IVANA CAPISTRANA,
GODINÆ M. DCC. LIX.
SSTAMPANO U BUDIMU PO FRANCESKU LEOPOLDU LANDERERU.

FIGURE 2.
Author and his functions: *Emerik Pavić, lector of theology in Buda, member of St. Francis order in the Province of Saint John the Capistran* (Ogledalo Temelja, Virae, i Zakona. Buda, 1759.)

SVAKOMU PO MALLO

ILLITI

PREDIKÆ

NEDILJNE

ZAJEDNO S KORIZMENIMA

SVIMA

DUHOVNIM PASTIROM VEHOMA

KORISTNÆ

A

PRAVOVIRNIM KARSTJANOM

OSOBITO HASNOVITÆ

KOJÆ

STANJE, I SVAKOGA CSOVIKA VECHIANJE U SEBBI UZDARXAJU

I

TEMELJ EVANGJEOSKOGA ZAKONA, SVAKOMU, I NESETNOMU OBILATO NAVISSTUJU.

PO

P.F. GJURI RAPICS GRADISCSANINU

REDA MALE BRATJE S. O FRANCESCA

OD OBSLUXENJA

PROVINCIÆ S. IVANA CAPISTRANA SINU

SVETÆ BOGHO-SLOVICÆ SSTIOCZU VRIDNOMU, SLOXJTÆ I NA SVITLOST DATÆ,

GODINÆ M. DCC. LXII.

Tlacsēnu à Pesti kod Gosp. Antuna Franciska Eitzenbergera Purgarskoga Placsocza 1762.

FIGURE 3.
Position of author’s name on the title page: inside the lines (Đuro Rapić. Predikae Nediljne. Pest, 1762.)

CZVÉT SZVÉTEH,
ALI
SIVLENYE, Y CHINI
SZVETCZEV,
Koteri
Vu naſſem Horvatczkem, iliti Szlovenſzkem Orſzagu z-vekſſum pobosnoſztjum, y z-prodekum zadnye tri meſzecze Leta, najmre:
Liſztopada, Vſzeſzveſchaka, y Grudna
poſtujuſze.
Zkupa y drugeh ſzvetczev oſzebujneſſega, y ſzveteſſega ſitka, nam na chudo, y naſzleduvanye iz vnogeh veruvanya vredneh, y potvérdgyeneh Piſzczev zebrani,
Vſzakojachkem vre jezikom, kakti Diachkem, Luſitanſzkem, Krajnſzkem &c. ſzvojem orſzagom napérvo poſztavlyeni;
vezda pak
Z-Miloſchum Preſzvetle neba, y zemlye Kralyicze
BL. MARIE DEVICZE
Zvêrhu Hotchure miloſche izkazujuche,
Vſzem vernem kêrſchanſzkem duſsiczam Horvatſzkoga Orſzaga na napredek, y duhovnem Paſztirom za polebchiczu prodekuvanya, na ſzvetlo za vugodnu duhu podani,
I na naſs Szlovenſzki jezik z-dopuſchenyem Poglavarov, po dobrovolynom trudu P. HILARIONA GASPAROTTI Reda Sz. Paula pêrvoga Puſchenika preloſeni 1760.

Stampani vu Bechu pri Leopoldu Ivanu Kaliwoda, leto 1761.

FIGURE 4.
Position of author's name on the title page: inside a single line (Hilarion Gašparoti. Czvét Szvéteh. Vienna, 1761.)

NEBESZKA
HRANA
VU SZVETEH JESZTVINAH:
KRUHU, I VINU,
Tojeto:
POBOSNEH MOLITVAH,
LITANIAH, I POPEVKAH:
MLEKU, I MEDU,
Tojeto:
KATOLICHANSZKOM NAVUKU
HASZNOVITOM RAZGOVORU,
Tojeto:
NA SZVETOSZT SIVLENYA, I TAK
NA ZADOBLENYE ZVELICHENYA
LYUBLENOM NAGOVARJANYU
POSZTAVLENA.
VSZEM KERSCHANSZKEM PUTNIKOM
VU NEBESZKU DOMOVINU PUTUJUCHEM
SZERDCHENO PREPORUCHENA,
OVAK Z-NOVICH ZKUPA SZLOSENA,
I NA OKREPLENYE DUSSE POLOSENA.
Z-trudom, i ſzkerbjum
JURAJA MULIH Tovaruſtva Jeſuſevoga Maſnika, y
Miſſionariuſſa Apoſtolſzkoga.
Z-DOPUSCHENYEM POGLAVAROV.
Pritiſzkana vu Zagrebu, po Ivanu Weitu,
Leta Goſzpodnovoga 1748.

FIGURE 5.
Position of author's name on the title page: inside a single line (Juraj Mulih. Nebeszka Hrana. Zagreb, 1748.)

ABECEVICA
SLOVINSKA,
DRAGOJ DITCSICI
KORISTNA, I POTRIBNA,
Z-BLAGODARNOM POMOCSJOM
VISSOKO POSCTOVANOGA
GOSPODINA
NICOLE
KRALYICS,
Kod Cerkve Sviuh Svetih,
Za
Slavu Boxju, i Mariansku, kano i
za Dušcaa Spaſſenye
DUHOVNOGA PASTIRA
velle skerblyivoga,
Od Lyudih velike Fale,
â
Od Boga Nebeske Krune Vridnoga.

Tlaciena po Ivaru Weltz, ú Zagrebu. God. Gosp. 1748.

FIGURE 6.
Author's name is missing from the title page, donor's name (Nikola Kralyics) is emphasized (Juraj Mulih. Abecevica Slovi-nska. Zagreb, 1748.)

ZAKON
BRATINZTVA
I
ZAVJETEK
CHUDNOGA SITKA
DVEH POBOSNEH HISNEH TOVARUSSEV
SZ. ISIDORA,
I
MARICZE:
Za pravo zerczalo, i naſzleduvanye
navlaztito teſachkem lyudem pred ochi
Duſſe poztavlyen:
Z-dopuztyenyem, i laztovitum volyum
Preſzvetloga, i Prepoſtuvanoga Nyih Excellentie
GOZPODINA, GOZPODINA
JURAJA BRANJUGH,
BISKUPA ZAGREBACHKOGA,
Czeſzarzko-Kralyevzkoga Velichanztva
ZKROVNOGA SZVETNIKA, &c.
Vſzim Duhovnim Paztirom imenuvane poglavite Biſ-
kupie za vekovechnu podloznikov haſzen lyubleno
preporuchen, i ſzloſen
Od Otcza JURAJA MULIH, Druſtva Jeſuſſe-
voga Maſſnika, Poſzlanika Apoſtolzkoga.

Drugoch
Stampan ú Zagrebu po Ivanu Weitz, Leta 1746.

FIGURE 7.
Hierarchy of names: Juraj Branjugh, patron, and Juraj Mulih, author (Juraj Mulih. Zakon Bratinztva. Zagreb, 1746.)

DUSSU CSUVAIUCHE

POHOGJENJE.

To jest:

Opiu, koi na Nebeskih Darovih, Milosergju, i

Milostimah fale, slave, i uzvisuin iedno Boxanstvo

TROSTRUKA SLAVA,

Ili

Prisvetoga Troistva iz Bogoljubnih Promisljanah,

Uzdisanjah, i Pismicah sklopljena, na Nebu pocieta, i

[illegible]

ANGJEOSKA KRUNICA,

Koju

Prisvisseni, Prisvitli, i Priposstovani Gospodin,

Gospodin

MARTIN BIRO DE PADANY

VESPRIMSKI BISKUP,

U Nedilju Prisvetog Troistva, u svoioi Vesprimskoi Materi

[illegible]

Po O. Fra IEROLYMU LIPOVCSICHU,

[illegible]

Tiestena u Budimu, kod Veronike Nottensteinin, Vdovicz. 1750.

FIGURE 8.
Hierarchy of names: Martin Biro de Padany, patron, and Jeronim Lipovčić, author (Jeronim Lipovčić. Dussu Csuvaiuche Poho-gjenje. Buda, 1750.)

EXCELLENTISSIMO,
ILLUSTRISSIMO
AC
REVERENDISSIMO
DOMINO, DOMINO
FRANCISCO
THAUSZY
DEI, ET APOSTOLICÆ SEDIS GRATIA
EPISCOPO ZAGRABIENSI
ABBATI B. M. V. DE TOPUSZKA,
INSIGNIS ORDINIS S. STEPHANI REGIS
APOSTOLICI MAJORIS CRUCIS
COMMENDATORI,
COMITATUS DE BERZENCZE
SUPREMO, AC PERPETUO
COMITI
SACRÆ CÆSAREO-REGIÆ APOSTOLI-
CÆ MAJESTATIS
ACTUALI INTIMO CONSILIARIO.
DOMINO, DOMINO
PATRONO
GRATIOSISSIMO
D. D. D.

FIGURE 9.
Latin dedication to bishop Franjo Thauszy (Matija Antun Reljković. Nova Slavonska, i Nimacska gramatika. Zagreb, 1767.)

NJIOVOJ EXCELLENCII
PRISVITLOMU, PRIPOSHTOVANOMU
I DOBRO RODJENOMU
GOSPODINU, GOSPODINU

FRANCISKU
THAUSZY

PO BOXJOJ, I APOSTOLSKE STOLICE,
MILLOSTI, STOLNE ZAGREBACSKE
CERKVE NAJ VRIDNIJEM

BISKUPU
BLAX. DIV. MARIE OD TOPUSZKE
OPPATU,
CESARSKOG, I KRALJEVSKOG VELICSAN-
STVA NAJ BLIXNJEM, I SADASHNJEM
SKROVNOSTIH VICHNIKU,
VARMEGJE OD BERZENCZE VELI-
KOMU, I VIKOVICSNJEMU
SHPANU
IZAPOVIDNIKU, GLASOVITOGA REDA SVE-
TOGA STIPANA APOSTOLSKOGA KRALJA
VECHJEGA KRIXA
COMMENDATORU,
DOMOVINE, I SVIUH PRAVOMU, I LUBLJE-
NOMU
OTCU, I MILOSTIVOM
GOSPODINU.

FIGURE 10.
The same dedication in Croatian (Matija Antun Reljković. Nova Slavonska, i Nimacska gramatika. Zagreb, 1767.)

NACHIN
Duoie
POBOSNOSZTI,
Na uſze haſznovite,
K-velikomu Indianſzkomu
Apoſtolu.
SZVETOMU
FERENCZU
XAVERIU,
Na Horvatczki Iezik preneſſen,
y po pobosne Dareslivoſzti k-ſzvetomu
APOSTOLU.
Preſzuetloga; y prepoſtuvanoga
GOSZPODINA, GOSZPODINA
ERDÖDI GABRIELA
Od
MONYOROKEREKA,
Gore Moſzlavine, y Varasdinzke
ſpanie vekivechnoga Goſzpodina Spana.
**Izebranoga Biskupa Arbenſzkoga, Prepuſta Albinſz-
koga, Sztolne Czirque Oſtrongonzke Canonica, Czc-
ſarzke, y kralyevſzke ſzuetlozti Tolnach-
nika, &c. &c.**
Oſzebui nega Xaverianſzkega Poſtenika.

**Vu Bechu pri Goſzpe Janne Vdovicze Woigtin.
letta 1710.**

FIGURE 11.
Anonymous book displays the names of saint and patron (Nachin Duoie Pobosnoszti. Vienna, 1710.)

Z-DARESLIVUM POMOCHJUM
Vnogo Poſtuvanoga Gozpona
MARTINA
SVASZTOVICH,
Szlavne Czirkve Sz. Kriſa na Kravar-
zkom Duhovnoga Paztira kruto zkoznivoga,
Leto 1740. pervich na ſzvetlozt dan.
A
Szada povekſan, i drugoch pritizkan,
Z-LYUBLENUM DARESLIVOZTJUM
Prepoſtuvanoga Gozpodina
FERENCZA
GLUSCHICH,
PROTO-NOTARIA APOSTOLZKOGA,
Glaſzovite Czirkve B. D. M. Bednyanzke
DUHOVNOGA PAZTIRA:
Za Boſanzko, i Marianzko poſtenye,
ter za vſzeh Duſs vekovno zvelichenye
vſzagdi oſzebnjno zkerblivoga.

FIGURE 12.
Multiple dedication: Martin Svasztovich, sponsor of the first, and Ferenz Gluschich, sponsor of the second edition (Juraj Mulih. Zakon Bratinztva. Zagreb, 1746.)

SKRIVENI AUTOR
POJAVNOSTI AUTORSKOG "JA" NA RANONOVOVJEKOVNIM TISKANIM NASLOVNICAMA

Sažetak

Cilj je rada istražiti tri problema vezana uz poimanje autorstva popularnih vjerskih djela tiskanih tijekom 18. stoljeća. Prvo, bit će propitano je li autorsko ime samo po sebi bilo dostatno da bi autoriziralo sadržaj tih djela. U tom će kontekstu posebna pozornost biti pridana smještaju autorskog imena na naslovnici. Drugo, istražit će se je li naslovnica bila mjesto na kojemu je autorsko „ja" tražilo prepoznavanje i priznanje autorskog rada, a bit će dokazano da je autor mogao progovoriti tek u posveti ili predgovoru, dok je prostor naslovnice bio rezerviran za imena pokrovitelja, svetaca Katoličke crkve i sl. Treće, bit će istraženo je li knjiga za koju danas smatramo da je objavljena anonimno, dakle „neautorizirano", bila smatrana takvom i u doba kada je bila objavljena.

Ključne riječi: autor, autorizacija, popularne vjerske knjige, paratekstualnost

II.

Old Book as a Topic for Research and Bibliography

WRITTEN HERITAGE IN CROATIAN AND EUROPEAN LIBRARIES

Dora Sečić
Zagreb, Croatia

Abstract
A brief overview of the development history of library collections in Europe from the Humanism to the present is given. While presenting the written heritage in European and Croatian libraries, special attention is devoted to court, church and university libraries, including the conditions of their establishment, collections of old and rare materials and the present state, level to which the collection is systematised, whether it is open to the public and available on the web. Web pages of each important library and projects related to book history or heritage libraries are provided. Further on, the author gives a survey of individual European and Croatian centres for the research of book history which also includes web pages of each library. Croatian libraries with valuable collections have been especially analysed, including church libraries, heritage libraries of Croatian noblemen and notable citizens, general research libraries and collections of old and rare materials from the National and University Library in Zagreb and the Library of the Croatian Academy of Science and Arts. The most important existing lists of Croatian incunabula are provided.

Key words:
written heritage, Europe, Croatia, book history, heritage libraries

Brief overview of the development history of library collections in Europe

After the Middle Ages the Humanism, true to its name, directed its efforts to man, who became the centre of its interests, and the 15th century brought about great changes in social development. In addition, one should also remember the works of Copernicus and Galileo (the turning-point in the sciences), the invention of printing and the discovery of America – to mention only a few important milestones in this context.

The Renaissance that followed lead to social revival and strong development of art and culture. Noblemen and rulers of humanistic orientation started to deal themselves with science and art more intensely, and they also acted as patrons. Thus came about the court libraries, but also an ever greater number of libraries open to the public. Florence stood as a cultural and artistic centre at that time, where members of the influential Medici family acted as patrons. In addition to his private library, Cosimo Medici senior opened "Medicea pubblica", considered to be the first public library of the New Age, in the Dominican monastery of San Marco in 1441. In the German countries, there were also several noblemen who created rich libraries in their castles during the age of the high Renaissance. The most prominent was the oldest and very rich and powerful Wittelsbach family, who ruled in Bavaria till 1918, and the Habsburg family who also ruled till 1918 over a great territory from Spain to Netherlands. At the same time, the Church enriched its libraries, especially those in the monasteries, usually accompanied by educational centres (colleges), but also in bishops' palaces. Universities also had their libraries from the beginning, for instance old universities like Sorbonne, Bologne, Heidelberg and Prague, but these libraries were not so well protected and they were destroyed and their collections plundered or given to other owners in the later wars, and especially during the French Revolution.

The Reformation brought about especially big changes in Europe, not only from the ecclesiastical, but also from the social point of view. Numerous monasteries were secularised during that period, literature in vernacular started developing, and the leaders of the Reformation encouraged the opening of libraries to general public (public libraries). Obviously, many books suffered in reformation and counter-reformation skirmishes, but the protestant countries witnessed a flourishing development of printing and librarianship. However, in countries where counter-reformation won this development happened to a greater extent only in the Enlightenment age in the 18th century.

During the 17th and 18th centuries the European kings and noblemen (secular and ecclesiastical) continued to collect written heritage to enrich their court libraries. In some of them, like in the *Mazarina* in Paris, which in 1643 became a significant public library in France, worked the **librarians** who contributed considerably to the overall development of the profession. The credit for the fame of the *Mazarina* goes to **Gabriel Naudé**, who had published his work *Advis pour dresser* *une bibliothèque* (Paris, 1627). The book significantly influenced further development of public librarianship in the whole of Europe.

One hundred years later, in 1726, Charles VI opened his Court library to the public by a manifesto. Up till then it had collected so many materials that it became the second largest world library (today it is the Austrian national library). The biggest library in the world has for a long time been the King's (today the National) Library in Paris that was opened to the public in 1735. Both national libraries, the one in Paris and the one in Vienna, today own rich collections of treasures.

The third very important court in the early history of librarianship was the one of the house of Wittelsbach, Bavarian dukes and later kings. The court library was established in 1558, and later enriched by purchase of important old libraries that are even today the core of the oldest collection of the Bavarian state library in Munich, one of the most important centres for book history research in the world. It was here that **Martin Schrettinger**, one of the founders of the modern library science, worked in the first half of the 19th century. He authored the prominent manual of librarianship in two volumes: *Versuch eines vollständigen Lehrbuches der Bibliothek-Wissenschaft oder Anleitung zur vollkommenen Geschäftsführung eines Bibliothekärs* (Munich 1808-1829).

During the 17th and 18th centuries other German noblemen opened their court libraries to the public, and libraries in Wolfenbüttel, Weimar and Kassel obtained new, specially designed premises that later on became the model to many, even outside Germany. In the 17th century the biggest library North of the Alps was the court library in Wolfenbüttel. It was established in 1572 by duke Julius Braunschweig-Lüneburg, but it was named after duke Augustus (Herzog August Bibliothek), who was very much involved in science and who enriched the library considerably till his death in 1666. The most important librarians in Wolfenbüttel were the important German philosopher and mathematician **Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz** (from 1691 to 1716) and **Gotthold Ephraim Lessing** (from 1770 to 1781). Among other things Leibniz created the first alphabetical catalogue and initiated the construction of the new building, erected from 1706 to 1710. Owing to Lessing, who was also an important German writer, Wolfenbüttel became an important centre of the German Enlightenment.

Concurrently with court libraries, modern university libraries started developing in Germany in the 18th century. The precursor of the later development on a larger scale was the library of the then newly established university of Göttingen, opened in the academic year 1736/37. Its structure was soon noticed outside the German borders and became an organisational model to many European universities of that time.

The age of the French revolution was again accompanied by nationalisation and centralisation of library collections of many church, monastery and court libraries, and especially of the late King's Library in Paris. This brought about great changes at the turn of the 18th and the 19th centuries, not only in France. Napoleonic wars, that came about soon, caused upheavals also on the cultural plan all over Europe. Books were moved from the libraries or they changed owners. The consolidation of several smaller collections into big libraries, following the example of the National Library in Paris and other great libraries took place at that time. Accordingly, in the 19th century, public libraries were organised in several locations consisting of collections of previous smaller libraries. Napoleonic rule gave significant incentive to the development of the Croatian culture.

In the Central European countries like Bohemia, Hungary and Croatia, the 19th century saw the awakening of the national conscience, and the establishment of national museums, including national libraries, is encouraged. Contribution of Count Széchényi's, to whom the national library owes its name, should be especially mentioned in this context,. Somewhat later bishop Strossmayer in Croatia importantly contributed to the development of the pivotal Croatian cultural institutions. Both great figures, distinguished patrons, take credit for the advancement in the fields of publishing and librarianship.

In the 19th century the library of the national (British) museum took the leading role in the Great Britain especially after the reorganisation by **Antonio Panizzi** at the middle of the century. However, the library of the British Museum at the time of Panizzi and his successors could not compete in its size with the National Library in Paris that would remain for long the biggest library in the world. Before Panizzi's reform in London in 1835, the Paris library already had 600 000 items, followed by 400,000 items in the then Court Library in Munich. The Royal Library in Berlin, The Royal Library in Vienna and the University Library in Göttingen had approximately 250,000 items each at that time. The British Museum had only 220,000 items, and Harvard University Library only around 70,000 items. The Library of Congress collected only 50,000 volumes of books. Fifty years later, in 1885 the ratios changed considerably. At that time, the National Library in Paris had already 2,200,000 items, the British Museum 1,500,000 items, the Royal Library in Berlin and State Library in Munich around one million items, and the Vittorio Emanuele Library in Rome 360,000 items. The Congress Library in Washington owned a significant collection of 50,000 items, but it also had the greatest annual accession of 25,000 items that made it already at that time the sixth largest library in the world, and now it has been the biggest library for a long time.

In addition to these public secular libraries, there are also many rich church libraries that are so numerous in Europe that they could not all be included here. An interested scholar can find information about them and their collections on the web, as well as in printed guidebooks. Clearly, the rich Vatican library has a special place among them. This is a very old library of the Holy See with especially valuable collections. The present library was established in 1447 during the reign of Pope Nicholas V, and from then on it developed relatively fast, and towards the end of the 16th century Pope Sixtus V had the library building constructed and thus enabled its even faster development. Today the *Vaticana* has over 2,000,000 volumes of books.

This overview of the development of libraries is an aid towards understanding the genesis of European library heritage and finding our role in its study. In other words, the Croatian cultural heritage can be interpreted only within the total European environment and the task of the future Croatian researchers is to correctly evaluate and intelligibly present it to the interested domestic and foreign cultural public.

Important European centres for the study of the history of the printed book

The oldest printed books – incunabula – have been the subject of special researches for several centuries. Many researchers have been engaged in the incunabulistics for several centuries, but still, not all preserved incunabula have been catalogued or studied yet. The greatest collection of incunabula is held in the Bavarian State Library in Munich (19,000), followed by the British Library in London (12,500), National Library of France in Paris (12,000), Vatican Library in Rome (8,000), Austrian National Library in Vienna (8,000) and so on.[1] (In order to get an idea of the magnitude ratio of the majority of the preserved collections,

1 Incunabula.com : Web site dedicated to researching and discussing Incunabula, incunables and other rare books [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://incunabula.com/#/largest-collections/4530171939

we shall mention that the greatest number of incunabula in Croatia is stored in the *Metropolitana* in Zagreb (252) followed by the National and University Library in Zagreb with 200 incunabula.)

The books from the 16th, 17th and 18th centuries are much more numerous, because the printing started spreading and developing quickly from the 16th century on. These books, like the ones from the 19th century, are represented in the collections of many more libraries, but they are also considered to be rarities that should be specially treated.

In the following section we shall present briefly some of the selected centres that store old books, and are especially important, for different reasons, to Croatian scholars. This overview includes only a small number of towns and libraries, and it should be kept in mind that many other European towns also have very rich old libraries, that cannot be included due to the limited length of this text. Information about them could be found on the web and in the relevant manuals, so the researches can identify them without any difficulty.

Florence

The town of Florence is unavoidable in the study of old book history and European librarianship, so we shall begin the overview with two Florentine libraries. As is known, many Humanists worked in Florence at the time when the rich Medici family was influential there. The Medici were bibliophiles and they supported gathering of important collection of manuscripts and old and rare books in Florence during the Renaissance. After the Napoleonic wars when the libraries were plundered, destroyed or captured, the Italian territory was reorganised and Italian kingdom was created; the first capital was Turin, and later on Florence (from 1865 to 1870). Thus the first Italian national library was established in Florence in 1865 (today Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale), in which numerous collections from previous monastery, family and other libraries were later brought together.

Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale di Firenza[2]

The National Central Library, Florence is today the greatest library in Italy (it has over 5,000,000 items), and for the current topic it is important that it contains 3,700 incunabula, 29,000 books and collec-

2 Biblioteca Medicea Laurenziana Firenze [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.bml.firenze.sbn.it/index_ing.htm

tions from libraries of several scholars from the 17th and 18th centuries. The library of Antonio Magliabechi, the librarian of Cosimo Medici III, with 30,000 items in all languages stands out among them. So the precursor of the present-day national library was first opened to the public in 1747 under the name *Biblioteca Magliabechiana*. Later on great donations of Tuscan dukes were attached to it, and many private libraries were purchased, and the collection of the former library of the Pitti palace (Biblioteca Palatina) with about 90,000 items was also incorporated. Already in the 18th century the library acquired the legal deposit copy from the town of Florence, and from 1869 on from the whole of Italy. The collections *Magliabechiana* and *Palatina*, as well as many other special collections today have their own special catalogues and provide an immense wealth of data to researchers of book history. This library has been producing the Italian national bibliography from 1886, and it later became the centre of Italian union catalogue. A great catastrophe hit it in 1966 – it was flooded and a great part of the collection was affected. It received help from the Italian government, as well as from numerous libraries and professionals, so the greatest part of the valuable material was saved. Based on its own experiences it organised a big laboratory and educated specialists for paper restoring, binding and so on. Thus the National Library in Florence is today an important educational and research centre in the field of book and paper conservation known through the world.

Biblioteca Nazionale Medicea Laurenziana[3]

National Library Medicea Laurenziana has a collection of around 150,000 books, among which 566 incunabula and 1,681 books from the 16th century, but it is even more renowned for its collection of rare manuscripts and papyri. Cosimo Medici senior opened it to the public already in 1444 in a specially arranged library space in the San Marco Dominican monastery in Florence. The collection later had a turbulent history. It was specifically enriched by Lorenzo Medici the Magnificent who in 1470 established the San Lorenzo monastery, where he accommodated his first private library in Florence. It is today named after Lorenzo. After Lorenzo's death this library was plundered, later on partly transferred to Rome. Finally in 1523 Pope Clement VII (other-

3 Biblioteca Medicea Laurenziana Firenze [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.bml.firenze.sbn.it/index_ing.htm

wise Giulio de' Medici) decided to unite the family library in Florence again, so he entrusted Michelangelo with the plans for the new library over the San Lorenzo cloister. The building of the library was finished after the death of Clement VII, when the famous access stairway and vestibule were built, and in the year 1571 this library was once again opened to the public. During the 18th and 19th centuries the library acquired additional collections from secularised monasteries and private libraries; so in 1808 it acquired the collection of the former San Marco monastery (the collection of the first public library of the Medici). This library is today considered to be one of the most beautiful Renaissance libraries and it is a sight visited by tourists from all over the world.

Venice

Venice is connected to Croatia, and especially Dalmatia, with many historical links, and it is clear that the National Library *Marciana* and the Venetian archives are unavoidable places for the study of Croatian as well as world history and book history. In this context it is especially important that many old Croatian books were printed in Venice (probably also our incunabulum *Glagolithic Missal* from 1484), and several Croatian printing shops operated there too. Because of that many Croatian scholars frequently begin their researches in Venice.

Biblioteca Nazionale Marciana Venezia[4]

The National Library Marciana in Venice is a very old library founded by cardinal Bessarion in 1468. Although Venice had a public library before that, because the poet Petrarca donated his books to the town in 1382 under the condition that they are made accessible to the public, this collection was not preserved in Venice. Some of Petrarca's books are today in the National Library in Paris (taken as the loot of Louis XII), and others were destroyed or lost during wars. Thus the history of the current collection of the *Marciana* begins with Bessarion's gift, which is especially notable because it contains valuable and very rare Greek manuscripts. This is also the oldest state library because at the beginning it belonged to the Republic of Venice. The Bessarion collection itself had a very turbulent history, because the Venetian government did not take proper care of it for a long period of time. Since the collection was situated in a very cramped space,

4 Biblioteca Nazionale Marciana, antica biblioteca in Venezia [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://marciana.venezia.sbn.it/

where it could not be used, the books were generously lent to individuals who were not eager to return them, and so on. Only in 1530 was the library moved to the first floor of the cathedral of San Marco, and in 1537 the decision was finally made to build the library. A beautiful Renaissance richly decorated building was erected on the square of San Marco (frescoes by Veronese, Medulić and Tintoretto). Many other donations followed after Bessarion's and the library soon became the centre of humanistic studies (especially important for the collections of Greek, Latin and oriental manuscripts). In 1603 Venice passed a law on legal deposit copy from the entire Republic. After the fall of the Republic the library acquired collections from several secularised monasteries and thus additionally enriched the collections of old books. Today the *Marciana* has around one million items, including 2,283 incunabula, 24,000 books from the 16th century and big collections of books from the 17th and 18th centuries.

Rome

The second Italian national library Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale di Roma is in Rome. It was founded in 1875 under the name of the king (Vittorio Emanuele II). Rome is also the seat of the Catholic church that possesses numerous valuable libraries and archives, indispensable for Croatian researchers. The rich Vatican library stands out among them.

Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana[5]

Vatican Apostolic Library is a very old library (the collection of material started already in the 4th century), but many items were lost during wars. As it was already mentioned, the present library was founded in the mid 15th century, and towards the end of the 16th century Pope Sixtus V decided to erect a new library building, and since then it developed much faster in appropriate premises. The Napoleon's army seized it, but in 1815 it was returned to the Holy See.

Today the library has over 2,000,000 items, 8,300 incunabula, a much appreciated library school, a restoration and facsimile production laboratory. The most significant is its great collection of manuscripts and codices. After the First World War, based on the rules of the Congress Library in Washington, created were the first cataloguing

5 Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana : sito istituzionale della Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.vaticanlibrary.va/home.php?ling=eng

rules that were later translated to many languages and used by many libraries in the world to produce their own rules. *Vaticana*, together with the Congress Library, German National Library, National Library of France and OCLC creates today the international authority data base VIAF (*Virtual International Authority File*). This clearly shows the richness of its collections and high professional level of its librarians. The Vatican reading rooms with big collections in open access are especially notable. They were intensively used by scientists from all over the world till library's temporary closure for renovation in 2007. When the Vatican library closed to public three years ago, there was a significant protest by scientists – this shows best the great importance of the library for researches. Its reopening is announced for September 2010.

Munich

Many Croatian scientists and artists were educated in Munich, the capital of Bavaria, and its libraries were in many ways a model to Croatian librarians from the 19th century on. We find this for instance in the history of the National and University Library in Zagreb, when the librarians of the Royal Academy followed Bavarian professional role models (Schrettinger's era).

Bayerische Staatsbibliothek[6]

Bavarian State Library was founded during the Renaissance owing to the Bavarian duke Albrecht V Wittelsbach. It happened in the year of 1558 when he bought the library of the Austrian chancellor and of the famous scientist Widmannstetter with numerous valuable manuscripts and around 900 printed books for his court library. In 1571 he bought the rich library (consisting of over 10,000 items) from Johann Jakob Fugger from Augsburg. Thus he created a big collection which even today makes the core of the oldest collection of the library. Later on the collections from secularised monasteries were acquired, already in 1773 23,000 items from the late Jesuit college, and during further decades the selected collections from about 150 Bavarian monasteries.

In 1789 the court library was opened to public, and after the First World War it became the state library. It has been acquiring the Bavarian legal deposit copy from 1663. In the Second World War the collection

6 Die Bayerische Staatsbibliothek: Bayerische Staatsbibliothek - Bavarian State Library [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.bsb-muenchen.de/index.php?L=3

was significantly damaged during bombing, around 500,000 items were destroyed (manuscripts and old and valuable books were fortunately evacuated on time). The library succeeded in acquiring only one third of the titles it had lost then. Today the library has almost 10 million items, the greatest collection of incunabula in the world (19,000 titles)[7], and it is an important research centre in the field of incunabulistics. Many projects from the field of book history are currently under way.

Wolfenbüttel: Herzog August Bibliothek[8]

This extremely well preserved old library is today one of the most important centres for the study of book history in the world. In the 17th century it was the biggest library north of the Alps. It was established in 1572 by duke Julius Braunschweig-Lüneburg. His collection, today known as *Bibliotheca Julia*, stores among other things 165 manuscripts and 717 printed books by Matija Vlačić Ilirik. So here is the direct link with the history of Croatian book. Today's library has use of several buildings, which belonged to the former castle. The collection includes 900,000 books, out of which 350,000 are books from the 15th to 18th centuries. There are 3,479 incunabula and 80,000 titles from the 16th century. From 1968 the library became the study centre for the researches of Middle Ages and early Modern Age with a programme of scholarships, research and publishing. The scholarship fellows come to Wolfenbüttel from all over the world.

Berlin: Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin[9]

With its collection of 10 million items Berlin State Library is today the greatest German library and one of the greatest universal libraries, because it holds many foreign as well as German works of literature. It was established in 1661 by Friedrich Wilhelm of Brandenburg, and it became the Royal Library under the Prussian King Friedrich I in 1701. After the First World War it was named the Prussian State Library. The library has been receiving the legal deposit copy from 1699, first from the territory of Brandenburg, and later on from entire Prussia, and then

7 Die Bayerische Staatsbibliothek: Department of Manuscripts and Early Printed Books [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.bsb-muenchen.de/Department-of-Manuscripts-and.292+M57d0acf4f16.0.html

8 Herzog August Bibliothek [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.hab.de/index-e.htm

9 Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://staatsbibliothek-berlin.de/index_en.html

Germany. Fast development of the library started in the first half of the 19th century, when Prussia started developing fast, and several collections of important scholars were acquired, and this lasted till the end of the Second World War. Till then it managed to collect the manuscript bequests of numerous German writers and scholars. During the Second World War nearly the whole collection, almost 3,000,000 items, was evacuated, but still around 800,000 were destroyed in the war. Some of the items were forever taken as war spoils into Russia and Poland. One example is the Jagiellon library in Kraków, which still today has around 300,000 items among which autographs by Luther, Goethe and the original scores by Mozart and Beethoven. Germany is trying to negotiate the return of at least some of these items that are kept there under the name *Berlinka*.

After the war, there were two libraries in two German countries in Berlin, one in the West and another one in the East Berlin. After the unification the library operates as one institution in two locations. The library has a rich collection of books from the 16th to 18th centuries. Before the Second World War, the library had 7,384 incunabula, but it lost 3,904 during the war so today it has 4,360. In 1904 it initiated the creation of the world catalogue of incunabula (*Gesamtkatalog der Wiegendrucke*) and has been leading the project ever since. Accordingly, it is an important incunabulistics centre. The Berlin Library is especially important for Croatia, because, among other things, it specialises in collecting literature of all Slavic nations, and also *Croatica*. It was the main model to Velimir Deželić when he conceived the Royal University Library on the Marulić square in 1911.

Vienna

Being the capital of the monarchy, where many Croatian scholars and artists worked in the past, Vienna is an indispensable place for the study of book history. It can be expected that in time there will be many more joint projects within the scope of which Croatian and Austrian participants will investigate individual parts of mutual history.

Österreichische Nationalbibliothek[10]

Austrian National Library is the biggest and central Austrian library that till 1918 served as court library and the biggest library of the Austro-Hun-

10 Österreichische Nationalbibliothek [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.onb.ac.at/ev/index.php

garian Monarchy, to become the National Library of the newly formed Republic of Austria after the First World War. This old and rich library, that stems back to 14th century when Duke Albert III, who practised science and was patron of the Vienna University, ordered that all the books from Vienna treasuries be put into one place and that a library should be founded. Afterwards, the Habsburg emperors, who ruled in several countries acquired great library treasures, often by marriage, like the emperor Maximilian II with Mary of Burgundy, when he obtained books from Burgundy and north France, and afterwards had them transported to Vienna. However, it is considered that the present institution was actually established in 1575, when emperor Maximilian II employed the first research librarian, Hugo Blotius, Humanist from the Netherlands. Since then it has been continuously working and collected a lot of treasures during the centuries. Collections from other libraries were integrated on many occasions, for instance from the Vienna University Library in 1756, and during the rule of Joseph II from a number of secularised monasteries, including those from Croatia. Emperor Charles VI built a library building in Hofburg in 1722 and soon opened it to the public. The ceremonious hall of the National Library with 200,000 books, a great tourist attraction, is still situated here. Today the library has a great collection of manuscripts and papyri, 8,000 incunabula (the fourth collection in the world), 44,000 books from the 16th to 19th centuries. Among them, there are many Croatian books that have still not been investigated.

Budapest

As for Vienna, the same goes for Budapest – our researchers will surely increase the cooperation with Hungarian colleagues in the future, because there is an especially great amount of old Croatian books there.

Országos Széchényi Könyvtár[11]

National Széchényi Library is the biggest Hungarian library. It was founded by Count Széchényi in 1802 with an initial collection of 13,000 books and over 1,200 manuscripts. Count Széchényi collected *Hungarica* for years in Hungary and all over the world and he donated his collection to the Hungarian people so that a national library could be created. It had been opened to public in 1803 and later became the library

11 National Széchényi Library [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.oszk.hu/index_en.htm

of the National Museum that had been opened several years later with the aid of several donations. In 1847 the library moved into the new building of the Museum, and in 1949 it became an independent institution. From 1985 it is housed in a wing of the Buda castle. Today the library has over 2 million books and nearly one million manuscripts. The collection contains 8,500 items printed before 1711, out which 1,700 incunabula. The library contains many old Croatian books, taken from Croatian libraries during the rule of Joseph II.

Ethos Loran Tudományegyetem Egyetemi Könyvtár[12]

University Library Eötvös Loránd is the oldest public library in Hungary. It originates from the library of the Jesuit College (like the National and University Library in Zagreb), established in 1561. The University of Hungary had first been established in Trnava in 1635, and it was moved to Buda in 1777, and then finally to Pest in 1784. Accordingly, the library moved several times. Before the establishment of universities in Zagreb and Cluj in 1874, the University of Pest was the only one in the lands of St. Stephen's Crown. The rare collection of this library contains many books that were taken in the past from the Croatian libraries and assigned to it, being the central Hungarian library at the time. Thus it constantly remains an important source of material for future researches in the field of the history of Croatian book.

The library is located in a beautiful building, the first one build especially for library in Hungary, finished in 1876. Today it has over 3,600,000 items, among which 1,150 incunabula, 9,600 books from the 16th century, 11,000 books from the 17th century and 45,000 books from the 18th century. These books are stored in the special museum collection, consisting of three parts: Antiqua (16th century), Baroque (17th century) and Enlightenment (18th century). The entire collection of rare material from the 16th to the 18th centuries consists 65,000 items. The library also has a rich collection of manuscripts.

Paris: Bibliothèque nationale de France[13]

The National Library of France has a collection of some 30 million books and great collections of manuscripts, and it is one of the great-

12 University Library of Eötvös Loránd University [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.konyvtar.elte.hu/eng/index.html

13 Bibliothèque nationale de France [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.bnf.fr/fr/acc/x.accueil.html

est libraries in the world. It holds 12,000 incunabula and many old and rare books, so it is the imperative place for many researchers. This is a very old library, dating back to the Middle Ages. It was established in Louvre in 1368. During the Hundred Years' War it was plundered by the English, but later kings reconstructed it again, and it was especially enlarged in the 15th century, during the reign of Louis XII. Up to the French Revolution it was the Royal Library and after that it was nationalised and became the National Library. It has been receiving the French legal deposit copy from 1537. It was moved several times, and in 1721 it moved into the palace where it was operating till 1996 when it moved into the present building. However, the majority of rare collections are still today in the old palace. The Royal Library in Paris has for a long time been the biggest and the leading library in the world and today it also excels with its professional and technological achievements.

London: The British Library[14]

The British Library is the national library of Great Britain and today one of the greatest libraries in the world. It holds 14 million books, a great collection of manuscripts, and so on. It is important for the study of old materials because it maintains the Incunabula Short Title Catalogue[15] with short descriptions, and coordinates significant research projects in this area. The library developed from the Library of the British Museum that was established in 1753, it was merged into one institution with other libraries of national importance (Central National Library and National Lending Library) in 1973 and from then on it bears the present name. The Library of the British Museum was from the mid 19th century one of the most important libraries in the world, even more so, because its director Panizzi initiated a lot of reforms and was remarkable for his cataloguing rules and opening of the new dome-ceilinged reading room in 1857. The cataloguing rules and its printed catalogues have been for decades the model to many libraries in the world; and also to Ivan Kostrenčić from the Royal University Library in Zagreb at the end of the 19th century. At that time, the Library of the British Museum was not so rich, abut it excelled with progressive solutions. The library was moved from the museum building into a new building

14 The British Library - The world's knowledge [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.bl.uk/

15 Incunabula Short Title Catalogue [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.bl.uk/catalogues/istc/index.html

in 1998, where the users today have at their disposal some 18 million items. The British Library has 12,500 incunabula and a great collection of books from the 16th to the 18th centuries, as well as manuscripts. The library of King George III, with a rich collection of rare material, is located in the middle of the new building, in a specially built tower.

Croatian libraries with collections of valuable books

Only a part of the Croatian book heritage was saved in Croatia that has been up to the recent times divided under different rulers. A great part of old Croatian books is today stored in different libraries worldwide, and even the heritage in Croatia is not yet completely analysed and protected for posterity. Because of that, the current generation of professionals in the sovereign state has the responsibility to make good for what was not done before. On the one hand, everything should be catalogued and protected, and on the other the history of Croatian printing and librarianship should be investigated on the basis of the collections of the Croatian and foreign libraries.

Since Croatia did not have a king's court during the Modern Age, and moreover, as a consequence of rather long period of the communist rule in the 20th century, a great part of the saved noblemen's private libraries was destroyed or taken out of the country, the authentic old libraries were kept mostly within church institutions, and secular Croatian libraries that we have inherited, date from the Modern Age, from the 19th and 20th centuries.

Church libraries

The richest old Croatian library is **the Metropolitan Library of the Zagreb Archbishopric** *(Metropolitana)*[16] in Zagreb. Its oldest codices date back to the 11th century. The *Metropolitana* was significantly enriched in the 17th century, during the time of the bishop A. Mikulić, who built a separate building for it in 1692 and moved all the books from the cathedral, established a foundation for its development and bought a very valuable library of the well known Slovene polyhistor J. W. Valvasor (1641-1693). Bishop M. Vrhovac enriched it additionally at the beginning of the 19th century by acquiring books from several European states. However, only his successor, archbishop J. Haulik opened the

16 Hrvatski državni arhiv [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://zagreb.arhiv.hr/hr/hda/hda/metropolitana.htm

Metropolitana to the cultural public of Zagreb in 1846. In 1880 it was seriously threatened in an earthquake and in 1914 it was moved to the building of the then Royal University Library (today Croatian State Archives) on Marulić square where its collections can still be used. The library has some 60,000 volumes of books, and Valvasar' library presents the special treasure even today. The library has a valuable collection of manuscripts and the biggest collection of incunabula in Croatia (252 items), and especially valuable is its collection with nearly 1,500 titles from the 16th century as well as books from the 17th and 18th centuries. The incunabula catalogue was published by Šime Jurić[17] (*Croatica Christiana periodica* 8, 13(1984), 154-215), and the catalogue of books from the 16th century was published by Vladimir Magić in 2005.[18]

The **Library of the Archbishopric Preparatory** in **Split** was partly preserved. It was opened in 1706 as the first public library in the town of Split. It was named after Ivan Paštrić, professor at the Theological Faculty in Rome, whose donation made the initial collection. The library today has some 50,000 items, including many treasures. The analysis of the library is under way, but the great part of Paštrić's books was not saved.

Recently, work is being done on analysis and protection of the preserved **Bishop's Library in Senj**[19] which has the status of the heritage library and is not very accessible to the general public. It was founded recently from several older libraries: bishop's, chapter's, preparatory, of the Senj institute Ožegovićianum, and others. The library has 20,000 items, among them 2 incunabula and 206 books from the 16th and 17th centuries. Since the seat of the Archbishopric is today in Rijeka, the Library in Senj can be used only by special announcement.

Library of the Archbishopric in Zadar is set in order and it is planned that it will become part of the University Library in Zadar once the new building is erected. More activities in this library are expected in the future.

17 Jurić, Šime. Katalozi inkunabula crkvenih ustanova u Hrvatskoj : I: Zbirka inkunabula Metropolitanske knjižnice u Zagrebu. // Croatica Christiana periodica 8, 13(1984), 154-215

18 Magić, Vladimir. Katalog knjiga XVI. St. u Metropolitanskoj knjižnici u Zagrebu. Zagreb : Hrvatski državni arhiv, 2005.

19 Sakralna baština [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.senj.hr/Povijest_sakralna.htm#L2

A lot of work was done on the renovation of the **Library of the Archbishopric in Đakovo.**[20] It also performs the function of the Library of the Catholic Theological Faculty in Đakovo and it is the only library, together with the *Metropolitana*, with several staff members. It holds 9 incunabula, 100 book volumes from the 16th century, 1,000 book volumes from the 17th century and several thousands of items from the 18th century.

Croatian monasteries hold many old and valuable books. In many of them books are stored in inadequate conditions and the lack of librarians is most conspicuous. The majority are Franciscan libraries, the most prominent among them being those in Dubrovnik, Hvar, Kampor on the island of Rab, Košljun on the island of Krk, Kloštar-Ivanić, Makarska, Našice, Osijek, Požega, Sinj, Slavonski Brod, Split, Šibenik, Trsat, Varaždin, Virovitica, Visovac, Vukovar, Zadar, Zagreb and Zaostrog. The catalogues of incunabula in the Franciscan province of Saints Cyril and Methodius and St. Jerome were made by Šime Jurić and Vatroslav Frkin and published in the journal *Croatica Christiana periodica*.[21]

Franciscans Conventuals have important libraries in Cres, Split and Šibenik and **Capuchins** in Karlobag, Osijek, Rijeka and Varaždin. The great treasures held in the **Dominican** libraries in Bol on the island of Brač, Dubrovnik, Split and Trogir should also be mentioned. The catalogue of incunabula in Croatian Dominican libraries was made by Šime Jurić and Franjo Šanjek.[22]

The **Research Library "Juraj Habdelić"** in Zagreb is the central library of the **Jesuits.** It includes some remnants of old Jesuit collections from the libraries in Dubrovnik, Split, and Požega.[23] This central library of the Croatian Province of the Society of Jesus was founded in Zagreb in 1920, together with the new Jesuit college and Faculty of Philosophy. It holds 150,000 books, including 25 incunabula and some 3,000 books from the 16th to the 18th century. The catalogue of incunabula in Croatian Jesuit libraries was made by Šime Jurić.[24]

20 Katolički bogoslovni fakultet u Djakovu [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.djkbf.hr/knjiznica.html

21 Croatica Christiana periodica 11, 20(1987), 130-172 i 14, 26(1990), 121-204; 15, 27(1991), 182-261.

22 Jurić, Šime; Franjo Šanjek. Katalozi inkunabula crkvenih ustanova u Hrvatskoj : II. Zbirka inkunabula dominikanskih knjižnica u Hrvatskoj. // Croatica Christiana periodica 9, 15(1985), 123-199

23 Knjižnica Juraj Habdelić [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.ffdi.hr/knjiznica/

24 Jurić, Šime. Inkunabule u isusovačkim knjižnicama u Hrvatskoj. // Vrela i prinosi : zbornik za povijest isusovačkog reda u hrvatskim krajevima 18(1990-1991), 88-131

Croatian monastery libraries are an inexhaustible source for the research of the history of Croatian books and the history of book in general.

Heritage libraries of the Croatian nobility

Old libraries of Croatian nobility have not been saved in most cases. The exception is the **Library of Nikola Zrinski** (*Zriniana*), developed in the 16th and 17th centuries, fortunately moved from Čakovec at the end of the 17th century to the Moravian castle of Bitov (Vöttau), and thus managed to escape the fate of other libraries of the same family, that were confiscated after the Zrinski-Frankopan conspiracy. The library was in Bitov till the Viennese antiquarian Kende bought it in 1890. The Croatian government redeemed it from him for the Royal University Library in Zagreb in 1893. *Zriniana* is today in the vault of the National and University Library in Zagreb and consists of 526 books and 29 manuscripts. However, up to now it was mostly researched by Hungarian scientists. The original catalogue of that library from 1662 is accessible through the web pages of the National and University Library in Zagreb.[25] According to the catalogue the library held additional 202 books and 5 manuscripts that have disappeared. The National Library of Hungary and the Library of the Szeged University created a virtual reconstruction of the entire library from the 17th century within the joint project *3D Bibliotheca Zriniana* in 2002.[26]

Another important library, also kept as a separate collection in the vault of the National and University Library in Zagreb, is the **Library of the Kušević Family**[27] from Mala Mlaka, originated during 18th and at beginning of the 19th century. It contains the valuable library of Nikola Škrlec Lomnički with 1,916 books and 343 manuscripts, and it was bought by the National and University Library in Zagreb in 1959.

The vault of the National and University Library in Zagreb contains the books of the family Patačić, donated to the then Royal University Library by the Countess Eleonora Patačić, as well as some other books from older aristocratic families, that are not organised in special collections.

25 Katalog Knjižnice obitelji Zrinski [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.nsk.hr/HeritageDetails.aspx?id=665

26 3D Zrinyi Library [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.eruditio.hu/zrinyi3d/

27 Nacionalna i sveučilišna knjižnica u Zagrebu : Zbirka rukopisa i starih knjiga [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.nsk.hr/DigitalLib1c.aspx?id=275

The **Library of the aristocratic family Garagnin-Fanfogna** from the 18th and 19th centuries is stored in the Museum of the town of **Trogir**. It was established by Ivan Luka Garagnjin, Bishop of Rab and Archbishop of Split. Although the especially valuable items of this library were sold to other libraries and archives at the beginning of 20th century, this collection is very valuable even today, containing 8,388 books including 5 incunabula and books from 16th to 20th centuries.

The Museum of Slavonia in **Osijek** holds **a rich library of Normann-Prandau, the noblemen from Valpovo**, with a collection of 9,000 books, among which a number of books from the 16th century. They were presented to the public at the exhibition in 2007. The contemporary analysis of this library is under way.

Heritage libraries of distinguished citizens

Among the preserved private libraries the **Baltazar Bogišić collection** should be singled out. He was a lawyer and scientist and the library was founded after his death in Cavtat in 1909. He was a great bibliophile who spent the majority of his life in Paris. He managed to collect a valuable library containing many treasures. The library consists of 15,000 book titles, 66 incunabula and 164 manuscripts. The Rector's palace in Cavtat, holding the library, is currently being reconstructed, and the actual arrangement of the archive and the library is still outstanding.

The County Museum of **Rovinj** holds the **Heritage library of the canon Petar Stanković** (*Stancoviciana)*, with 4,000 books, out of which 2,896 with his own bookplates. 84 of these books were printed in the 16th century. The books from the 16th and 17th centuries were presented in exhibitions in 2001 and 2004.

In addition to the collections in public heritage institutions, some heritage libraries are private. The well-known is the **Library of the Brlić family** that belonged to the family till 2001, it was evacuated during the war, and it is currently in **Slavonski Brod** again, finally under the authority of the town of Brod. The library holds some 8,000 books, and it was collected by the members of the family from 18th to 20th century. The family Brlić-Mažuranić also holds in **Rijeka** the only private family library open to the public from 2000 – the Heritage library Mažuranić-Brlić-Ružić.[28] It is situated in the Ružić residence on Sušačke pećine, and has around 10,000 books, among which many old and rare editions.

28 Vila Ružić [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.villaruzic.hr/biblioteke_m.html

It should be especially mentioned here that in the 19th century there were only two private libraries with rich collections of old Croatian and Slavic books: the **Library of Ljudevit Gaj** (the initiator of the language reform and the creator of Croatian spelling) and the **Library of Ivan Kukuljević Sakcinski** (creator of the first Croatian general bibliography). The Kukuljević library (12,000 items) was bought by the Croatian government for the library of the Croatian Academy of Science and Arts, and the Gaj library (over 16,000 items) for the National and University Library in Zagreb. Thus both valuable collections were stored in Croatian public libraries and preserved for the future. Today they are in the vaults of the libraries that store them.

Heritage libraries of old gymnasia

Two Croatian gymnasia (secondary schools) with long tradition have heritage collections of old books: **Gymnasium in Požega**[29] and **First Sušak Gymnasium in Rijeka**.[30] Heritage collection of old **Gymnasium in Osijek** is today stored in the Museum of Slavonia, and part of the collection of books from the old gymnasium in Dubrovnik is stored in the **Research Library in Dubrovnik.**

National and University Library in Zagreb[31]

By far the greatest collection of old and rare materials in Croatia is held by the **National and University Library in Zagreb**, which today has a collection of some 3 million items. The library has a very long tradition (recently it celebrated its 400th anniversary), and in its function of the national library it continuously adds to its collection of old Croatian printed materials and manuscripts. The library dates back to the year 1607, when the Jesuits came to Zagreb to organise the first high school education. After the Jesuit order was abolished, the library was included in the Royal Academy of Sciences in Zagreb till 1850, and from 1850 till the opening of the modern university in 1874 within the Law Academy. The year 1777 was especially important in the history of the library, when the canon Adam Baltazar Krčelić donated his library, under the

29 Gimnazija Požega : Knjižnica [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.gimnazija-pozega.skole.hr/skola/knjiznica

30 Školska knjižnica – Prva riječka hrvatska gimnazija [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.knjiznicari.hr/UDK02/index.php/%C5%A0kolska_knji%C5%BEnica_PRVA_RIJE%C4%8CKA_HRVATSKA_GIMNAZIJA,_RIJEKA

31 Nacionalna i sveučilišna knjižnica : Zbirka rukopisa i starih knjiga [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.nsk.hr/DigitalLib1c.aspx?id=275

condition that the public usage should be ensured. From then on it started developing faster and many other individuals started donating their books and, usually by will, whole libraries. From 1837 the library was granted the right to receive the legal deposit copy for Croatia and Slavonia, and from 1918 till 1990 to publications from the territory of the former Yugoslavia, and today from the territory of the Republic of Croatia. At the beginning, the library operated in the Zagreb Upper Town, from 1882 to 1913 in the university building in the Lower Town, and from 1913 till 1995 in its own palace on the Marulić square. Today it is housed in a new, modern building into which it moved in 1995.

The special collection of rare material was established in the National and University Library in Zagreb in 1894 when the library of Ljudevit Gaj was bought. Gaj's library was integrated into the Collection straight away and it constitutes the core of old Croatian material in the library's rich vault. The National and University Library in Zagreb today holds 200 incunabula and a rich collection of books from the 16th, 17th and 18th centuries. Digitised catalogues of the Collection of Old and Rare Books in the vaults are on line accessible on the library's website.

Other rich Croatian general research libraries

The first library that has to be mentioned in this context is a library in Zagreb, which is, admittedly, a part of another institution, but very rich in old Croatian books. This is the **Library of the Croatian Academy of Science and Arts** holding a rich collection of treasures in its vault.[32] It was opened in 1867 when the Academy started working, and already in 1868 it acquired the library of Ivan Kukuljević Sakcinski. Many prominent people donated or bequeathed their books to the Academy Library, so today it has one of the richest collections of old Croatian books. In April 2009 the library started working in a new location in the adapted building at the Strossmayer square in Zagreb. It holds some 400,000 items, and has a special department of old and rare books (around 17,400 books published before 1900, out of which 35 incunabula, 331 items from the 16th and 483 items from the 17th century). Among the rare items the first editions of the works of old Croatian writers are specially stored.

32 Knjižnica Hrvatske akademije znanosti i umjetnosti [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://knjiznica.hazu.hr/

Outside Zagreb, there are especially valuable collections of old and rare materials in university libraries in Pula, Rijeka, Split and in research libraries in Zadar and Dubrovnik. They are independent institutions with professional staff, qualified for research of book history.

University Library of Rijeka has a long history, because its beginning goes back to 1627 when the Jesuit college was founded. In the 18th century the town of Rijeka received donations of two rich family libraries (Benzoni and Marotti), that were at the end of the century united with the books from the former Jesuit college and nautical academy, so the city-gymnasium library was established in 1782. Later it was named *Biblioteca Civica*, and from 1949 to 1993 it was called Research Library of Rijeka. From 1840 it has been receiving the legal deposit copy of publications from the Rijeka region, and from 1949 of those published in Croatia. Today the library has some 400,000 items, out of which 21 incunabula and 37,000 items of old material. The data on old and rare books as well as data about the project *Historical Collection of the University Library of Rijeka* are available on the web.[33]

University Library in Pula was founded in 1949 as the Research Library with the collection of the late County Library of Istria, established in 1930 in Pula by merging three libraries: the library of the former Istrian Provincial Committee, established in Poreč in 1861 and moved to Pula in 1922, the City Library of Pula, established in 1903 and the library of the Istrian society for Archaeology and Homeland History, established in 1884 in Poreč. From 1959 it has obtained the legal deposit copy of publications printed in Croatia. It has a collection of over 350,000 items, including 20,371 items of old publications, 4 incunabula, 155 books from the 16th century, and a separate Nautical Library with some 20,000 books and periodicals (established in 1802 in Venice, and functioning in Pula from 1866 to 1918).

Research Library in Zadar was established in 1835 as the City Library Paravia.[34] It had the name of Research Library from 1949. It has been working and occupying the same building from 1972. The library receives the legal deposit copy of publications from the territory of Croatia. Today it has around 400,000 items, out of which 34 incunabula, 1,000 items from the 16th century and a rich collection of manuscripts

33 Očuvanje europske knjižnične baštine u Sveučilišnoj knjižnici Rijeka [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.svkri.hr/povijesnazbirka/popisgrade.html

34 Znanstvena knjižnica Zadar [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.zkzd.hr/pocetna.php?jezik=hr

and a collection of parchments. General information about rare and old materials in the library can be found on the web. It should also be mentioned that a future integration of the library into the University of Zadar and its move into the building of the future University Library is planned.

There are other libraries in **Zadar** rich in old and rare materials, the proof of which can be found in a number of published catalogues of incunabula and books from the 16th century.[35]

City Library Juraj Šižgorić in Šibenik.[36] The library has a Collection of Rare Materials in which it stores very valuable old books and it also actively publishes and promotes them. From 2005 it has moved to new premises, and now it has better conditions for the development of research activities of book history.

University Library in Split was established in 1903 as a City Library, from 1962 it operated under the name Research Library, and it has been operating under the current name from 1992.[37] The library has been receiving the legal deposit copy of all publications published in Croatia from 1946. Today it holds some 400,000 items, out of which 6,000 volumes of old and rare books (9 incunabula). The new library building was formally opened towards the end of 2008, but the equipping and gradual move is still ongoing. The library will have much better conditions for research work of old books in the new building. The level of expertise of the staff of the University Library is testified by the catalogues of the books from the 16th and 17th centuries published up to now: Jozić, Branko: Knjige tiskane u XVI. stoljeću : katalog fonda Sveučilišne knjižnice u Splitu. Split, 1996. and Kovačić, Mihaela: Knjige tiskane u XVII stoljeću : katalog fonda Sveučilišne knjižnice u Splitu, Split, 1998.

The Library of the Archaeological Museum with a rich collection of old material[38] is older than the University Library in Split. It is housed in the oldest museum institution in Croatia, established in

35 Jurić, Šime. Inkunabule u zadarskim knjižnicama. Zadar, 1985; Galić, Pavao. Katalog knjiga tiskanih u 16. stoljeću, koje se čuvaju u zadarskoj Naučnoj biblioteci. Zadar, 1987.; Galić, Pavao; Bosiljka Hercig. Katalog knjiga tiskanih u 16. stoljeću : Historijski arhiv u Zadru, Samostan sv. Marije u Zadru, Samostan sv. Mihovila u Zadru, Stolni kaptol zadarski, Samostan sv. Pavla na Školjiću kod Preka. Zadar, 1989.

36 Gradska knjižnica Juraj Šižgorić Šibenik [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.knjiznica-sibenik.hr/

37 Sveučilišna knjižnica u Splitu [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.svkst.hr/index.htm

38 Arheološki muzej Split [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.mdc.hr/split-arheoloski/hr/FS-knjiznica.html

1820. The eminent archaeologist don Frane Bulic, who was in charge of the Museum from 1884 on, deserves special merit for the development of this library. He initiated the construction of the present building of the Archaeological Museum in Split, erected in 1914. The rich library is at the ground floor. Today the library has some 50,000 items, among which 8 incunabula and some 170 books from the 16th century.

The Research Library in Dubrovnik is a part of the Libraries of Dubrovnik, which causes numerous problems for this old and very rich library. Part of the material is stored in inadequate space, which still has to be completely adapted. Because of the size of the collection the library now operates on two locations, in the old town in the Cvijete Zuzorić street and in the Skočibuha palace on Boninovo. Its integration into the University of Dubrovnik is ongoing and organisational changes are expected in Dubrovnik soon. The library has over 260,000 items, with 77 incunabula, 10,490 books from the heritage collection from the 16th century up to 1808 from the collections Collegium Rhagusinum Antiqua and Pozze-Katić, and a rich collection of manuscripts. The catalogue of the incunabula it holds is available on the web.[39]

The Library of the Museum of Slavonia in Osijek was established together with the Museum.[40] The heritage collection of publications from Osijek and Slavonia (*Essekiana* and *Slavoniana*) was established in the Museum by the donation of the wholesale merchant C. F. Nuber in 1908. The donor stipulated that this institution should continue collecting heritage publications. The library was later on considerably enriched with the collections bought of O. Friml-Antunović and R. Franjetić, bibliophiles from Osijek. In addition, some 700 items originate from the former Royal Great Gymnasium of Osijek, the origins of which date to 1728, when the Jesuits established gymnasium. Today the library has a collection of more than 150,000 items (around 80 books from the 16th century, some 500 from the 17th), a rich collection of old newspapers and other significant collections: Prandau-Normann, Weissmann, Gymnasium collection and Heritage collection. The professional level of the library staff is shown by the published catalogue of the books from the 16th century (Vinaj, Marina: Tiskopisi XVI. stoljeća iz riznice Muzeja Slavonije u Osijeku. Osijek, 2007.)

39 Znanstvena knjižnica Dubrovnik : abecedni opis inkunabula [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.dkd.hr/dk_ink_ktlg.html

40 Muzej Slavonije Osijek - Odjel muzealnih tiskopisa [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://mso.hr/index.php?page=odjel-muzealnih-tiskopisa

List of web resources

Die Bayerische Staatsbibliothek: Bayerische Staatsbibliothek - Bavarian State Library [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.bsb-muenchen.de/index.php?L=3

Die Bayerische Staatsbibliothek: Department of Manuscripts and Early Printed Books [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.bsb-muenchen.de/Department-of-Manuscripts-and.292+M57d0acf4f16.0.html

Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana : sito istituzionale della Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.vaticanlibrary.va/home.php?ling=eng

Biblioteca Nazionale Marciana, antica biblioteca in Venezia [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://marciana.venezia.sbn.it/

Biblioteca Medicea Laurenziana Firenze [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.bml.firenze.sbn.it/index_ing.htm

Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale di Firenze. [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.bncf.firenze.sbn.it/

Bibliothèque nationale de France [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.bnf.fr/fr/acc/x.accueil.html

The British Library - The world's knowledge [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.bl.uk/

Incunabula Short Title Catalogue [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.bl.uk/catalogues/istc/index.html

Gimnazija Požega : Knjižnica [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.gimnazija-pozega.skole.hr/skola/knjiznica

Gradska knjižnica Juraj Šižgorić Šibenik [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.knjiznica-sibenik.hr/

Herzog August Bibliothek [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.hab.de/index-e.htm

Hrvatski državni arhiv [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://zagreb.arhiv.hr/hr/hda/hda/metropolitana.htm

Incunabula.com : Web site dedicated to researching and discussing Incunabula, incunables and other rare books [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://incunabula.com/#/largest-collections/4530171939

Katolicki bogoslovni fakultet u Djakovu [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.djkbf.hr/knjiznica.html

Katalog Knjižnice obitelji Zrinski [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.nsk.hr/HeritageDetails.aspx?id=665

Knjižnica Hrvatske akademije znanosti i umjetnosti [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://knjiznica.hazu.hr/

Knjižnica Juraj Habdelić [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.ffdi.hr/knjiznica/

Muzej Slavonije Osijek - Odjel muzealnih tiskopisa [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://mso.hr/index.php?page=odjel-muzealnih-tiskopisa

Nacionalna i sveučilišna knjižnica : Zbirka rukopisa i starih knjiga [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.nsk.hr/DigitalLib1c.aspx?id=275

National Széchényi Library [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.oszk.hu/index_en.htm

Očuvanje europske knjižnične baštine u Sveučilišnoj knjižnici Rijeka [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.svkri.hr/povijesnazbirka/popisgrade.html

Sakralna baština [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.senj.hr/Povijest_sakralna.htm#L2

Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://staatsbibliothek-berlin.de/index_en.html

Sveučilišna knjižnica u Splitu [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.svkst.hr/index.htm

Arheološki muzej Split [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.mdc.hr/split-arheoloski/hr/FS-knjiznica.html

Školska knjižnica – Prva riječka hrvatska gimnazija [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.knjiznicari.hr/UDK02/index.php/%C5%A0kolska_knji%C5%BEnica_PRVA_RIJE%C4%8CKA_HRVATSKA_GIMNAZIJA,_RIJEKA

University Library of Eötvös Loránd University [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.konyvtar.elte.hu/eng/index.html

Vila Ružić [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.villaruzic.hr/biblioteke_m.html

Znanstvena knjižnica Dubrovnik : abecedni opis inkunabula [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.dkd.hr/dk_ink_ktlg.html

Znanstvena knjižnica Zadar [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.zkzd.hr/pocetna.php?jezik=hr

Österreichische Nationalbibliothek [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.onb.ac.at/ev/index.php

3D Zrinyi Librray [cited 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.eruditio.hu/zrinyi3d/

References

Galić, Pavao. Katalog knjiga tiskanih u 16. stoljeću, koje se čuvaju u zadarskoj Naučnoj biblioteci. Zadar : Naučna biblioteka, 1987.

Galić, Pavao; Bosiljka Hercig. Katalog knjiga tiskanih u 16. stoljeću : Historijski arhiv u Zadru, Samostan sv. Marije u Zadru, Samostan sv. Mihovila u Zadru, Stolni kaptol zadarski, Samostan sv. Pavla na Školjiću kod Preka. Zadar : Historijski arhiv : Stolni kaptol zadarski, 1989.

Jurić, Šime. Inkunabule u isusovačkim knjižnicama u Hrvatskoj. // Vrela i prinosi : zbornik za povijest isusovačkog reda u hrvatskim krajevima 18(1990-1991), 88-131

Jurić, Šime. Inkunabule u zadarskim knjižnicama. Zadar : Društvo bibliotekara ; Zagreb : Nacionalna i sveučilišna biblioteka, 1985.

Jurić, Šime. Katalozi inkunabula crkvenih ustanova u Hrvatskoj : I. Zbirka inkunabula Metropolitanske knjižnice u Zagrebu. // Croatica Christiana periodica 8, 13(1984), 154-215.

Jurić, Šime; Franjo Šanjek. Katalozi inkunabula crkvenih ustanova u Hrvatskoj : II. Zbirka inkunabula dominikanskih knjižnica u Hrvatskoj. // Croatica Christiana periodica 9, 15(1985), 123-199

Jurić, Šime; Vatroslav Frkin. Katalozi inkunabula crkvenih ustanova u Hrvatskoj : III. Zbirka inkunabula u knjižnicama Hrvatske franjevačke provincije sv. Ćirila i Metoda. // Croatica Christiana periodica 11, 20(1987), 130-172.

Jurić, Šime; Vatroslav Frkin. Katalozi inkunabula crkvenih ustanova u Hrvatskoj : IV. Zbirka inkunabula u knjižnicama Franjevačke provincije sv. Jeronima : dio 1-2. // Croatica Christiana periodica 14, 26(1990), 121-204; 15, 27(1991), 182-261.
Magić, Vladimir. Katalog knjiga XVI. St. u Metropolitanskoj knjižnici u Zagrebu. Zagreb : Hrvatski državni arhiv, 2005.

Biographical sketch

Dr. sc. Dora Sečić is associate professor emeritus at the Department of Information Sciences of the Faculty of Philosophy in Osijek. She was leader the scientific project of the Ministry of Science, Education and Sport, entitled *Library Heritage in the Collections of Croatian Libraries: Challenges of Discovery and Interpretation*, and is currently a researcher on this project.

She obtained a BA in English and German language and literature at the Faculty of Philosophy in Zagreb, MA in 1977, and PhD in the field of information sciences at the University of Zagreb in 1996. She worked in special libraries in Switzerland from 1969 to 1980, and in the National and University Library from 1980 to 1996. She was the director of the Library of the Academy of Science and Arts from 1996 to 2005, and professor at the Faculty of Philosophy in Osijek from 2006 to 2008.

She is member of the Croatian Library Association, and was its president from 1984 to 1987. She was editor-in-chief of the journal *Vjesnik bibliotekara Hrvatske* from 1992 to 1997, and member of the IFLA Round Table for Newspapers from 1989 to 1996. She was a part-time lecturer at the Department of Librarianship of the Faculty of Philosophy in Zagreb from 1984 to 1998, and has been tutor to this day. Occasionally she is invited to speak at professional and scientific meetings in Croatia.

She is recipient of the Kukuljević deed, the highest ranking recognition in Croatian librarianship. She is the author of three books and over 70 professional and scientific papers in domestic and foreign journals and proceedings.

KNJIŽNA BAŠTINA U EUROPSKIM I HRVATSKIM KNJIŽNICAMA

Sažetak:

Autorica u radu daje sažeti pregled povijesti razvoja knjižničnih fondova u Europi od humanizma do današnjih dana. Predstavljajući knjižnu baštinu u europskim i hrvatskim knjižnicama, autorica posebno obrađuje dvorske, crkvene i sveučilišne knjižnice, i to okolnosti njihova osnutka, zbirke stare i rijetke građe te današnje stanje, obrađenost zbirke, otvorenost za javnost i mrežnu dostupnost. Pri tome navodi i mrežne stranice svake važnije knjižnice ili projekata vezanih uz povijest knjige i spomeničkih knjižnica. Nadalje autorica daje pregled pojedinačnih europskih i hrvatskih središta za proučavanje povijesti knjige koji je također upotpunjen adresama mrežnih stranica knjižnica. Posebno su obrađene hrvatske knjižnice koje posjeduju fondove dragocjenih knjižnica, i to crkvene knjižnice, spomeničke knjižnice hrvatskih velikaša i uglednih građana, općeznanstvene knjižnice te zbirke stare i rijetke građe Nacionalne i sveučilišne knjižnice i Knjižnice Hrvatske akademije znanosti i umjetnosti. Navedeni su i najvažniji postojeći popisi hrvatskih inkunabula.

Ključne riječi: knjižna baština, Europa, Hrvatska; povijest knjige, spomeničke knjižnice

TRACING OUR WRITTEN HERITAGE
CHALLENGES, PERSPECTIVES, QUESTIONS

Erich Renhart
Karl-Franzens-University of Graz, Vestigia – Manuscript Research Centre, Austria

Abstract
The paper reflects on the situation of many collections of manuscripts in the countries of Eastern and South-Eastern Europe. It is based on experiences gained at the following places and in their manuscript collections: Yerevan (Armenia), Bucharest and Cluj (Romania), Sofia and Plovdiv (Bulgaria), Ohrid (Macedonia), Tirana (Albania), and Zadar (Croatia). The process of creating access to widely unknown collections is described as well as the questions of digitisation, conservation, cataloguing and scientific study. The objectives of the paper are: introduction into the specifics of manuscript heritage, creating sensibility for conservational requests, and contribution to digitising of manuscripts.

Keywords:
mediaeval manuscripts, book conservation, digitisation

Introductory remarks

The countries of Eastern and South-Eastern Europe have become easily accessible in the last two decades. It is only now that we can have a critical look at the written heritage housed there in depositories of manifold kind and quality. There is a range of highly valuable sources within this part of the written European heritage. The most prominent among them are: manuscripts and incunabula (early prints until 1500). This article concentrates on manuscripts and manuscript collections especially in the Eastern and South-Eastern regions of Europe.

Experience of the last years has evidenced that nearly everything has to be done to make known and accessible vast, as well as small collections in remote places, to protect manuscripts from further degradation and to exploit them scientifically. There are even cases of „clandestine“collections, some of them being known but to a handful of persons: I call them „hidden manuscript treasures". The question is urgent in some sense, for the storage situation in several cases is highly critical (mostly because of moisture and humidity). And there is a further menace: selected manuscripts or parts of them (single folios) are increasingly considered as objects of commerce, mainly illegal commerce. This means that many good objects are lost for scientific studies for a long time, others are mutilated and some disappear forever.

Collections

Identifying collections

Although the number of places where manuscripts are housed is known, it is a permanent task to trace out the variety of small collections in remote places in order to finally get a more comprehensive knowledge of what we have. We should design a landscape of places with manuscripts. This is valid not only for the Western Balkan countries. Yet we do not have a repertory for any country in the region giving answer to the questions: Where are the books? In what places do we find them? And what do we find there? These questions are simple but fundamental. If we had such a map we could calibrate the work to be carried out. It would allow us to *systematically* match the situation. – I would like to compare this situation with a state which wants to impose taxes. First of all, it would be helpful to know the number of inhabitants, which means to organise a census. Let us have a census of manuscripts.
First message: *there is an inevitable necessity to design the map of places with manuscripts.*

Big and small collections

Besides the big national libraries, state archives, museums and university libraries we find a lot of small collections. Such small collections are often considered to be "minor" – obviously due to the small number of manuscripts. And frequently they are treated as being of marginal value, unimportant. We may distinguish between two cases of small collections:

- the case of a collection or a holding within a big library,
- the case of a separate collection in a remote place.

Let me give some examples.

Case one:
Even on the shelves of the impressive *Austrian National Library* in Vienna we will find manuscripts, which are obviously forgotten. Eleven

Syriac manuscripts are sheltered there. Indeed, the number is not overwhelming at all. This collection has been ignored somehow, up to this day, although there is a pretty well designed manuscript among them: the famous one, which was the *Vorlage* for the first printed New Testament in Syriac characters in 1555 by Widmannstetter. But we do not have a descriptive catalogue of the *Syriaca* here or at any other place in Austria. What we actually have is a meagre handwritten inventory list. I suppose we can find comparable situations in several other big libraries.
Second message: *even in easily accessible and well established Western libraries we may find "hidden" manuscript treasures.*

Case two:
In Macedonia, on the Ohrid Lake, a small museum is housing a collection of 95 manuscripts. All of them are Greek, except four Slavic ones. Again, a descriptive catalogue does not exist. Among the Greek codices one is surprised to find a palimpsest manuscript, a *codex rescriptus*: more than 400 vellum folios destroyed and replaced by another Greek text. The first layer of the text has not yet been identified. By the way, in cooperation with the Ivan Dujčev Centre for Slavo-Byzantine Studies of the Sofia University we are going to promote the catalogue.
Ohrid is situated in a region where cultures have met. Latin, Greek, Slavic, Turkish and Albanian influences can be perceived in this area. This is evident from the buildings of the town. But some aspects of this reality are inscribed like sediments in the written heritage as well. We are still lacking a systematic study of what can be found there.

Case three:
Cluj, Koloszvar, Klausenburg, is a lovely town in Siebenbürgen, Transylvania/Romania. There we may visit three fine libraries holding manuscripts. One among them is the Library of the Romanian Academy of Sciences – a modest building with the charm of the socialist architecture of the late sixties or early seventies. One cannot imagine what they have on their shelves, among others there is a range of Greek and Latin manuscripts, a collection of Arabic and Hebrew manuscripts as well as fragments, and – fully astonishing – some dozens of Persian manuscripts. I would never have expected such manuscripts to be stored at such a remote site, deep in the Romanian province. Of course, there are no good catalogues of all these objects.
Third message: *there are some small collections in remote places which deserve our attention, too.*

Clandestine collections

There is another category of collections, which can be considered as "clandestine" – manuscripts which are kept hidden. How can one talk about such collections? There are cases where just a few persons have knowledge of the existence of a local manuscript depository, a depository that should not be made public because of certain historical circumstances. We would find such cases in Turkey for example, but certainly, elsewhere, too, and not only in the countries of the Middle East. In several regions of the world there is still the danger of books being burnt or confiscated by the state, by local authorities, by religious fanatics and so on.
Fourth message: *there are collections we cannot and should not touch now.*

Access to collections

Once you have identified a collection the problem arises of how to create access to it. This is the key question, a question of crucial importance. There are various reasons why a responsible person does not want to open a collection. We are confronted with the most delicate situations: e.g. the collection of manuscripts in the Armenian Patriarchate of Jerusalem. Here access is strictly denied. Permission depends on the one person in charge of the library. In some cases one may get the doors open only after years or never in a lifetime.

One might add here the question of the access to the Glagolithic manuscript treasure on the small island of Košljun in Croatia.

But these are not the standard cases. Finally – and this the result of our long time experience: *Getting access, working in a collection and working with persons on site is a matter of confidence and trust.* Let us consider this to be our **fifth message.**

Digitisation

Digital recording

It is quite clear that the manuscripts in all collections have to be fully digitised. In the case of major collections [referring to quantity] this process will cover a long period of time. This situation would demand solutions beyond the main scope of a comparatively small research institute. The other case which is more frequent in the Balkan region is the collections housing several dozens or few hundreds of manuscripts each.

Just to indicate some of the main places where we have visited libraries in the course of the last years and where we have been working for a longer period of time (in alphabetical order):

Bucharest: Library of the Academy of Sciences, dozens of manuscripts
Cluj: University Library, Municipal Archives, Library of the Academy; hundreds of manuscripts
Etchmiadsin: Library of the Catholicos, some 1,000 manuscripts
Maribor: Episcopal Archives, hundreds of manuscripts
Ohrid: already mentioned, 95 manuscripts
Plovdiv: Ivan-Vazov National Museum, more than 300 manuscripts, mainly Greek
Sofia: Ivan Dujčev Centre for Slavo-Byzantine Studies: 451 manuscripts, Greek, Slavic, Turkish from the Ottoman period
Tirana: State Archives, 120 manuscripts, among them the famous Codices Beratinus I and II
Yerevan: Matenadaran, more than 14,000 manuscripts

So far, we succeeded in establishing cooperation with Sofia, Ohrid, Maribor, Yerevan and Tirana. These are the places where we started or we are going to start digitisation of manuscripts.

Our way of cooperation is to find funding to enable our partners to carry out the work. We are giving grants to persons doing the boring work of digitisation. This job demands special abilities: good concentration, and above all a good feeling for the sensitive objects – all of them are originals, all of them are unique. We are financing or co-financing technical devices, we are giving necessary support.

But digitisation is not that easy as it might seem. Dealing with manuscripts is not to be compared with conventional mass-digitisation. There are two demands to be dealt with: conservational aspects and scientific needs. I will focus on these exigencies in the following topics.

The sixth message: *Digital recording has to respect the main guidelines of care and conservation.*

Presentation on the web

After digitisation, it is always the question of what and how to present on the web. Is it necessary to provide all the data collected? We are in favour of the model of producing a sort of trailer of each manuscript for quick presentation. The complete set of data may be made accessible via databases with a password system. Additionally, we would prefer access free of charge for scholars and non-commercial use. This is a question which can be answered in many different ways, of course. Anyhow, it is necessary to create Internet portals to provide information about the manuscripts which are already digitised.

Long-term storage and creation of metadata

I am not an expert in this field, but I have got the impression there is already a variety of good solutions. It does not seem necessary to me to reinvent the wheel. One could create synergies with the help of partner institutions. Perhaps I am mistaken on that point.

Care and conservation

The conservator's diagnosis

Upon the first encounter with a collection, it is of primary importance to scrutinise the storage conditions of the manuscripts and to check each single object. Thus, it has to be decided if any book conservation or even restoration is necessary, and if so, to determine what needs to be done. It is a normal situation that parts of a collection or single objects are damaged. In several cases present conditions might cause further harm.

One of the most menacing enemies of the librarian is humidity along with the invasion of insects. Let me describe the situation of the Ohrid collection when we came there for the first time in 2007. All the manuscripts were squeezed into hermetic safe-like metal boxes, possibly for safety reasons. There was no air at all circulating in these boxes. We diagnosed beginnings of cultures of mould and fungi, always a horrifying phenomenon for conservators. The situation is aggravating, for the climate near the Ohrid Lake is always humid. But there are hopeful measurements on the way.

We were confronted with a similar situation in the Albanian State Archives in Tirana. There they reserved a new room for the manuscripts, but again without sufficient air circulation.

You may compare these places with the former situation in the Franciscan monastery here in Zadar. We are convinced that you can solve the humidity problem in a good way.

The seventh message: *creation of good storage situation is a prime concern.*

Conservation versus restoration

The question always arises: what shall we do with a damaged book? One cannot give a general answer. Each case has to be decided individually. Conservation is cheap in general, restoration is normally more expensive.
The eight message: *whatever you do, try to preserve any information that could be useful to understand the contents, the production or the use of the book.*
The ninth message: *whatever you do, it should be reversible.*

Preparing a manuscript for digitisation

In several cases it is immediately evident, that a manuscript cannot be digitised in the form it was found. That is particularly true of fragmented manuscripts and mutilated single folios. These objects have to be prepared for the process of digitisation, which is stressing the object anew. Another important preparatory step should not be skipped: cleaning the object. That is what your students have been doing during the last year in the Library of the Franciscan Fathers, under the auspices of Marijana Tomić and Father Tomislav.

Digitisation as an instrument for the conservator

Digitisation is a very useful instrument for conservators themselves. They have to record all measures they have taken. When doing so, conservators are able to create veritable databases about bindings, ink corroded papers and all other kinds of damage and non-damage phenomena which one can find in a manuscript.

Laboratories for book restoration

The situation concerning laboratories here and in the neighbouring regions is somewhat desperate. We saw so many places where there is no laboratory at all and some places where there exists a laboratory, but ... it lacks everything: materials, instruments, working technical devices. We cannot bridge this gap easily. Regarding the situation here in Zadar, we cannot imagine, that a central national laboratory (e.g. in Zagreb) is able to treat the huge amount of books, not to mention the books from Split and Dubrovnik and elsewhere. It seems to me absolutely necessary to enable collections to do what is to be done in their own locations. Thus, in the future subsidiarity should be the prevailing principle.

[In parentheses: All the laboratories I have visited (in Sofia, Yerevan, Plovdiv and Tirana) are headed by chemists. All the staff I saw there –the department for book restoration in the Matenadaran comprises 14 persons – are female. Is this a good message? No, it is not. All of them, at all the places mentioned are the worst paid.]

Of course, it is essential but not sufficient for the exigencies of this job to be a good chemist. The restorer has to acquire different additional skills, binding techniques in particular. It is important to study these techniques and the materials used for historical bindings, because the bookbinding is the immediate and organic protection of the book.

Scientific work

The catalogue – a scholarly task

I always admire former generations of scholars who were able to spend half of their life in libraries in order to elaborate the catalogues. And there is a number of descriptive catalogues of the highest scientific level. All the newly discovered, newly opened collections have to be made public. In many cases we just have inventory lists, providing only poor information, often not much more than the title and the shelf-mark.

An example:
In the University Library of Cluj one must distil the existence of the Armenian collection out of several hundreds of file cards written in a neat and fine hand of the late 19th century – in Hungarian language. Even for the archivist it is hard work to identify the objects. It still remains a prominent task to work on detailed manuscript descriptions.
Another message: *describing manuscripts is a scholarly task of prime importance.*

The reading behaviour

There seems to be a conflict here. Scientists nowadays normally are not interested in a library or in a collection as such. Usually they are not even interested in the book as a book. They are users of a library, readers of books, they want to study and compare texts, very often they are looking for illuminations – sometimes even ignoring text and context, they are working on decoration, on this and that. Repeatedly I could even see that scientists – the main users – were not aware of conservatory demands, e.g., they open a manuscript like a paperback of our days.

Text and picture are just two factors of the complex reality of a manuscript. And certainly, the codex in its digital form is a working instrument, extremely helpful, but it is the shadow of a book with a somehow reduced reality.
Another message: *let us re-appreciate the library as a library, the book as a book.*

The role of librarian or archivist

I conceive the librarian's role as some kind of facilitator, one who promotes things in the processes of creating access, in creating awareness for the complex reality of the book and the library, among the users and public. The librarian is not only the preserver of the objects of a depository. He/she is the key person in a library, who should develop projects, records and so on. He/she could invite colleagues and scientists to fill the manifold gaps which occur in libraries.
Another message: *the future librarian is a convinced networker.*

In the final section of this article I would like to stress some more scientific aspects since I am deeply convinced, they are worth to be dealt with. I do not speak about the editing of texts, the customary work of scholars working on or with manuscripts.

Research on manuscript fragments

To my knowledge, at present there is not even one institution worldwide dealing systematically with research of manuscript fragments. This is surprising in view of the large quantity of surviving fragments. At our University Library alone we have some 1,500 items. We find them mainly as part of the bookbinding and as fly-leafs.

What can we expect from this research work? First of all, we do not expect to find *the* one old text, the *Urtext* of anything, or the missing link in various textual traditions. No, dealing with fragments in a more systematic way helps us to virtually reconstruct the traces of a *hidden library,* a library that sank down hundreds of years ago. We have the dispersed remnants of it in our books. Thus we would learn more about the production of books and libraries in mediaeval days. We would learn more about the circulation of books and fragments.

In the beginnings of book printing the shelves of the libraries were emptied, many of the parchment volumes were cut into pieces and stripes. The material, parchment, was still useful. For the book-binders this waste-material was a lucrative object of commerce. We might put the question: what sort of books did they select to be destroyed and re-used? And there is a further advantage to study these mutilated objects: the amount of palaeographic material increases considerably.

Research on palimpsests

There is, of course, the very special case of palimpsests, re-written parchments. There was a European project on this subject, entitled "Rinascimento virtuale", directed by the Humburgian colleague Dieter Harlfinger. It concentrated on the Latin and Greek palimpsest manuscripts. This could be no more than a starting point.

In nearly all collections we may find complete codices, quires and single folios of this type. Some weeks ago, the young archivist of the Tirana National Archives, Sokol Cunga, discovered the palimpsest of several pages in a Greek manuscript, and I have already mentioned the palimpsest of Ohrid. There is another one in Sofia – already edited, another one in Plovdiv… So, what is the purpose of such studies?

Again, they give us access to a small semi-hidden library, having been thrown away centuries ago at a very early date. And again the question: why did they single out this or that book to be destroyed?

Research of watermarks

Several persons and institutions have been working on watermarks in the last decades. Watermarks allow us to trace the way of paper used for manuscripts and prints. Often they are the only hint for dating documents. What we need in this field is more cooperation and coordination. There are existing databases waiting to be fed. Our colleague David Shaw indicated the WILC website.

Research on binding techniques

Although we have the wonderful and comprehensive study on binding techniques done by Alexander Szirmai, our knowledge on these matters must be increased, for there are so many regional and even local practices and peculiarities. Knowing the historical binding techniques and the materials used is the condition *sine qua non* for good contemporary restoration.

Research of colophons

One of the most neglected objects of research is the colophon. Colophons are notices added by scribes at the end of texts. Eastern manuscripts abound with such *postscripts* in quantity and quality (length). They provide valuable information on the context of the emergence of a book. Although Western manuscripts normally do not have extensive colophons, they deserve to be studied systematically.

Research on bi- and trilingual manuscripts

A rather specific topic seems to be the study of bi- and even trilingual manuscripts. But there is not just a philological desire to promote such investigations. In all these Eastern and South-Eastern regions of Europe and beyond, we are confronted with multiculturalism. Let us try to exploit this aspect also: intersection and interference of cultures. In this area let me indicate a very special case: manuscripts of a certain language but written down in an inappropriate alphabet, e.g. Greek writing in Latin letters, or Slavic in Greek. In the last years we started collecting such resources.

Palaeographic repertoires

As there is a good number of mediaeval scriptoria already identified, let us focus on palaeographical concerns. What we are deeply yearning for are palaeographic repertories for nearly all scriptural traditions. Palaeography is a privileged means helping us to identify texts from which we ignore any context.

Final remark

What you are doing here at the Zadar University, in the monasteries, in the archives and libraries is wonderful. I would say this is a strong local initiative. What we further need are regional and national efforts. And even that will not be sufficient. Let us think big, let us approach a project of European size. We found already so many willing partners in all the countries I mentioned. And I am really glad, that the Zadar University is among them, with so many young colleagues working on various relevant topics.

Readings

Archivalia. Finding & consulting medieval manuscripts [cited 2010-03-02]. Available at: http://archiv.twoday.net/stories/5612324/

Creason, Stuart. Syriac Manuscript Project [cited 2010-03-02]. Available at: oi.uchicago.edu/pdf/06-07_Syriac.pdf

Forbes. Ancient manuscripts found in Egyptian monastery / Martin Bailey for The Art Newspaper [cited 2010-03-02]. Available at: http://www.forbes.com/2002/05/29/0529conn.html

Konserviranje knjig in papirja : zbornik razprav = Book and paper conservation : proceedings / Mednarodni simpozij Konserviranje knjig in papirja, ki je potekal v Ljubljani od 3. do 5. julija 1996 = International Symposium Book and paper conservation, Ljubljana, 3 – 5 July 1996 ; [urednici Jedert Vodopivec in Nataša Golob]. Ljubljana : Arhiv Republike Slovenije =

Archives of the Republic of Slovenia, 1997.

Szirmai, J. A. The archaeology of medieval bookbinding. Aldershot : Ashgate, 1999.

Biographical sketch

Prof. of Liturgical Science, Head of the VESTIGIA - Manuscript Research Centre at the Graz University. Main fields of studies: manuscripts of the Latin, Syriac and Armenian traditions. Special research interest: manuscript fragments.

U POTRAZI ZA NAŠOM PISANOM BAŠTINOM

IZAZOVI, PERSPEKTIVE, PITANJA

Sažetak

U radu se prikazuje stanje mnogih zbirki rukopisne građe u zemljama istočne i jugoistočne Europe. Temelji se na iskustvima rada u sljedećim mjestima i njihovim rukopisnim zbirkama: Jerevan (Armenija), Bukurešt i Kluž (Rumunjska), Sofija i Plovdiv (Bugarska), Ohrid (Makedonija), Tirana (Albanija) i Zadar (Hrvatska). Opisuje se postupak stvaranja pristupa pretežito nepoznatim zbirkama te pitanja digitalizacije, zaštite, katalogizacije i znanstvenog istraživanja te vrste građe.

Cilj ovoga rada je to da uputi u specifičnosti rukopisne baštine, stvori osjetljivost za potrebnu zaštitu te pridonese digitalizaciji rukopisa.

Ključne riječi: srednjovjekovni rukopisi, zaštita knjiga, digitalizacija

OLD BOOKS, BIBLIOGRAPHY AND ITS RESEARCH POSSIBILITIES

Jelena Lakuš
University of J. J.Strossmayer in Osijek, Faculty of Philosophy, Department of Information Sciences, Croatia

Abstract

All books are products of their time and circumstances, and as such they are rich in a mass of important documentary and historical information. Historical bibliographers, who take a broader view of the context in which a book is produced, are well aware of that. For that reason, they consider their task is to record not only traditionally considered "bibliographical" information, but also a series of other significant details – information on subscription lists, dedications, book advertisements, prices of books, signs of ownership, etc. In doing so, they emphasise the importance of bibliographies for the history of book, which is the primary objective of this paper too. The paper first discusses the role bibliographies played in ancient times. It furthermore shows the significance bibliographies have nowadays. Finally, it suggests the importance bibliographies have to those engaged in book history research, which is illustrated by the retrospective bibliography selected for that purpose. At the core of the interest are the research possibilities of bibliographies, the topic that still does not attract the necessary attention. The paper concludes that bibliographies are made to be in the service of their users and thus should be adjusted to their needs.

Keywords:
bibliography, old books, history of book, research possibilities

Introduction

In his article "Why Bibliography Matters" published in 2007 in *A Companion to the History of the Book*, T. H. Howard-Hill, the editor of Papers of the Bibliographical Society of America, raised some interesting questions.[1] Indeed, why bibliography matters? Why do

1 Howard-Hill, T. H. Why bibliography matters. // A companion to the history of book / edited by Simon Eliot and Jonathan Rose. Blackwell Publishing, 2007. Pp. 9-20.

bibliographers find it important to deal with millions of items that are issued year by year? Why do bibliographers find it important to record all books printed in the past? Who can benefit from bibliographies? How? If bibliography is to be more than a list of titles, what is its use? What is the contribution of bibliography to the history of book? In other words, what role should bibliography play in book history research? Following these questions, this paper will try to underline several important issues. It will first discuss the role bibliographies played in ancient times. Furthermore, it will show the significance bibliographies have nowadays. Finally, it will suggest the importance bibliographies have for those engaged in book history research. The paper will focus on retrospective bibliographies, those bibliographies that are restricted to materials published in the past, usually limited to a specific period of time.[2] In the core of the interest will be their research possibilities. This topic still does not attract necessary attention. Bibliographers and those dealing with the subject are often more oriented towards the principles of bibliographical descriptions. They are more interested in the genesis of bibliographic works, their structure or the criteria applied in the selection of the material.[3] At times they investigate and evaluate the main bibliographic achievements of meritorious bibliographers and all those contributing to the development of retrospective bibliography.[4] Occasionally they pay attention to cultural and historical significance of bibliographies, but they usually do not put the accent on their importance in the wide-ranging investigations of scholars with various academic backgrounds. For that reason, it is necessary to observe bibliographies not only as lists of bibliographical records

2 Reitz, M. Joan. ODLIS – Online dictionary for library and information science [cited: 2010-02-16]. Available at: http://lu.com/odlis/odlis_r.cfm

3 See for instance: Harni, Slavko. Građa za hrvatsku retrospektivnu bibliografiju knjiga 1835.-1940. : struktura, geneza i kulturno-povijesno značenje. // Vjesnik bibliotekara Hrvatske 47, 3-4(2004), 86-104 [cited: 2010-02-16]. Available at: http://www.hkdrustvo.hr/vbh/broj/85, and Harni, Slavko. Jugoslavizam i kriteriji hrvatske retrospektivne bibliografije : bibliografski prijepori iz 1955. godine. // Vjesnik bibliotekara Hrvatske 47, 3-4(2004), 57-85 [cited: 2010-02-16]. Available at: http://www.hkdrustvo.hr/vbh/broj/85. Only recently Slavko Harni has analysed bibliographies as sources for the history of book and cultural history in: Harni, Slavko. Bibliografski rad Ivana Franje Jukića i kraj kulturne povijesti : bibliografija kao izvor za povijest knjige i kulturna povijest. // Libellarium 1, 1(2008), 27-50 [cited: 2010-02-16]. Available at: http://hrcak.srce.hr/index.php?show=clanak&id_clanak_jezik=58364

4 Sečić, Dora. Doprinos Mate Ujevića razvoju hrvatske bibliografije. // Vjesnik bibliotekaraHrvatske 47, 3-4(2004), 15-24 [cited: 2010-02-16]. Available at: http://www.hkdrustvo.hr/vbh/broj/85

selected according to some criteria, but also as lists of books which are all products of their time and circumstances.[5]

Bibliographies in the service of censorship

Since ancient times, when the press was under control of ecclesiastical or state authorities, bibliographies were primarily used for the purpose of censorship. In other words, those in ecclesiastical or royal power drew up the lists of books for control of censorship. In such a way, they planned to control the reading habits of the masses. As it is known, the first list of books that were given such a role was the *Index auctorum et librorum prohibitorum* (afterwards known as the *Index librorum prohibitorum*), compiled by the Catholic authorities in the middle of the 16th century. That list of forbidden books was the first in a long succession of papal indexes, forty-two in all. The last one was published in 1948. In 1966 the Sacred Congregation for the Doctrine of the Faith decided to cease their publication. Their purpose was to guide censors in their decisions of which publications to permit and which to prohibit. They comprised records of all books that might threaten the accepted moral principles, religious and political authority.[6] Listing only forbidden books, those that were not allowed to be read or possessed, the *Index librorum prohibitorum* was fundamentally an anti-bibliography.[7]

5 In the course of the first half of the 20th century bibliography moved from enumerative and descriptive to analytical and critical or textual bibliography. Since then the „new bibliography" developed partly as an independent discipline, partly as an aid to literary criticism. Historical bibliography, which takes a broader view of the context in which a book is produced, in particular, printing, publishing and bookselling, lies at the basis of all these approaches. However, only recently its sphere of interest has spread from being largely a tool for text editors and rare book librarians to becoming a way of understanding how the book as a physical object can shed light on the creation, development, spread, and reception of human knowledge in all disciplines. On definitions of various kinds of bibliographies see: Harris, Neil. Analytical bibliography : an alternative prospectus [cited: 2010-02-16]. Available at: http://ihl.enssib.fr/siteihl.php?page=56&aflng=en. The text was written as part of the course entitled "Introduction à la bibliographie matérielle" taught at the Ecole de l'Institut d'histoire du livre in Lyon, 5-8 April 2004.

6 More on the *Index librorum prohibitorum* see for instance: Stipčević, Aleksandar. Povijest knjige. Zagreb : Matica hrvatska, 2006. Pp. 495-497.; Modern history sourcebook : Index librorum prohibitorum, 1557-1966 [cited: 2010-02-16]. Available at: http://www.fordham.edu/halsall/mod/indexlibrorum.html; Catholic encyclopedia : Index of prohibited books [cited: 2010-02-16]. Available at: http://www.newadvent.org/cathen/07721a.htm

7 Bibliografija. // Hrvatska enciklopedija. Svezak 2. Zagreb : Leksikografski zavod Miroslav Krleža, 2000. Pp. 101-103.; Bibliografija [cited: 2010-02-16]. Available at: http://dzs.ffzg.hr/text/bibliografija.htm

Unlike the *Index librorum prohibitorum*, the Jesuit Antonio Possevino's bibliography *Bibliotheca selecta,* published in the late 16th century (1593) included only books considered as good and allowed to be kept in the libraries.[8] Good books were mostly books of religious and spiritual provenance contributing to the spread of moral values. Basically, this bibliography counteracted the influence of Konrad Gesner's *Bibliotheca universalis* that was printed a few decades earlier (1545) and listed the writings of forbidden authors as well. Possevino's intention was to prevent both Catholics and Protestants from reading "bad" books and to provide selected information about "good" books only. "The work's purpose was to deliver overtly religious propaganda ... and [it] was intended to circulate internationally in place of Gesner's bibliography. Possevino's undertaking was not the result of a sudden decision; rather, it was fulfilment of his previous work carried out with uncommon missionary zeal."[9] Therefore, the purpose of this bibliography was to deliver religious propaganda and provide people with information on edifying and useful reading. Basically, it was written in close connection with the *Index librorum prohibitorum*, which it supplemented. Both bibliographies, the one containing books deemed as "appropriate" and the one containing forbidden books, were regarded as useful instruments of the ecclesiastical power and valuable means of promoting the idea of loyalty to the Catholic Church and adherence to accepted moral values.

On the basis of the two different concepts of the role bibliographies should have – the one advocated by Konrad Gesner (bibliography should provide free access to *all* the information including those on forbidden books as well), and the one advocated by Antonio Possevino (bibliography should be in the service of the Catholic Counter Reformation) – two models of understanding the role of libraries (and bibliographies too) in society were developed. The first one is immanent in democratic societies, while the latter one is typical of totalitar-

8 *Bibliotheca selecta* consists of two parts. The first part (books 1-11) outlines a comprehensive bibliography on theology, scholastic, catechismal and controversial, and incorporates works by some contemporary Jesuit missionaries. The second part (books 12-18) summarises the literature and bibliography for law, philosophy, medicine, architecture and geography, history, poetry and painting and rhetoric. It is a bibliography of the humanist culture of the Late Renaissance, both encyclopaedic and anti-heretical in its character.

9 Balsamo, Luigi. How to doctor a bibliography : Antonio Possevino's practice. // Church, censorship and culture in early modern Italy / edited by Gigliola Fragnito. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 2001. P. 51 [cited: 2010-02-16]. Partly available at: http://books.google.hr/books?id=nh4DG4AsTuUC&printsec=frontcover&source=gbs_v2_summary_r&cad=0#v=onepage&q=&f=false

ian societies.[10] This goes to show that the importance of bibliographies was recognised long ago in history.

Bibliographies as witnesses of national memory and collective memory of humankind

However, the role attached to bibliographies in the past is notably different from the role ascribed to bibliographies nowadays. Nowadays bibliographies record the published cultural heritage of a country following the idea of universal bibliographic control, the primary purpose of which is to develop a world-wide system for the control and exchange of bibliographic information, to emphasise the need for strengthening the national bibliographic control as a prerequisite for universal bibliographic control, and to recognise the importance of the national bibliography as a major instrument in ensuring a full record of the national published heritage as well as to achieve effective bibliographic control.[11] Indeed, the compilation of national bibliographies – current and retrospective – stems from the legal provisions (usually the legal deposit copy) and the unique role of the national bibliographic centres to permanently collect, preserve, protect process and make available its collection.[12] National bibliographies should supply an immediate overview of the national world of books. For that reason one may claim that bibliographers are the good housekeepers of the national world of books. Marcelle Beaudiquez[13] put it similarly – bibliographies are witnesses of national memory.[14] In other words, all national memory is based upon a national collection that needs a methodical inventory for public use. Bibliographies should reflect historical, cultural, political, economic and social picture of a country. They should reflect unique characteristics of a country, much as a mirror reflects the uniqueness

10 More on the subject see in: Stipčević, Aleksandar. Cenzura u knjižnicama. Zagreb : Zavod za informacijske studije Odsjeka za informacijske znanosti, Filozofski fakultet, 1992. Pp. 5-17.

11 The final recommendations of the International Conference on National Bibliographic Services, Copenhagen 25-27 November 1998 [cited: 2010-02-17]. Available at: http://archive.ifla.org/VI/3/icnbs/fina.htm

12 The national bibliographic centre in Croatia is the National and University Library in Zagreb. See: Croatian bibliographies [cited: 2010-02-16]. http://www.nsk.hr/bibliografije/index_en.html

13 Marcelle Beaudiquez was director of the French National Bibliographical Agency at the *Bibliothèque nationale de France* in Paris, and an Honorary Fellow of IFLA and Special Adviser to the IFLA Section on Bibliography.

14 Beaudiquez, Marcelle. National bibliography as witness of national memory. // IFLA journal 18, 2(1992), 119-123.

of an individual.[15] Shortly, bibliographies incorporate the collective memory of humankind. As Howard-Hill claims, civilization or nation without bibliographies would experience a kind of Alzheimer's disease.[16] Moreover, without books there is no history. However, he also points out another important matter: as much as without books there is no history, without bibliography there is no history of book.[17]

Bibliographies as the basic material for the history of book

With this statement we come to the key issue of this paper. Bibliographies, particularly retrospective bibliographies, are of paramount importance to scholars, predominantly to those dealing with the history of book. Michael Felix Suarez[18] goes even further claiming that all those engaged in book history research should receive bibliographical training. "It seems reasonable to propose that bibliographical literacy ought to be requisite to book history in the way that all physicians—whether surgeons, research immunologists, or epidemiologists—have studied human anatomy."[19] He furthermore reproaches scholars for inadequate education in bibliography or even complete ignorance of bibliographical rudiments.[20] On the other hand, Leslie Howsam,[21] for instance, does not suggest that every scholar should learn the methods and problematics of all three disciplines dealing with the studies of book – history, bibliography and literary theory. Rather, he should appeal for mutual respect.[22] "Historians have no copyright on the word "history," nor students of literature and ideas on "the text," nor scholars

15 Guidelines for national bibliographies in the electronic age : draft / edited by Maja Žumer. IFLA Working Group on Guidelines for National Bibliographies, 2008 [cited: 2010-02-17]. http://archive.ifla.org/VII/s12/guidelines-national-bibliographies-electronic-age.pdf

16 Howard-Hill, T. H. Op. cit., p. 11.

17 Ibid., p. 18.

18 Michael Felix Suarez is University Professor and Director of Rare Book School, a bibliographical institute based at the University of Virginia.

19 Suarez, Michael F. Historiographical problems and possibilities in book history and national histories of the book. // Studies in bibliography, vol 56. / edited by David L.Vander Meulen. Charlottesville : The University Press of Virginia, 2003-2004. P. 155.

20 Ibid.

21 Leslie Howsam is Professor at the University of Windsor and Founding Past President of the Canadian Association for the Study of Book Culture and President of the International Society for the History of Authorship, Reading and Publishing (SHARP).

22 Howsam, Leslie. Old books & new histories : an orientation to studies in book and print culture. Toronto; Buffalo; London : University of Toronto Press Incorporated, 2006. P. 26 [cited: 2010-02-17]. Partly available at: http://books.google.hr/books?id=yi2dTyIGA5cC&printsec=frontcover&dq=%22howsam%22%2B%22old+books%22&source=bl&ots=smdIUiuhTU&sig=VOI4z8NuagPALNAInGQnWjocWBs&hl=hr&ei=IIGeS4_mMYv9_AbDuLz7CQ&sa=X&oi=book_result&ct=result&resnum=2&ved=0CA4Q6AEwAQ#v=onepage&q=&f=false

of bibliography and library studies on "the book"."[23] For the bibliographer, however, the primary focus is on the document, or on the book as the physical object, and the social context in which it emerges often falls to the background.[24] Should it be like that?

The question was already opened in the 1980s when Donald Francis McKenzie,[25] "the greatest bibliographer of our time", as Robert Darnton[26] has described him, formulated bibliography as the discipline that investigates "the sociology of text." "...Bibliography is the discipline that studies texts as recorded forms, and the process of their transmission, including their production and reception."[27] According to McKenzie, "any history of book which excluded study of the social, economic, and political motivations of publishing, the reasons why texts were written and read as they were, why they were rewritten and redesigned, or allowed to die, would degenerate into feebly digressive and never rise to a readable history."[28] In short, McKenzie held that books should be studied from their social, political, economic and cultural aspects, a perception supported by book historians as well.

All in all, book historians would hardly conduct their researches without leaning on the foundation erected by historical bibliographers.[29] First of all, bibliographies supply an immediate overview of the world of books and serve book historians as collections of historical sources. As it has already been suggested, books (and their bibliographical descriptions) contain plenty historical and cultural information. They are documents of a certain period of time and witness not only their cultural but also political, social, and even economic circumstances. Furthermore, bibliographers support book history in exploring authorship, publishing and reading.[30] As it is known, bibliographical

23 Ibid., p. 28.
24 Ibid., p. 15.
25 McKenzie's main writings were on bibliography, the book trade, and the „sociology of texts". He became a driving force in the genesis and development of the new interdisciplinary field of book history. His refusal to recognise the traditional boundary between bibliography and literary history re-energised the study of the social, political, economic, and cultural aspects of book production and reception. A wide range of his writings were brought together and published in 2002 in a separate book "Making Meaning: "Printers of the Mind" and Other Essays", edited by Peter D. McDonald and Michael F. Suarez.
26 Robert Darnton is one of the foremost book historians in the world. Currently he is director of the Harvard University Library.
27 McKenzie, D. F. Bibliography and the sociology of texts. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 1966. P. 12.
28 Ibid., p. 13.
29 Howard-Hill, T. H. Op. cit., p. 11.
30 Ibid., p. 16.

records consist of the information on author of a book or of those who have intellectual responsibility for its content, the information on title of a book, edition, place of publication, name of a publisher, and date of publication. Many books, however, lack a lot of information that may allow a bibliographer to put them into their historical context precisely. For instance, some books lack title pages. In that case, there is no information sufficient to identify the work. Even if a title page exists, some information may be false, which appeared to be a common practice in the early period serving to escape the system of censorship. Furthermore, some books have no author on title page or lack a clear author statement. Also, a significant portion of books are published pseudonymously or anonymously. Some books do not supply the place of publication or do not give the name of a publisher or a printer, while some do not have information on the date of publication or the date is uncertain.[31] A bibliographer can have great difficulties in determining all lacking data. In order to make bibliographical descriptions as complete as possible, to find all the missing information and to place all books in their correct place in history, a bibliographer must consult numerous sources – biographical lexicons, encyclopaedias, old bibliographies, etc. For instance, the author of an anonymous or pseudonymous book can rarely be identified without other biographical or literary information. In addition, the date of publication can be identified by analysing the content of the book itself or type of letters, usually specific for each printing house. In short, a bibliographer must conduct an appropriate research. Occasionally, he can find works still unknown to the literary world which makes his investigation even more valuable.

What else is the contribution of bibliography to the history of book? For instance, the way bibliographical records are arranged can be of great importance to book historians. If they are listed chronologically according to the year of publication, a book historian can without difficulty make an analysis of the annual book production (its continuity or discontinuity, increase or decrease) in the period covered by the bibliography (Figure 1). Furthermore, different indexes can suggest a lot of research problems deserving to be discussed. For instance, if a bibliography has an index of subjects, that index can be of great help in identifying the most popular ones. Additionally, just a quick look at the index of authors can help to identify the most popular authors of the period (Figure 2). Clearly, bibliographies do not explain reasons of

31 Ibid., p. 12.

their popularity (the most read books, books that sold the best, books that attracted publishers' interest for various reasons, etc.), which is, after all, not their mission, but can only suggest the starting point of research to those interested in the matter. Those who wish to explore to what extent women were involved in the literary world can trace the topic in the index of authors too. Again, bibliographies cannot give us the whole picture of their involvement in the literary world, but can only facilitate identification of their names. Generally, bibliographies cannot provide answers to the research problems but can only be of assistance in identifying them. Therefore, not only bibliographical records, but also the mode of their organisation and different index (es) offered to users can be useful tools in investigation work of researchers.

However, bibliographies offer researchers even more. Apart from the basic facts of what was printed, by whom, where and when, there is also a great deal of other important information. Bibliographies can contain much more than traditionally considered "bibliographical" information. In that way they often enter into wider realms of history, culture, economics and textual transmission and reception.[32] It means that bibliographers can determine a mass of important details and documentary information about the development and composition of the work, author's relations with publishers and those who provided financial support, the publishing history of a work, etc. Bibliographers can also provide information on subscription lists, dedications, book advertisements, prices of books, signs of ownership, etc.; in short, everything considered worthy of recording. In doing so, they emphasise the importance of bibliographies for the history of book.

Let us take the example of subscription lists. Mass subscription appeared in the 17th century. It was a new form of collective funding that substituted the old Baroque feudal type of financing cultural goods based on the financial support coming from only one individual, that is, a patron. Subscription reached its heyday in the 18th century bringing about manifold changes in the way of communicating, the use of cultural production and its level of dispersion.[33] In the first half of the 19th century the subscription was an expression of willingness to support national ideas by subscribing to books written in vernacular language. Many authors of the age counted on the national awareness and patriotism of their potential readers, stating that those subscribing to

32 Ibid., p. 14.

33 Pavić, Milorad. Stalež i stil. // Naše teme 4-5, (1984), 698-699.

their works testify their love for the nation and its literature.[34] As a consequence, the expansion of the readership base came to be considered authors' (and editors') national duty and responsibility. Subscription lists usually contained subscribers' names, position on the social scale, occupation, place of residence, etc. (Figure 3). This information is of enormous importance to each book historian in identifying the character and extent of readership. For that reason, subscription lists are excellent sources for the history of reading.[35]

The use of subscription lists, however, requires some caution. Subscription lists often do not provide an accurate view of readership, which makes the reading public very hard to interpret. First of all, they normally cover only rather wealthy readers. All others who are willing to subscribe to a book (or a periodical) but cannot afford it have to find other channels of accessing the printed word. Reading societies and public libraries, even coffeehouses or barbers' shops – they all offered opportunities for collective use of the printed material. Therefore, from the 17th and 18th centuries the access to printed matter was not in the least limited to purchase and individual ownership. It is clear that every book that is read is not necessarily a book that is personally owned. In other words, one certainly does not read all the books he owns and reads many books that he never purchased. There was also, and still is, an extensive private circulation of books lent or borrowed among family members, friends or relatives. In such a way, the reading public of a personally owned book or periodical increases inevitably. In addition, the phenomenon of reading aloud, a common practice in the rural villages where the oral culture prevailed, undoubtedly increased the circle of readers. Furthermore, subscription lists sometimes left off the names of some subscribers and included others who functioned as patrons instead of as readers. In addition, sometimes snobbery and personal vanity were the key motives for subscription. Potential subscribers were probably attracted by promises that their names would appear either in the official news-

34 On the subject see: Lakuš, Jelena. Između govornog i pisanog jezika: višejezična slika dalmatinskog prostora prve polovice 19. stoljeća. // Vjesnik bibliotekara Hrvatske 48, 3-4 (2005), 102-103.

35 Obviously, for a more complete and accurate insight into the social structure of readership and its reading habits a historian should consult numerous other sources – private correspondence, diaries, wills, inventories, membership of reading societies and public libraries, etc. In addition, readers sometimes recorded their immediate responses in the margins of books. Such records can be enormously revealing as well.

paper or in the book itself. Besides, such categories of subscribers often considered books to be only valuable objects, bought and kept (and never touched) for the purpose of decoration, rather than for their original purpose - reading.[36] Therefore, the circle of readership turns into much larger (or smaller) entity than the subscription lists might suggest at the first sight. Nevertheless, in spite of these research limits, the available data can provide a close insight into the geography and stratification of readership.[37] For that reason, they are definitively worthy of recording.[38] This is a new approach that signals a shift "from questions of authorial intention and textual authority to those of dissemination and readership as matters of economic and political motive and of the interaction of text and society as an important source of cultural history."[39]

Book dedications habitually placed at the very beginning of a book, usually containing a tribute to someone in connection with the writing or publication of the book are also worthy of recording. (Figure 4). They are frequently expressions of gratitude for financial support, particularly up to the 18th century when writers tended to rely on patronage, producing mainly for their patrons.[40] Flattering acknowledgments were largely dedicated to the members of royal families who had for a long time been the most important patrons

36 Chartier, Roger. The cultural uses of print in early modern France. Princeton, N.J. : Princeton and New Jersey, 1987. P. 184.

37 For a very detailed account of subscribers to the periodical „Srbsko-dalmatinski magazin" (1836-1872) see: Prpa-Jovanović, Branka. Srbsko-dalmatinski magazin 1836-1848 : Preporodne ideje Srba u Dalmaciji. Split : Književni krug, 1988. Subscribers to the journals "Zora dalmatinska" (1844-1849) and "La Dalmazia" (1845-1847) have been analysed according to various parameters in chapter III. 2. "Identifying the Readership" of the doctoral thesis by Jelena Lakuš: Lakuš, Jelena. Books, society and culture : religious and political order in Dalmatia (1815-1850), Budapest : CEU, 2006. The possibilities of the use of the database of subscribers to the journal "La Dalmazia" have been demonstrated in: Lakuš, Jelena. Dalmatinsko novinstvo u ozračju nacionalnih kretanja prve polovice 19. stoljeća : primjer „Zore dalmatinske" (1844-1849). // Kraljski Dalmatin – 200 godina zadarskog i hrvatskog novinarstva u europskom kontekstu : zbornik radova sa znanstveno-stručnog skupa, Zadar, 12.-13. srpnja 2006. / glavni urednik Nada Zgrabljić Rotar. Zadar : Sveučilište, Odjel za informatologiju i komunikologiju, 2007. Pp. 23-39.

38 On the subject see also: Lakuš, Jelena. Izdavačka i tiskarska djelatnost na dalmatinskom prostoru (Zadar, Split i Dubrovnik) u prvoj polovici 19. stoljeća (1815-1850) : bibliografija monografskih i serijskih publikacija – građa. Split : Književni krug, Biblioteka znanstvenih djela, 2005. Pp. 13-14.

39 Howsam, L. Op. cit., p. 21.

40 From the 16th century onwards authors usually sent a few copies of their works to a great nobleman and patron of letters with a flattering dedication or laudatory verses, for which they anticipated reward in the form of remuneration.

of the arts,[41] to the ecclesiastical circles, mostly to the prelacy, who, belonging to a wealthy institution, were traditionally patrons of the arts,[42] and the nobility. However, in the course of the 18th and the early 19th centuries members of royal families ceased to be the most frequent patrons. Authors no longer stood in the shadow of a "mighty and powerful reader," that is, the patron, on whom they were dependent. New relationship between author and readers of his work developed. Writers became more concerned about general readership, gradually developing in their minds a concept of the reading public. As a corollary of that, a collective readership appeared as a new phenomenon. Various terms were used to indicate the collective readership – to those who read, to devoted readers, to devoted believers, to God-faithful readers, to reasonable readers, to the young people, to the educated, to the admirers of the (vernacular) language, to the entire nation, etc. These types of book dedications grew significantly in number in the late 18th and the early 19th century.

Book dedications can be of enormous help to each book historian dealing with the problems of authorship, readership, production of books, etc. For instance, a proportion of books dedicated to wealthy patrons suggest to what level patrons were still involved in the process of book publishing and kept writers in dependent position. Furthermore, the increasing number of dedications to the collective readership would probably suggest changing attitudes of both authors and publishers towards books and readers, and a growing interest in popularisation of reading and the written word in general. Furthermore, books dedicated to admirers of the vernacular language or to the entire nation should be definitively understood in the context of the general growth of national awareness. Additionally, a proportion of women recorded in book dedications could suggest a level

41 For instance, the panegyric poetry, very popular in the 18th and 19th centuries, was to a large extent devoted to the Emperor and members of the royal (Habsburg) family on the occasion of their birthdays, arrivals to a town, etc. Reasons for that and the problem in total are to be discussed in the article "Hrvatska pisana baština kao povijesni izvor: prigodničarska poezija i Austrijsko Carstvo u I. pol. 19. st. u Dalmaciji" which is prepared for publication.

42 See for instance: Bogišić, Rafo. Književne posvete hrvatskih autora zagrebačkim biskupima (XVI.-XVIII. stoljeće). // Zagrebačka biskupija i Zagreb : 1094. – 1994. : zbornik u čast kardinala Franje Kuharića / glavni i odgovorni urednik Antun Škvorčević. Zagreb : Nadbiskupija zagrebačka, 1995. Pp. 359-371.; Bogišić, Rafo. Posvete i predgovori u hrvatskih pisaca 18. stoljeća. // Hrvatska književnost 18. stoljeća / uredništvo Nikola Batušić [et. al.]. Split : Književni krug, 1995. Pp. 5-29.

of their participation in the literary world.[43] Similarly, a proportion of members of the middle social strata could suggest not only a level of their participation in reading culture, but also in the overall cultural, social and even political life.

Furthermore, book advertisements were occasionally found in books and newspapers. They were for the most part included in the sections covering cultural matters, notices or daily news. Addressed to readership, they were usually used by authors (and publishers as well) to promote their works or to seek subscribers and their financial support. They were also used to announce new books arriving to bookshops. Information included in the advertisements was: title, author's name, publisher, name of the bookseller, price, sometimes even a short summary. As such, they have large documentary value. However, their cultural-historical significance is equally important. For instance, book advertisements show what importance was given to books and reading. Additionally, they testify to the one of the ways books reached their readership. All in all, "book advertisements were evidence of the position of books in relation to other aspects of culture and society, of the approach to their promotion and, finally, of the importance of book promotion."[44] As such, they are of enormous importance to historians.

A bibliographer may book find prices worthy of recording as well. "To help understand and trace the possible effects of reading on mentalities, we need to trace historic reading. To trace readership, we need to trace access. To trace access, we need to trace price."[45] Book price was often a crucial factor in making a decision whether to buy (or subscribe to) a book or not. If a book can be bought at a low price, it can certainly be affordable to broader segments of population. If a book was expensive, it would have reached much narrow reading circles. However, the final parts of the series of statements outlined above suggest that the problem is even more complex. "To trace price, we need to trace intellectual property, and to trace intellectual property, we need to trace the changing relationship property, we need to trace the changing relation-

43 See for instance: Stojan, Slavica. Posvete knjiga Dubrovkinjama. // Dubrovački horizonti: [časopis Društva Dubrovčana i prijatelja dubrovačke starine u Zagrebu] 32, 41(2001), 40-47; Bogišić, Rafo. Čitajući posvete i predgovore u knjigama Bartola Kašića. // Dubrovnik 4, 3(1993), 147-169.

44 Krtalić, Maja. Knjižarski oglasi u osječkim novinama 19. stoljeća. // Libellarium 1, 1(2008), 75.

45 Howsam, L. Op. cit., p. 23.

ship between the book industry and the state."[46] Without elaborating these statements into great detail, we may conclude that book prices can certainly be of help in identifying potential reading public, and even much more than that.[47]

However, not only subscription lists and book prices, but also data on book ownership facilitate researchers' efforts to identify the extent and character of readership. For that reason, recording the bookplate, a label usually placed on the inside of the front cover of a book, is extremely helpful. Bookplates were placed in books to declare ownership since the 15th century, i.e. approximately since the invention of printing.[48] Therefore, they are important evidence of the provenance of books. From the very beginning of their history, they were reserved mostly for the well-to-do upper social circles who wished to mark the ownership of their books. To possess books marked by family coat of arms with the name (or initials) of the owner or by some other illustration or words was often an expression of prestige (although it served to protect books from book thieves too). However, bookplates provided not only evidence of ownership but also indications as to the owner's personality (book owner's interests, hobbies, job, place of birth, date of birth, images of homes, library interiors, etc.). They also provide an appeal to the conscience of borrowers (a motto or a curse against book thieves were provided at times). In short, bookplates are a suitable way for the book's owner to be identified. In other words, "a fascinating insight into what lies beyond the image and the name contained in a bookplate" is provided.[49] However, bookplates are also masterpieces of miniature art. For that reason they could be interesting not only to book historians but also to art historians and those dealing with graphic design.[50]

46 Ibid.

47 Book prices are also the subject of interest of Aleksandar Stipčević in his three-volume work on social history of book among the Croats. See: Stipčević, Aleksandar. Socijalna povijest knjige u Hrvata, Knjiga I. Srednji vijek. Zagreb : Školska knjiga, 2004. Pp. 179-184; Stipčević, Aleksandar. Socijalna povijest knjige u Hrvata, Knjiga II. Od glagoljskog prvotiska (1483) do hrvatskoga narodnog preporoda (1835). Zagreb : Školska knjiga, 2005. Pp. 117-132.; Stipčević, Aleksandar. Socijalna povijest knjige u Hrvata, Knjiga III. Od početaka hrvatskog narodnog preporoda (1835.) do danas. Zagreb : Školska knjiga, 2008. Pp. 131-140.

48 However, the earliest recorded bookplates date already from around 1400 BC. These were small Egyptian enameled tablets which were affixed to papyri. They belonged to the library of Pharaoh Amenophis III. The world of ex-libris : a historical perspective [cited: 2010-03-10]. Available at: http://karaart.com/prints/ex-libris/index.html

49 The world of ex-libris [cited: 2010-02-17]. Available at: http://www.yurope.com/art/ex-libris/3.html

50 On bookplates in Croatia see: Bratulić, Josip. Hrvatski ex-libris : prilog povijesti hrvatskih knjižnica. Zagreb : Ex libris, 2007.

Furthermore, old books often contained marks of official approval or disapproval, usually placed at the beginning or at the end of the book. Censors were empowered to place works within one of several classifications. The first one is the category *admittitur* meaning that such works contained nothing to be censored. The second category – *transeat* – was for works which were tolerated and permitted for sale but were not allowed to be advertised or publicly displayed in bookshops because they contained material deemed offensive. Category *erga schedam* was for works which were considered to contain more evil content than good or useful. However, this category of works could be issued with special permit to individual readers known to be of good reputation or holding high offices. *Damnatur* was reserved for works that undermined religion, teaching on faith and morals or state.[51] Information on official approval or disapproval testifies to the faith books had throughout history.

All these examples serve to illustrate to what extent bibliographies provide the basic material for the history of book, the fact also supported by the meaning of the word "bibliography" itself. In English and Italian languages, for instance, bibliography means not only the list of books, but also the study of the history of book and their production, history of libraries and bookstores, literary aspects of books, information on their authors; in short, all that pertains to books and literary world in general.[52] In view of all this, there is a recent tendency to encourage a movement from the concept of bibliography as the study of books as material objects to the history of book in society, that is, "to what their production, dissemination, and reception reveal about past human life and thought".[53] Thus, serving as collections of historical sources, bibliographies offer an enormously vast area for scientific research. For that reason a dialogue between bibliographers and researchers of various kinds, particularly book historians, is required. They direct their approaches to the book in history, but in different ways. Or, as Michael F. Suarez put it, "the rigorous and creative application of bibliographical knowledge to book history research is, in my view, the single most important *desidera-*

51 Manuscripts were classified into similar categories. *Admittitur* and *permittitur* were for works that gained an official approval. *Toleratur* was for works that were allowed to be published but not advertised. These were held suitable only for cultivated readers, readers of good reputation. *Non admittitur* was for manuscripts considered dangerous, etc.

52 Logar, Janez. Uvod u bibliografiju : teorijski osnovi bibliografije, istorija bibliografije, pregled bibliografija, bibliografija u Jugoslaviji. Sarajevo : Svjetlost, 1973. Pp. 12-13.

53 Howard-Hill, T. H. Op. cit., p. 18.

tum for book history today."[54] McKenzie had already stated that "it is the bibliographer's job to show editors (and historians) how rich an account of human behaviour the physical elements of a book may yield to those who *can* read all its signs and so recreate the historical dynamics of its making and reading."[55] All in all, book historians and other scholars can largely benefit from bibliographies. They should only learn how to use them and "read" bibliographical records, that is, how to look behind them and read between the lines.

Bibliography in practice

How does it work in practice? As it was already mentioned, the way bibliographical records are listed can be of huge significance to book historians. If they are arranged chronologically according to the year of publication, a book historian can without difficulty make an analysis of the annual book production (its continuity or discontinuity, increase or decrease) in the period covered by bibliography. The bibliography that covers the period from 1815 to 1850 and encompasses books published in Dalmatia of the time will serve as an illustration.[56] Since its bibliographical records are arranged chronologically, it is relatively easy to show the continuity and discontinuity of the annual book production. At the time book production was estimated to range from about 10 to 30 titles per year, reaching 39 titles (Chart 1) only once (in 1838).

Compared with other European countries, Dalmatia was far behind as regards its annual book production. For instance, although at the time of Peter the Great the yearly output in Moscow was about six to seven titles, between 1711 and 1727, the average number of titles rose to 45, reaching 500 titles by the year 1790,[57] significantly outnumbering the annual book production in Dalmatia. Western European countries witnessed an even greater annual production. Towards the end of the 18th century, somewhere between two and five million books a year were printed in Germany alone.[58] The number of books published each year in England during the period 1800 to 1870 was expressed in thousands,

54 Suarez, M. Op. cit., p. 56.

55 Howsam, L. Op. cit., pp. 20-21.

56 Lakuš, Jelena. Izdavačka i tiskarska djelatnost na dalmatinskom prostoru (Zadar, Split i Dubrovnik) u prvoj polovici 19. stoljeća (1815-1850) : bibliografija monografskih i serijskih publikacija – građa. Split : Književni krug, Biblioteka znanstvenih djela, 2005.

57 Houston, R. A. Literacy in early modern Europe : culture and education 1500-1800. London; New York : Longman, 1988. P. 157.

58 Ibid.

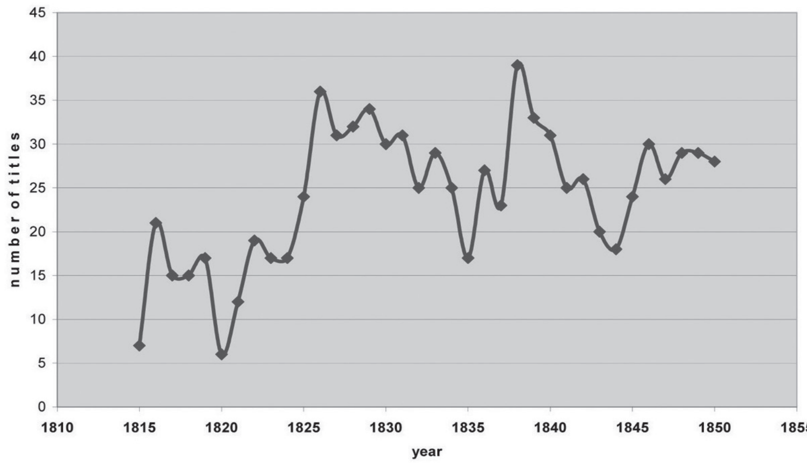


Chart 1.
Annual Book Production in Dalmatia (1815-1850)

and it even reveals an impressive upward curve towards the mid-1850s, ranging from around 2,000 titles in 1800 to more than 8,000 titles in the 1850s.[59] Dalmatia did not reach that number even throughout the 35 year period from 1815 to 1850, producing only around 1,000 titles. Therefore, it can be concluded that in most of Western and Central Europe book production began to grow significantly towards the end of the 18th century, maintaining this tendency in the 19th century as well, while in Dalmatia and probably in most of Eastern and South-Eastern Europe book production was still quite restricted. The chart suggests that it was particularly restricted in the early 1820s. Strict censorship imposed by the authorities, frightened by the danger of the Carbonari movement, very influential at the time in the Apennine peninsula, obviously affected book production as well.[60] Having experienced a general decline in the early 1820s, book production grew significantly in 1826 (the year in which "Osman" by Ivan Gundulić was published for the first time), reaching the greatest increase in the 1830s and 1840s (accompanied by the general increase in vernacular output). What is

59 Secord, A. James. Victorian sensation : the extraordinary publication, reception, and secret authorship of vestiges of the natural history of creation. Chicago; London : University of Chicago Press, 2000. P. 31.

60 On the Carbonari movement see: Obad, Stijepo. O karbonarima u Dalmaciji. // Zadarska revija 1(1975), 96-99.; Obad, Stijepo. Razvoj slobodoumlja u gradskom društvu Dalmacije od prosvjetiteljstva do pojave ilirizma. // Radovi Zadar, Razdio povijesnih znanosti 11(1984/85), 149-158.

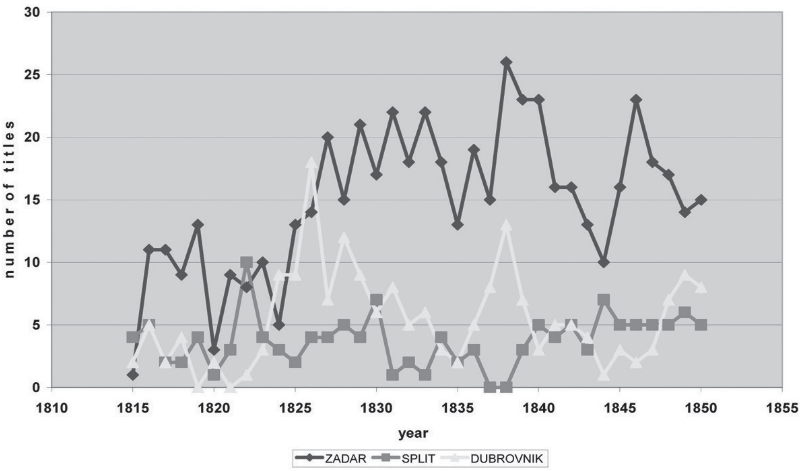


Chart 2.
Annual Book Production in Zadar, Split and Dubrovnik (1815-1850)

important for our topic is the fact that these results, naturally, compared with those found in the literature, could have been achieved because of chronologically organised bibliographical records. Evidently, bibliography does not explain reasons for such changes in book production throughout the entire period. What bibliography can do is to help in tracing the problem.

Furthermore, the bibliography is divided into three parts according to each printing and publishing centre (Zadar, Split and Dubrovnik). Such an organisation of bibliographical records offers the possibility to make an analysis of the annual book production for each printing and publishing town (Chart 2). The annual book production in all three cities demonstrated similar tendency. However, book production in Zadar, which was the administrative and political centre of the region and where printing houses were for the great period of time in the service of the official authorities, was considerably greater than that one in Split or Dubrovnik, where during most of the period the production levels ranged from 1 to 5 titles in Split and 5 to 10 titles in Dubrovnik. If the bibliography was not organised in that way, such an analysis would be more difficult to conduct. Again, bibliography does not explain reasons for such variances in the level of book production among the three publishing centres but only offers an idea for further research.

Conclusion

Therefore, the historical bibliography, which takes a broader view of the context in which a book is produced, in particular printing, publishing and bookselling, is very much needed. Historical bibliography means that we should include here "all biographical and historical studies of printers, papermakers, binders, type founders, engravers, publishers, booksellers, and anyone else in any way concerned with the materials and the production of book and its subsequent dissemination. It also includes studies of costs and prices, methods of sale and distribution; studies of the meaning of imprints, colophons, copyright entries, and of advertisements, investigation into the circumstances of literary composition which have any relation to the physical form of the literary work, the transmission of literary documents, and the relation of authors to the commercial process of publication, etc."[61] In other words, bibliographies should enter a new era of historical contextualisation. As such, they will be of the greatest use to a number of various scholars. And finally, bibliographies are here to be in the service of their users and thus should be adjusted to their needs.

References

Balsamo, Luigi. How to doctor a bibliography : Antonio Possevino's practice. // Church, censorship and culture in early modern Italy / edited by Gigliola Fragnito. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 2001. Pp. 57-78. Partly available in: http://books.google.hr/books?id=nh4DG4AsTuUC&printsec=frontcover&source=gbs_v2_summary_r&cad=0#v=onepage&q=&f=false [cited: 2010-02-17].

Beaudiquez, Marcelle. National bibliography as witness of national memory. // IFLA Journal 18, 2(1992), 119-123.

Bibliografija. // Hrvatska enciklopedija : svezak 2. Zagreb : Leksikografski zavod Miroslav Krleža, 2000. Pp. 101-103 [cited: 2010-02-16]. Available at: http://dzs.ffzg.hr/text/bibliografija.htm

Bratulić, Josip. Hrvatski ex-libris : prilog povijesti hrvatskih knjižnica. Zagreb : Ex libris, 2007.

Catholic encyclopedia : index of prohibited books [cited: 2010-02-16]. Available at: http://www.newadvent.org/cathen/07721a.htm

Chartier, Roger. The cultural uses of print in early modern France. Princeton N.J. : Princeton and New Jersey, 1987.

Croatian bibliographies [cited: 2010-02-16]. Available at: http://www.nsk.hr/bibliografije/index_en.html

61 Harris, N. Op. cit., p. 40.

The final recommendations of the International Conference on National Bibliographic Services, Copenhagen 25-27 November 1998 [cited: 2010-03-10]. Available at: http://archive.ifla.org/VI/3/icnbs/fina.htm

Guidelines for national bibliographies in the electronic age : draft / edited by Maja Žumer, IFLA Working Group on Guidelines for National Bibliographies, 2008 [cited: 2010-02-17]. Available at: http://archive.ifla.org/VII/s12/guidelines-national-bibliographies-electronic-age.pdf

Harni, Slavko. Bibliografski rad Ivana Franje Jukića i kraj kulturne povijesti : bibliografija kao izvor za povijest knjige i kulturna povijest. // Libellarium 1, 1(2008), 27-50 [cited: 2010-02-16]. Available at: http://hrcak.srce.hr/index.php?show=clanak&id_clanak_jezik=58364

Harni, Slavko. Građa za hrvatsku retrospektivnu bibliografiju knjiga 1835-1940: struktura, geneza i kulturno-povijesno značenje. // Vjesnik bibliotekara Hrvatske 47, 3-4(2004), 86-104 [cited: 2010-02-16]. Available at: http://www.hkdrustvo.hr/vbh/broj/85

Harni, Slavko. Jugoslavizam i kriteriji hrvatske retrospektivne bibliografije: bibliografski prijepori iz 1955. godine. // Vjesnik bibliotekara Hrvatske 47, 3-4(2004), 57-85 [cited: 2010-02-16]. Available at: http://www.hkdrustvo.hr/vbh/broj/85

Houston, R. A. Literacy in early modern Europe : culture and education 1500-1800. London; New York : Longman, 1988.

Howard-Hill, T. H. Why bibliography matters. // A companion to the history of book / edited by Simon Eliot and Jonathan Rose. Blackwell Publishing, 2007. Pp. 9-20.

Howsam, Leslie. Old books & new histories : an orientation to studies in book and print culture. Toronto; Buffalo; London : University of Toronto Press Incorporated, 2006 [cited: 2010-02-16]. Partly available at: http://books.google.hr/books?id=yi2dTyIGA5cC&printsec=frontcover&dq=%22howsam%22%2B%22old+books%22&source=bl&ots=smdIUiuhTU&sig=VOI4z8NuagPALNAInGQnWjocWBs&hl=hr&ei=IIGeS4_mMYv9_AbDuLz7CQ&sa=X&oi=book_result&ct=result&resnum=2&ved=0CA4Q6AEwAQ#v=onepage&q=&f=false

Krtalić, Maja. Knjižarski oglasi u osječkim novinama 19. stoljeća. // Libellarium 1, 1(2008), 75-92.

Lakuš, Jelena. Books, society and culture : religious and political order in Dalmatia (1815-1850). Budapest : CEU, 2006. (Doctoral dissertation)

Lakuš, Jelena. Dalmatinsko novinstvo u ozračju nacionalnih kretanja prve polovice 19. stoljeća : primjer „Zore dalmatinske" (1844-1849). // Kraljski Dalmatin – 200 godina zadarskog i hrvatskog novinarstva u europskom kontekstu : zbornik radova sa znanstveno-stručnog skupa, Zadar, 12.-13. srpnja 2006. / glavni urednik Nada Zgrabljić Rotar. Zadar : Sveučilište, Odjel za informatologiju i komunikologiju, 2007. Pp. 23-39.

Lakuš, Jelena. Izdavačka i tiskarska djelatnost na dalmatinskom prostoru (Zadar, Split i Dubrovnik) u prvoj polovici 19. stoljeća (1815-1850) : bibliografija monografskih i serijskih publikacija – građa. Split : Književni krug, Biblioteka znanstvenih djela, 2005.

Lakuš, Jelena. Između govornog i pisanog jezika: višejezična slika dalmatinskog prostora prve polovice 19. stoljeća. // Vjesnik bibliotekara Hrvatske 48, 3-4(2005), 84-107.

Logar, Janez. Uvod u bibliografiju : teorijski osnovi bibliografije, istorija bibliografije, pregled bibliografija, bibliografija u Jugoslaviji. Sarajevo : Svjetlost, 1973.

McKenzie, D. F. Bibliography and the sociology of texts. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 1966.

Modern history sourcebook : index librorum prohibitorum, 1557-1966 [cited: 2010-02-16]. Partly available at: http://www.fordham.edu/halsall/mod/indexlibrorum.html

Obad, Stijepo. O karbonarima u Dalmaciji. // Zadarska revija 1(1975), 96-99.

Obad, Stijepo. Razvoj slobodoumlja u gradskom društvu Dalmacije od prosvjetiteljstva do pojave ilirizma. // Radovi Zadar, Razdio povijesnih znanosti 11(1984/85), 149-158.

Pavić, Milorad. Stalež i stil. // Naše teme 4-5(1984), 698-706.

Prpa-Jovanović, Branka. Srbsko-dalmatinski magazin 1836-1848 : Preporodne ideje Srba u Dalmaciji. Split : Književni krug, 1988.

Reitz, M. Joan. ODLIS – Online dictionary for library and information science [cited: 2010-02-16]. Available at: http://lu.com/odlis/odlis_r.cfm

Secord, A. James. Victorian sensation : the extraordinary publication, reception, and secret authorship of vestiges of the natural history of creation. Chicago; London : University of Chicago Press, 2000.

Stipčević, Aleksandar. Povijest knjige. Zagreb : Matica hrvatska, 2006.

Stipčević, Aleksandar. Cenzura u knjižnicama. Zagreb : Zavod za informacijske studije Odsjeka za informacijske znanosti, Filozofski fakultet, 1992.

Stipčević, Aleksandar. Socijalna povijest knjige u Hrvata, Knjiga I. Srednji vijek. Zagreb : Školska knjiga, 2004.

Stipčević, Aleksandar. Socijalna povijest knjige u Hrvata, Knjiga II. Od glagoljskog prvotiska (1483) do hrvatskoga narodnog preporoda (1835). Zagreb : Školska knjiga, 2005.

Stipčević, Aleksandar. Socijalna povijest knjige u Hrvata, Knjiga III. Od početaka hrvatskog narodnog preporoda (1835.) do danas. Zagreb : Školska knjiga, 2008.

Sečić, Dora. Doprinos Mate Ujevića razvoju hrvatske bibliografije. // Vjesnik bibliotekara Hrvatske 47, 3-4(2004), 15-24 [cited: 2010-02-16]. Available at: http://www.hkdrustvo.hr/vbh/broj/85

Suarez, Michael F. Historiographical problems and possibilities in book history and national histories of the book. // Studies in bibliography, vol. 56 / edited by. David L. Vander Meulen. Charlottesville : The University Press of Virginia, 2003-2004. Pp. 141-170.

The world of ex-libris [cited: 2010-03-10]. Available at: http://www.yurope.com/art/exlibris/3.html

The world of ex-libris : a historical perspective [cited: 2010-03-10]. Available at: http://karaart.com/prints/ex-libris/index.html

Appendices

IMENA

GOSPODE PRIDBROJNIKAH.

BORDINI FILIP, prisvětli i pripoštovani biskup, u Faru.
Abramović Ivan, župnik, u Risanu.
Alačević Josip, u Zadru.
Alibranti Andria, u Zadru.
Arnaud Antun, učitelj, u Kotoru.
Avoškani Juro, bogoslovac, u Zadru.
Babukić Vekoslav advokat i tajnik družtva narodne čitaonice u Zagrebu, profesor jezika i književnosti slavonsko hàrvatske. 2 kom.
Bačić Petar, sveštenik, na Korčuli.
Balović Kristoforo, M. oblastnik, u Perastu.
Barić Fortunat, posědnik, u Perastu.
Bašić Visko, pisar tergovački, u Perastu.
Belamarić Ivan, bogoslovac, u Zadru.
Berčić Antun, u Zadru.
Berčić Ivan, sveštenik, u Zadru.
Berlić Injacio Al., u Brodu za 5 kom.
Bevilaqua Ivan, bogoslovac, u Zadru.
Bianki Dragutin Lav, sveštenik, u Zadru.
Biankini Dominik, bogočasni otac, u Dubrovniku.
Bilić Nikula, u Zadru.
Bojanić Anjel, bogočasni otac u Dubrovniku.
Bonmarčić Ljudevit, sveštenik, u Zadru, 2 kom.
Božanić Petar, bogoslovac, u Zadru.
Bošković Josip, sveštenik, u Korčuli.
Boteri Jakov, djak u Staromu gradu.
Baiglević Janko, pravdopravnik i prisědnik, u Zagrebu.
Bujas Simun, u Tisnu.
Bulić Ivan, župnik, u Rogoznici kod Šibenika.
Buljeta Stipan, bogoslovac, u Zadru.
Bunjevac Josip, podžupan sl. varmedje Zagrebačke.
Bunjevac Janko, veliki sudac sl. varmedje Zagrebačke.

Figure 1.
An example of subscription list
Hektorović, Petar. Ribanje i ribarsko prigovaranje i razlike stvari složene po Petru Hektoroviću Starogradjaninu ; izdao S. Ljubić. U Zadru : bratja Battara Tiskari Izdatelji, 1846.

Katalinić, Ivan; Cattalinich, Giovanni
Zadar: 330, 712
Split: 135
Katičić, Petar; Catticich, Pietro
Dubrovnik: 7
Kazali, P. A.; Casali, P. A.
Zadar: 417, 716, 722
Dubrovnik: 182, 197
Kaznačić, Antun; Casnacich, Antonio
Zadar: 474, 680, 688, 708, 718, 747
Dubrovnik: 26, 53, 72, 83, 114, 141, 148, 150, 153, 162, 167, 170, 190, 195, 221, 228, 231, 232, 233, 240, 258
Kaznačić, Ivan August; Casnacich, Giovanni Augusto
Zadar: 370, 616
Dubrovnik: 112, 124, 163, 182, 240
Kažotić, Franjo; Casotti, Francesco
Split: 213
Kažotić, Marko; Casotti, Marco
Zadar: 276, 284, 293, 309, 485, 489
Dodatak: 9
Klement VII, papa
Dubrovnik: 15
Knežević, Petar
Split: 169
Dubrovnik: 87
Koić, Josip; Coich, Giuseppe
Split: 10
Koić, Simon; Coich, Simone
Dubrovnik: 7
Kopàtsi, Josepho
Zadar: 409
Kozulić, Dominik; Cosulich, Dominicus
Zadar: 164
Kreglianovich Albinioni, Giovanni. – Vidi: Kreljanović Albinioni, Ivan
Kreljanović Albinioni, Ivan; Kreglianovich Albinioni, Giovanni
Zadar: 32
Dodatak: 31
Kricnka, J. C.
Dubrovnik: 195
Kritska, Josephus
Dubrovnik: 190
Krša, Antun; Chersa, Antonio
Zadar: 198
Dubrovnik: 1, 16, 23, 27, 29, 36, 37, 40, 45, 52, 53, 59, 62, 68, 80, 84, 100, 114, 120, 139, 141, 150
Krša, Marija; Chersa, Marija
Dubrovnik: 45
Krša, Tomo; Chersa, Tommaso
Zadar: 198
Dubrovnik: 1, 16, 27, 34, 37, 45, 48, 52, 53, 57, 59, 64, 70
Kukuljević Sakcinski, Ivan
Zadar: 728
Kunić, Rajmondo; Cunich, Rajmondo
Dubrovnik: 182
Kunjašić, Franjo
Zadar: 556
Kurtović, Mate
Zadar: 596
Kuzmanić, Ante
Zadar: 587, 716, 737
Kuzmić, Ivan; Cusmich, Giovanni Evang.
Dubrovnik: 72, 117, 120

L

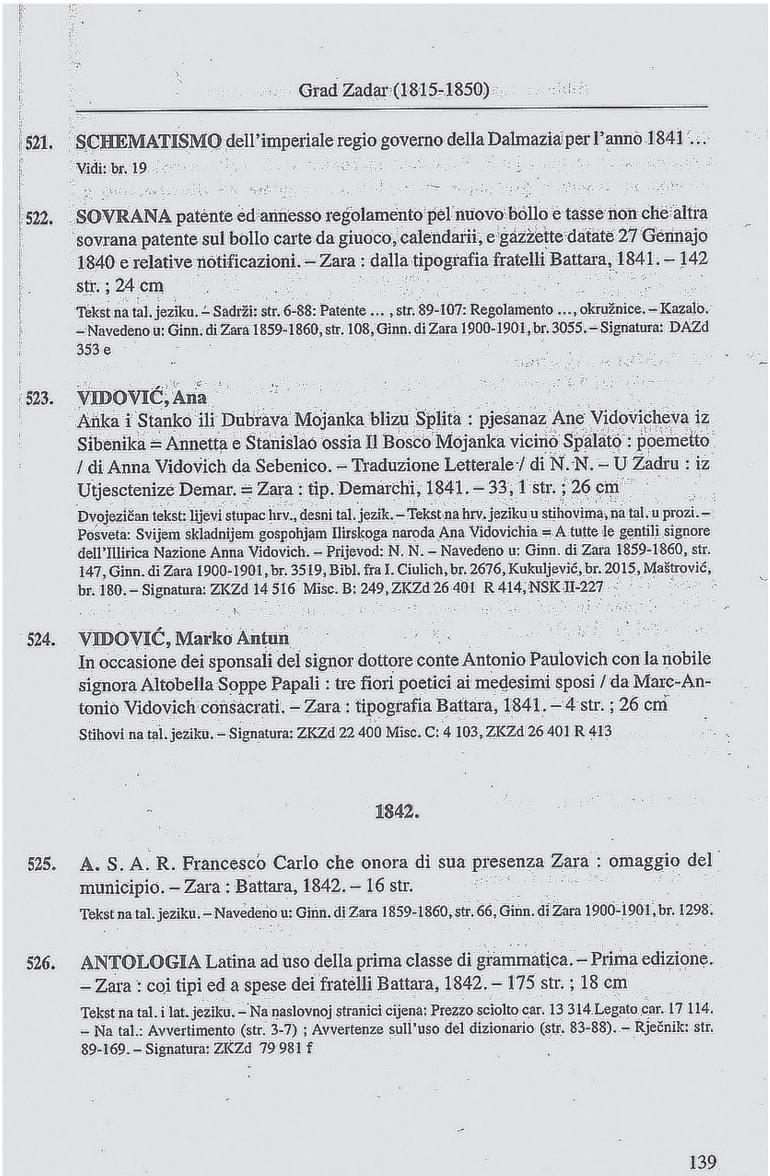
Laborovich, Antonio. – Vidi: Laborović, Antun
Laborović, Antun; Laborovich, Antonio
Dodatak: 9
Lagarde, savjetnik
Zadar: 336, 357, 462
Lamartine, Alphonse Marie de
Split: 170
Dubrovnik: 240
Lamperini, Giuseppe
Split: 10
Lampredi, Urbano
Dubrovnik: 50, 52, 55, 56, 57, 59, 62, 70

316

Figure 2.

A page of bibliographical records arranged chronologically

Lakuš, Jelena. Izdavačka i tiskarska djelatnost na dalmatinskom prostoru (Zadar, Split i Dubrovnik) u prvoj polovici 19. stoljeća (1815-1850) : bibliografija monografskih i serijskih publikacija – građa. Split : Književni krug, Biblioteka znanstvenih djela, 2005. P. 139.



Grad Zadar (1815-1850)

521. **SCHEMATISMO** dell'imperiale regio governo della Dalmazia per l'anno 1841 ...
Vidi: br. 19

522. **SOVRANA** patente ed annesso regolamento pel nuovo bollo e tasse non che altra sovrana patente sul bollo carte da giuoco, calendarii, e gazzette datate 27 Gennajo 1840 e relative notificazioni. – Zara : dalla tipografia fratelli Battara, 1841. – 142 str. ; 24 cm
Tekst na tal. jeziku. – Sadrži: str. 6-88: Patente ..., str. 89-107: Regolamento ..., okružnice. – Kazalo. – Navedeno u: Ginn. di Zara 1859-1860, str. 108, Ginn. di Zara 1900-1901, br. 3055. – Signatura: DAZd 353 e

523. **VIDOVIĆ, Ana**
Anka i Stanko ili Dubrava Mojanka blizu Splita : pjesanaz Ane Vidovicheva iz Sibenika = Annetta e Stanislao ossia Il Bosco Mojanka vicino Spalato : poemetto / di Anna Vidovich da Sebenico. – Traduzione Letterale / di N. N. – U Zadru : iz Utjesctenize Demar. = Zara : tip. Demarchi, 1841. – 33, 1 str. ; 26 cm
Dvojezičan tekst: lijevi stupac hrv., desni tal. jezik. – Tekst na hrv. jeziku u stihovima, na tal. u prozi. – Posveta: Svijem skladnijem gospohjam Ilirskoga naroda Ana Vidovichia = A tutte le gentili signore dell'Illirica Nazione Anna Vidovich. – Prijevod: N. N. – Navedeno u: Ginn. di Zara 1859-1860, str. 147, Ginn. di Zara 1900-1901, br. 3519, Bibl. fra I. Ciulich, br. 2676, Kukuljević, br. 2015, Maštrović, br. 180. – Signatura: ZKZd 14 516 Misc. B: 249, ZKZd 26 401 R 414, NSK II-227

524. **VIDOVIĆ, Marko Antun**
In occasione dei sponsali del signor dottore conte Antonio Paulovich con la nobile signora Altobella Soppe Papali : tre fiori poetici ai medesimi sposi / da Marc-Antonio Vidovich consacrati. – Zara : tipografia Battara, 1841. – 4 str. ; 26 cm
Stihovi na tal. jeziku. – Signatura: ZKZd 22 400 Misc. C: 4 103, ZKZd 26 401 R 413

1842.

525. **A. S. A. R.** Francesco Carlo che onora di sua presenza Zara : omaggio del municipio. – Zara : Battara, 1842. – 16 str.
Tekst na tal. jeziku. – Navedeno u: Ginn. di Zara 1859-1860, str. 66, Ginn. di Zara 1900-1901, br. 1298.

526. **ANTOLOGIA** Latina ad uso della prima classe di grammatica. – Prima edizione. – Zara : coi tipi ed a spese dei fratelli Battara, 1842. – 175 str. ; 18 cm
Tekst na tal. i lat. jeziku. – Na naslovnoj stranici cijena: Prezzo sciolto car. 13 314 Legato car. 17 114. – Na tal.: Avvertimento (str. 3-7) ; Avvertenze sull'uso del dizionario (str. 83-88). – Rječnik: str. 89-169. – Signatura: ZKZd 79 981 f

139

Figure 3.
A page of the index of names
Lakuš, Jelena. Izdavačka i tiskarska djelatnost na dalmatinskom prostoru (Zadar, Split i Dubrovnik) u prvoj polovici 19. stoljeća (1815-1850) : bibliografija monografskih i serijskih publikacija – građa. Split : Književni krug, Biblioteka znanstvenih djela, 2005. P. 316.

SVIJEM SKLADNJEM GOSPOGHJAM

ILIRSKOGA NARODA

ANA VIDOVICHIA

Zgoddu koju spjevah s' slavjenom ja jeziku
Nasega naroda prostranog bez priliku
U ljepoj strani Europe, vama se pristoje
Ter ga vam poklonim Ilirske Gospoje.
Primite ljubko vij jen plod one ljubavi
Ka za sve sctoé ilirsko sárce moje stravi.
Tak na dara krasne nehjejte vji gledatti
Ako vam dadoh ja sctosam moguchia datti.
Jeda bude po srechi da stihá ma sledechja
Za ilirskoga jezika raxxizu ljubav vechja
U vasjẽh sárcá draghe tot visce za uzvisitti
Nas jezik koliko menni nije moglo bitti!

A TUTTE LE GENTILI SIGNORE

DELL' ILLIRICA NAZIONE

ANNA VIDOVICH

L' avventura ch' io cantai col laudato linguaggio della nostra nazione, dilattata senza simile nella bella parte d' Europa, a Voi si conviene, quindi a Voi tributo o Illiriche Signore. — Ricevete amorevolmente un frutto di quell' amore, che ammalia il mio core per tutto ciò ch' è illirico. — Così alla qualità del dono, o graziose, non vogliate Voi guardare se vi diedi ciò che dar posso. Ed oh! per fortuna sia che i seguenti miei versi per l' illirico idioma accendano, care, nei vostri cori ognor più l' amore onde innalzare il nostro idioma più, quanto a me far non fu possibile!

Figure 4.
Dedication words

Biographical sketch

Jelena Lakuš is assistant professor at the Department of Information Sciences at the Faculty of Philosophy, University of J. J. Strossmayer in Osijek, Croatia, where, among other courses, she teaches the course “Croatian Bibliographies”. She obtained her PhD in Comparative History of Central, South-Eastern and Eastern Europe at the Central European University, Budapest, Hungary, with the thesis entitled “Books, Society and Culture : Religious and Political Order in Dalmatia (1815-1850)”. Her main fields of interests are history of book and reading, reading habits, old books and bibliographies, propaganda and censorship.

STARE KNJIGE, BIBLIOGRAFIJA I NJEZINE ISTRAŽIVAČKE MOGUĆNOSTI

Sažetak

Knjige su svjedočanstvo vremena u kojem nastaju i kao takve posjeduju obilje važnih dokumentarnih i povijesnih informacija. Bibliografi koji se bave područjem historijske bibliografije knjigu promatraju upravo u tom njezinu širem kontekstu i svojom zadaćom smatraju ne samo zabilježiti uobičajene “bibliografske” podatke, već i niz drugih, kao što su podaci o pretplatničkim listama, posvetama, knjižarskim oglasima, cijeni knjiga, vlasništvu, itd. Bilježeći te podatke, ističu važnost bibliografija za područje povijesti knjige, što je ujedno i glavni predmet zanimanja ovoga rada. Rad započinje kratkim podsjetnikom na ulogu bibliografija u povijesti te na značenje koje bibliografije imaju u današnje vrijeme. U središnjem se dijelu rada kroz primjer odabrane retrospektivne bibliografije ukazuje na istraživačke mogućnosti bibliografija i njihovu važnost u znanstveno-istraživačkom radu povjesničara knjige, teme kojima još uvijek nije posvećena dovoljna pozornost. Budući da se bibliografije ponajprije izrađuju za korisnike, pa tako i za povjesničare knjige, autorica zaključuje da bi one nužno morale biti prilagođene njihovim potrebama.

Ključne riječi: bibliografija, stare knjige, povijest knjige, istraživačke mogućnosti

BOOKSELLERS' CATALOGUES IN THE COLLECTION OF THE BIBLIOTHÈQUE NATIONALE DE FRANCE (PARIS)

A SCIENTIFIC DESCRIPTION OF THE COLLECTION OF EPHEMERA

Eve Netchine
Bibliothèque nationale de France, Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal, Paris, France

Abstract

The Bibliothèque nationale de France (Paris) published three years ago a scientific description of the rich collection of booksellers' catalogues printed in Europe from 1473 until 1810 available in its collections. This catalogue can be considered a new source for historians of book, historians of literature, booksellers, and, of course, curators and keepers of "early printed books" in patrimonial libraries. While there have been many bibliographical and historical studies of the early printed catalogues of book auctions and of institutional and private libraries, much less scholarly attention has been devoted to booksellers' catalogues. The study of the most fugitive and ephemeral type of early printed book catalogues, those issued by individual booksellers – advertising either their own publications, or a stock of new books acquired by exchange with other booksellers, or second-hand books is a big issue in terms of the history of publishers, history of methods of sale, and also reading and collecting practices.

Keywords:

booksellers' catalogues, early European collections (1473-1810), collections of the Bibliothèque nationale de France (Paris)

Introduction

Until recently, very little scholarly attention has been given to catalogues issued by individual booksellers – advertising either their own publications, a stock of new books acquired by exchange with other booksellers, second-hand books or any combination of these[1]

1 Lesage, Claire; Ève Netchine; Véronique Sarrazin. Catalogues de libraires 1473-1810. Paris : Bibliothèque nationale de France, 2006.

– although it is an important issue in book trade history and in the history of reading.[2] The publication by the Bibliothèque nationale de France (BnF) of *Catalogues de libraires 1473-1810* is part of the trend of publication of sources for early printed book history.

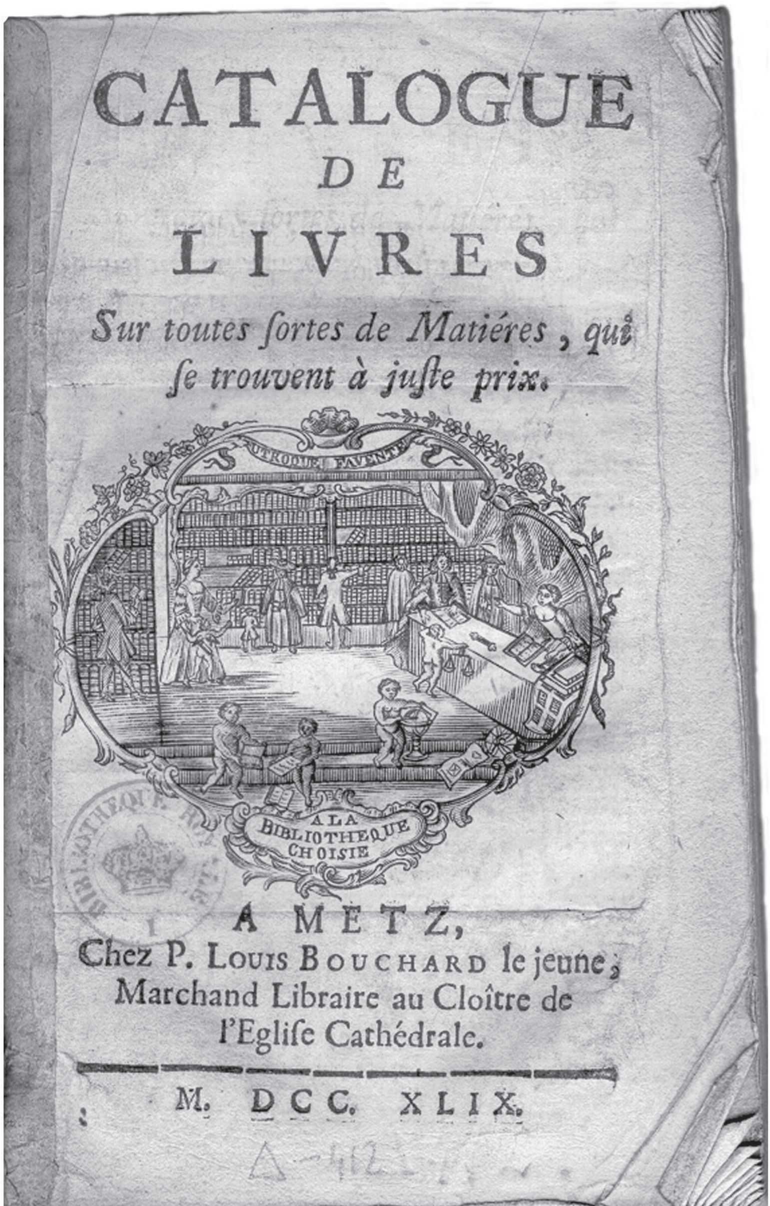
The recently published inventory describes this elusive material as a rich group in terms of chronological range and international scope. It provides scientific descriptions, establishes publication dates for catalogues and offers analysis of the contents of each of them. The data of the printed catalogue are also available through the OPAC of the library, but not the index, of course; many indexes are provided - year and place of publication, but also subject-matter, methods of sale, provenance and evidence of use of individual copies (Figure 1).

Booksellers' catalogues: What are they?

What is a bookseller's catalogue? It is a list of books for sale, published by a bookseller with the aim of advertising his stock. Some catalogues feature books issued by the bookseller himself; we call this category «livres de fonds» in French. Others also feature second-hand books and «assortiments» (in French again) published by other booksellers. The exchange of publications between booksellers provided an opportunity to propose a wide range of books; it was also a way to reduce the financial risk, by dividing it between several booksellers. Sometimes, the number of copies was reported; sometimes, the place and year of publication were given. Until the middle of the 18th century, some of those catalogues mention acquisitions made at book fairs in Frankfurt or Leipzig. Of course, some catalogues also contain etchings, globes or paintings, and all kinds of products: stationery such as paper or sealing wax, as well as tea, chocolate, perfumes, seeds and drugs, etc.

The headings of presentation and their order, the way the books are described, giving or not the exact title, the place of publication and the name of the bookseller vary from one catalogue to another. Those criteria help to distinguish catalogues published for wholesale from those made for retail, and of course a wide range of them which were made for both uses.

2 The most focal work on bookseller's catalogues is Graham Pollard and Albert Ehrman's *The Distribution of books by catalogue from the invention of printing to A. D. 1800*, Cambridge, printed for presentation to members of the Roxburghe Club, 1965 (chapters I-V). A revised edition is in preparation by Giles Mandelbrote. The most recent work focused on booksellers' catalogues will be published in 2010: Le livre entre le commerce et l'histoire des idées. Les catalogues de libraires (XVe-XIXe siècle) / études réunies par Annie Charon, Claire Lesage et Eve Netchine. Paris : Ecole des Chartes, in preparation.



CATALOGUE
DE
LIVRES
Sur toutes ſortes de Matiéres, qui ſe trouvent à juſte prix.

UTROQUE FAVENTE

A LA BIBLIOTHEQUE CHOISIE

A METZ,
Chez P. Louis Bouchard le jeune,
Marchand Libraire au Cloître de
l'Egliſe Cathédrale.

M. DCC. XLIX.

Figure 1:
Catalogue of Pierre-Louis Bouchard (1720-178.?), bookseller in Metz (France), 1749, woodcut by "V.LS" *i.e. *Vincent Le Sueur (1668-1743). Catalogue is kept at the Bibliotheque Nationale in Paris

«Terms of purchase», letters «to the readers», «to the customers», and also mail-order conditions, bookbinding conditions, discount for other booksellers – all of those elements provide useful information about the readership that the bookseller wants to reach. Some of these catalogues are numbered and printed periodically. They represent an image of the bookseller's production, and the evolution of this production.

Most of the catalogues have a very modest layout – not impressive at a first glance. Some of them are broadsides or small leaflets of very modest appearance. Of course, others are heavy volumes with neat and elegant title pages, printer's devices, dropped caps, head pieces...and all kinds of typographic or engraved ornaments, while some even have fine bindings... but these represent a minor part of the holdings.

The holdings of the BnF are quite extensive! They are comprised of 3,200 different items, and more than 4,000 copies. The earliest catalogues are *incunabula* printed in Strasbourg (Johannes Mentelin, 1410?-1478) or in Venice (Aldo Manuzio, 1450?-1515); in terms of later catalogues, it was decided to stop the hunt with the volumes from the year 1810. In any case, drawing any conclusions about the representativeness of this corpus is tricky. This elusive material has not been well preserved, even in patrimonial libraries: such catalogues are not protected by copyright registration since this kind of booklet is not considered a "real book" in itself. Some statistical elements show that the remains are very poor in comparison with the original production: only 20 % of the 3,200 items of the collection are represented in more than one copy. A recent thesis on Charles Antoine Jombert (1712-1784)[3] explains that he is believed to have published 25 catalogues between 1738 and 1773; 20 of them are still extant today, 13 are in the BnF and others elsewhere in the world. The BnF catalogues are only the remains, testimonies of a much wider collection.

The chronologic curve is representative of what we know about the printed production in Europe; an exponential evolution from the very beginning of printing to the end of our period (Figure 2).

Parisian booksellers catalogues, which are an important part of the corpus, present the chronology quoted by Henri-Jean Martin[4]

3 Kaucher, Greta. Charles-Antoine Jombert, un libraire parisien sous Louis XIV : Mémoire de DEA sous la direction de Frédéric Barbier. Paris: Ecole pratique des hautes études, Section «Sciences historiques et philologiques», 2004. [dactyl]

4 Martin, Henri-Jean. Print, power, and people in 17th-century France. Metuchen (N.J.); London : Scarecrow, 1993.

	Booksellers' catalogues	%
15th century	2	0.06
1501-1550	8	0.24
1551-1600	13	0.40
1601-1650	50	1.54
1651-1700	321	9.90
1701-1750	459	14.16
1751-1800	1964	61.67
1801-1810	397	12.22
Others	26	0.80
Total	3240	100

Figure 2.
Chronology of the BnF corpus (data as of 2007)

about the French and Parisian 17th century's publishing history: there is a gap of 80 years between the second half of the 16th century (Simon de Colines, Robert and Charles Estienne, Chrétien Wechel, Nicolas Le Riche, or Guillaume Morel), and the second half of the 17th century (Siméon Piget, Sébastien Cramoisy, Frederic I. Léonard , Antoine Vitré, Guillaume I. Desprez, Thomas Blaise in 1641). During the 17th century, the publication of catalogues was mainly a practice of academic booksellers. In the field of literature, booksellers did not offer real volumes, rather very short and selective broadsheets were bound at the end of the books themselves.

In the middle of the 18th century, every bookseller systematically published a catalogue, and updated it. During the French Revolution, every bookseller – even small ones, had their own printed catalogue published several times a year. Some important booksellers published serial catalogues; others published a general catalogue completed with supplements.

We already know, thanks to Henri-Jean Martin[5], the BnF's collections are very representative of Parisian and academic issues. How-

5 Ibid.

ever, the geographical origin of the catalogues is a sensitive gauge of the main cultural and commercial roads connecting the French book trade:

- The French catalogues represent the major part of the corpus and Paris counts for much of this category (55%). Other French cities, even those which are important in the typographic landscape, like Lyon (51 issues), Rouen, Toulouse, Marseille and Avignon are very poorly represented (there is only one document from each of these towns).
- The Netherlands (more than 10%) and the German-speaking areas are important; peripheral towns as Bouillon, Neuchatel, Berne, Geneva and Basel occupy an important place in the corpus. We know that they provided the French kingdom with a wide range of books, which were not in a situation to get a copyright (a French "Privilège") from the king.
- 81 catalogues come from Italy, which is less than 2%.
- The representation of Spain and Portugal is very discrete, in spite of the fact that this area, as we well know, produced a lot of catalogues: but the Iberian Peninsula was not a main interest of the French royal library.

Book trade practices

These printed documents are modest indeed, but they are highly valuable as they are published by the booksellers themselves and thus express their own voice and give firsthand information on their periods of activity, their affiliations and associations, their addresses and successive moves, and, of course, on the books they sold, as well as on their trading policy and their relationships with customers.

The evolution of catalogues was very progressive: until the beginning of the 17th century, the stock of the bookseller was presented in one list: bookseller's own publications; books obtained by exchange with colleagues; and then the second-hand books which were usually mixed or not precisely distinguished. It was also difficult to distinguish between catalogues made for booksellers buying wholesale, and catalogues made for retail.

The 18th century was the time of differentiation: discount catalogues made for booksellers or stock catalogues with a heading in the front listing the bookseller's own editions; both retail and wholesale have their own publications.

There was a variety of uses for those catalogues: quite different from the shelves of the bookshop, the catalogues offer another kind of view on the stock. The description of the condition of the book was useful for mail-order selling; some booksellers offered rooms for rent to customers for bibliographic tours.[6]

A catalogue is, of course, a list of books, but small details show the purpose of this list, which is another way to present books, an alternative to the bookshop. In the bookshop, books are on the shelves; the catalogue give another presentation. This new kind of presentation was useful for local customers, but much more so for distant ones. It was for these distant customers that some German booksellers advertise in their catalogues rooms for rent in their homes. We also know from Lavoisier's correspondence that he usually prepared his bibliographic tours in Europe by consulting booksellers' catalogues. Descriptions of the condition of books were made mostly for these distant customers, who bought by mail.

The main booksellers' customers were the aristocracy and the learned "bourgeoisie" – keen on literature, history, enlightenment philosophy, but also on entertaining and practical books on topics such as gardening. However, from the middle of the 17th century, different categories of customers began to emerge, each with a particular focus – notable in particular are various specific professional categories, such as medicine, law, architecture and mathematics.

The order of the books[7] presented in the catalogues is complex and varies a lot between different booksellers and according to the orientation of their stocks: many systems are in use, often associated in the same catalogue. The most frequent structure is probably a division according to the format (*in-folio*, *in-quarto* and smaller formats), and inside each format, a presentation in an alphabetical order of titles and of authors' names. We find this system in every country and until the end of the period, especially in the case of short catalogues mainly made with the bookseller's own stock. We also find another system based on what is called in France the "classement des libraires", which means "booksellers' classification". Based on the structure of private libraries, this classification was created by Prosper Marchand (1678-1756) and Gabriel Martin (1678?-1761) for sales catalogues. But booksellers often used this system for their own catalogues, and adapted it, of course, to

6 This kind of bibliographic travels is described in: Beretta, Marco. Bibliotheca Lavoisieriana : the catalogue of the library of Antoine Laurent Lavoisier. Firenze : L. S. Olschki, 1995.

7 Chartier, Roger. The order of books : readers, authors, and libraries in Europe between the 14th and 18th centuries. Stanford, Ca : Stanford University Press, 1994.

their stock, expanding the five headings (theology, law, arts and sciences, literature and history) according to their needs.

Provenance of booksellers' catalogues

The interest in the description of the copy-related information (provenance and other descriptive elements such as handwritten marginal notes) is no longer limited to rare books or books belonging to great owners. These descriptions are now of a systematic concern. The results of these investigations justify the choice of the description: the use of these catalogues by the booksellers themselves, the customers (scholars or not), the owners of private collections and the bookkeepers give an image of the different uses – expected or not, of this specific category of documents.

This account of catalogues shows how the contribution of individual collectors, as much as of great institutions, can decisively shape our view of the past – especially in the case of ephemeral and fugitive materials such as booksellers' catalogues. Finally, it draws attention to some important early collectors whose catalogues are now part of the BnF collections. A better understanding of the provenance of booksellers' catalogues is essential to any attempt to interpret their historical context and patterns of survival and use.

Some of the documents, perhaps one third, come from the professional libraries of the bookkeepers. Catalogues were a tool used for buying books. Some ex-libris and manuscript dedications to the "Gardes des livres imprimés de la Bibliothèque nationale » mention Jean-Auguste Capperonnier (1745-1820) or Joseph Van Praet (1754-1837), for example. Others come from private collections; the most important owners are closely related to the world of book trade. They are:

- Etienne-Alexandre Anisson-Duperron (1749-1794) who was the last "directeur de l'imprimerie royale" and descendant of a great dynasty of booksellers working in Lyon in the 17th, and in Paris in the 18th century. They also led the Imprimerie royale du Louvre. E.-A. Duperron was executed in 1794 and his private library confiscated and kept by the Bibliothèque nationale.
- Jean-Jacques Debure (1765-1853) comes from a dynasty of Parisian booksellers (libraires de la bibliothèque du Roi) who donated his collection of catalogues. They bear annotations by the bookseller's own hand and represent the memory of his family of booksellers.

- Achille Jullien (1794-1870), a bookseller working for book sales and auctions; a famous and fanatic owner of catalogues.

On the shelves of our libraries, we also find testimonies of another use of those catalogues: collections of bookseller's catalogues and sales catalogues bound together, sometimes with tabs or adhesive bookmarks, and index of the contents: these kinds of tools make these booklets easier to consult. Nicolas du Tralage (1640?-1720?), who was an editor of Tite-Live and a very learned geographer, owned many of these volumes. It documents an unexpected use of the catalogues by scholars. They divert the catalogues from their initiual aim, and use them as a sort of bibliography.

In spite of their constant presence in the private and institutional libraries, booksellers' catalogues always remained in the shadow of their "half-brothers", sales catalogues, which, due to the manuscripts, the incunabula and the rare books they provided, attracted most of the attention. However, inventory work on those hidden collections offers avenues of fruitful investigation for the history of book trade and readership.

References

Beretta, Marco. Bibliotheca Lavoisieriana : the catalogue of the library of Antoine Laurent Lavoisier. Firenze : L. S. Olschki, 1995.

Chartier, Roger. The order of books : readers, authors, and libraries in Europe between the 14th and 18th centuries. Stanford, Ca : Stanford University Press, 1994.

Graham Pollard; Albert Ehrman. The distribution of books by catalogue from the invention of printing to A. D. 1800 based on material in the Broxbourne library. Cambridge : Roxburghe Club, 1965.

Kaucher, Greta; Charles-Antoine Jombert, un libraire parisien sous Louis XIV : Mémoire de DEA sous la direction de Frédéric Barbier. Paris : Ecole pratique des hautes études, Section "Sciences historiques et philologiques", 2004. [dactyl]

Lesage, Claire; Ève Netchine; Véronique Sarrazin. Catalogues de libraires 1473-1810. Paris : Bibliothèque nationale de France, 2006.

Le livre entre le commerce et l'histoire des idées : les catalogues de libraires (XVe-XIXe siècle) / études réunies par Annie Charon, Claire Lesage et Eve Netchine. Paris : Ecole des Chartes, 2010 (In preparation)

Martin, Henri-Jean. Print, power, and people in 17th-century France. Metuchen, N.J.; London : Scarecrow, 1993.

Readings

Book sales catalogues of the Dutch Republic 1599-1800, database freely available at: http://www.bibliopolis.nl/veilingen/zoekscherm_veilingen_en.html [cited: 2010-03-10].

Coppens, Christian. A Census of printers and booksellers' catalogues up to 1600. // Papers of the Bibliographical Society of America 89, 4 (1995), 447-455.

Lankhorst, Otto S. Eleven catalogues by Reinier Leers (1692-1709) : a reproduced edition with an introduction. Utrecht : HES, 1992.

Lesage, Claire; Netchine, Ève. Je ne sais pas de lecture plus facile, plus attrayante, plus douce que celle d'un catalogue. // Revue de la Bibliothèque nationale de France 9(2001), 28-33.

Under the hammer : book auctions since the seventeenth century / edited by Robin Myers, Michael Harris and Giles Mandelbrote. London : The British Library; Oak Knoll Press, 2001.

Les Ventes de livres et leurs catalogues, XVII^{e}- XX^{e} siècle / études réunies par Annie Charon et Élisabeth Parinet. Paris : École des chartes, 2000.

Biographical sketch

Eve Netchine is Deputy Keeper at the Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal (Bibliothèque nationale de France, Paris). She has been working for several years as keeper of the books in the BNF, cataloguing early printed books. Her main interests are international book trade in the 18th century, and history of readership in the 18th and 19th centuries. She is at present working on the development of public reading, and on the redefining the profession of librarian in Paris in the 19th century. She recently published a paper about Eugène Godin, one of the early librarians devoted to mass reading public at the end of the 19th century at the Bibliothèque nationale (Revue de la bibliothèque nationale de France, 34, 2010, 57-63).

She is also involved in the history of games and she curated an exhibition called "Jeux de princes, jeux de villains" (Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal, March-June 2009).

KNJIŽNIČARSKI KATALOZI U ZBIRCI NACIONALNE KNJIŽNICE FRANCUSKE U PARIZU

ZNANSTVENI OPIS ZBIRKE EFEMERNE GRAĐE

Sažetak

Nacionalna knjižnica Francuske u Parizu objavila je prije tri godine znanstveni opis svoje bogate zbirke knjižarskih kataloga tiskanih u Europi u razdoblju od 1473. do 1810. Ovaj se katalog može smatrati novim izvorom za povjesničare knjige, povjesničare književnosti, knjižare i, naravno, knjižničare "stare knjige" u knjižnicama koje čuvaju nacionalnu baštinu. Mnoge bibliografije i povijesne studije obrađuju stare tiskane kataloge s dražbi knjiga te institucionalne i privatne knjižnice, međutim znatno je manje pozornosti posvećeno istraživanju knjižarskih kataloga. Proučavanje najnepostojanije i najefemernije vrste starih tiskanih kataloga, onih koje su objavljivali pojedini knjižari oglašavajući bilo svoje vlastite publikacije ili inventar novih knjiga dobivenih razmjenom s drugim knjižarima ili pak korištene knjige, značajna je tema za povijest izdavača, povijest metoda prodaje, kao i povijest navika čitanja i sakupljanja knjiga.

Ključne riječi: knjižničarski katalozi, stare europske zbirke (1473. - 1810.), zbirke nacionalne knjižnice Francuske u Parizu

WHO OWNED THIS BOOK?
PROVENANCE STUDIES IN THE EUROPEAN DIMENSION

David Shaw
Canterbury, UK

Abstract

Copy-in-hand cataloguing emphasises the uniqueness of each copy of an early printed book in terms of its manufacture and subsequent history. This has stimulated the development of provenance studies. It is now possible to research the dispersed libraries not only of famous people but also of other classes of people and institutions which had not previously received attention. Books from dispersed libraries and personal collections are often to be found far from their original location: books may cross national frontiers at different stages of their existence. Evidence of earlier book-ownership can take the form of name inscriptions, bookplates, binding stamps, shelf marks, etc. The Internet now offers important resources for provenance research, including a recently developed provenance database at the Consortium of European Research Libraries.

Keywords

provenance, book ownership, bookplates, binding stamps, Internet resources, rare-book cataloguing

It is all too easy to assume that printed books are industrial, mass-produced objects and that all copies of the same edition will be identical, with the result that it is unnecessary for a catalogue to record additional copies in any detail.

This statement may be largely true when it concerns modern books for which the design and production of the cover and contents are fully integrated, but it is definitely not true for the pre-modern books which are recorded the Heritage of the Printed Book Database (HPB) run by the Consortium of European Research Libraries (CERL).[1] In the period

1 Information on the HPB Database can be found on the CERL web site at www.cerl.org. Access to this database is only available through libraries which are members of the Consortium of European Research Libraries.

of the hand press (before the middle of the nineteenth century) the manual printing process permitted the possibilities of variants within the printed text due to stop-press corrections, when the pressman halted his work to allow the compositor to make a modification to the text of the sheet being printed. When the sheets are gathered from the warehouse for binding, the combinations of corrected and uncorrected sheets can potentially be very complicated; and so every copy which was put on sale might theoretically be slightly different from every other.

This idea of the uniqueness of every copy of an edition is much easier to understand as soon as we remember that, in the period before the industrial revolution, bindings were not designed and produced by the publisher, as happens today, but were created at the point of sale to the requirements of each individual purchaser. Recording the details of historic bindings in a catalogue requires specialist knowledge but it is easy to understand that each copy which retains its original binding is worthy of a detailed record in a modern catalogue. The evidence of bindings tells us about the social and economic condition of their owners and offers evidence of the changes in decorative taste during the early-modern period.

Interest in provenance studies is clearly increasing. It is no longer a question of 'bibliophilic' interest or the curiosity value of a book which had once belonged to a famous person. Modern provenance research can help to answer wider questions of readership, such as the penetration of book-ownership through the social classes, the ownership of books by women in the early period, the presence of unorthodox reading matter in ecclesiastical collections, the leisure reading of politicians, or books which might have influenced the output of literary figures.

The 'raw material' of provenance research consists of the evidence left in books by their previous owners (which means that it is impossible to investigate the ownership of those who did not mark their books). This includes some of the following categories:

- *Owners' inscriptions*: signatures, initials, mottoes and other handwritten signs. These can be difficult to interpret because of the handwriting or because of the language used (Latin, or Greek, or just a foreign language with an unfamiliar script), and often because the inscriptions are too short to permit extensive palaeographical analysis. Mottoes of course might be used by more than one person and so not give a definite identification, and frequently use of a motto will not be traceable at all.

- *Bookplates*: Some book plates are easy to interpret: they might give the owner's name in full, with his place of residence and a date. At the other extreme, a bookplate might have a design with no immediate identifying evidence at all. Designs which have a shield with a coat of arms and a Latin motto in theory identify an owner very precisely, if only the coat of arms can be interpreted and assigned to the appropriate member of a royal, noble or otherwise 'armigerous' family. In fact, coats of arms are often very difficult to identify, in spite of an extensive specialist literature for many of the countries of Europe.
- *Book stamps*: ink stamps often present little difficulty to read (so long as they have been carefully applied and are not faint or smudged), as they were designed to tell who owned the book and can be much more legible that a handwritten signature.
- *Armorial bindings*: these present the same difficulties as armorial book plates, with the added problem that they typically offer less detail than an engraved printed book plate and can be difficult to interpret (and to photograph) if the binding is rubbed and worn.
- *Library stamps and shelf marks*: these too can be easy to read and interpret, or else very difficult. If there is no stamp or inscription with the name of the library, the researcher might be able to show that the style of binding or the types of shelf marks written on the end leaves indicate the library in question or perhaps a particular religious order, but this type of research requires a great amount of very detailed knowledge of the characteristics of the libraries under investigation.

Our goal is to make the names of former owners of books from our collections available through the library's online catalogue database. In today's context this means shaping the data into a format suitable to be entered into a computer-based record probably using one of the MARC formats. One of the problems with recording provenances, once the name of a previous owner has been read or otherwise deduced, is to determine exactly who the person is and whether there is an entry in an appropriate authority file which can be used in a catalogue entry. A previous owner who was an author should be relatively easy to find in an appropriate authority source; similarly with major political figures or members of noble families. However, this is not the case for ordinary book owners whose names are unlikely to appear in current authority databases.

But who were these owners? Sometimes this is easy to tell: a signature on the title page, a bookplate on the inside of the cover, a binding stamp on the outer cover, all of these can potentially tell us the name of the owner of the book at an earlier time. Many owners may be famous: aristocrats, politicians, writers, scientists, and churchmen. Many will be difficult to identify: this is what I call in English the problem of 'John Smith', an unknown person with a very common name who cannot be identified with any certainty. But information about the sorts of books which were owned by people like John Smith can be as important for the social historian as knowing the contents of the large library of an aristocratic statesman.

The CERL web site has a group of pages devoted to provenance information.[2] Here you can find lists of publications on provenance questions, lists of links to Internet resources in this field, as well as further information about the data recorded in other CERL electronic resources. Publications include David Pearson's **Provenance Research in Book History: A Handbook,** published by the British Library in 1998 which has become the standard reference work in English,[3] the recently announced Italian manual *Provenienze. Metodologia di rilevamento*, **descrizione e indicizzazione per il materiale bibliografico**,[4] publications of conference proceedings such as CERL's 2004 Edinburgh Seminar *Books and their owners*,[5] and a recent collection of essays published by the National Library of Estonia.[6] The Consortium welcomes information about new resources to add to these pages.

2 Consortium of European Research Libraries. Provenance Information [cited 2010-02-17]. Available at: http://www.cerl.org/web/en/resources/provenance/main

3 Pearson, David. Provenance research in book history : a handbook. London : British Library Publishing, 1998. (The British Library Studies in the History of the Book) (reprinted with addenda, original edition 1994).

4 Provenienze. Metodologia di rilevamento, descrizione e indicizzazione per il materiale bibliografico. Provincia Autonoma di Trento - Regione Toscana, June 2009.

5 Books and their owners : provenance information and the European cultural heritage : papers presented on 13 November 2004 at the CERL conference hosted by the National Library of Scotland, Edinburgh / edited by David Shaw. London : Consortium of European Research Libraries, 2005. (CERL Papers ; V)

6 Omanikumärgid vanaraamatus : artiklite kogumik = Ownership marks in old books : collection of articles = Владельческий знак на старинной книге : сборник статей / Eesti Rahvusraamatukogu ; koostaja ja toimetaja Larissa Petina ; tõlkijad Ruth Hiie, Inna Saaret, Sirje Lusmägi ; kujundaja Margit Plink ; kaane kujundaja Andrus Igalaan. Tallinn : National Library of Estonia, 2008. Articles in Estonian, English and Russian, with summaries.

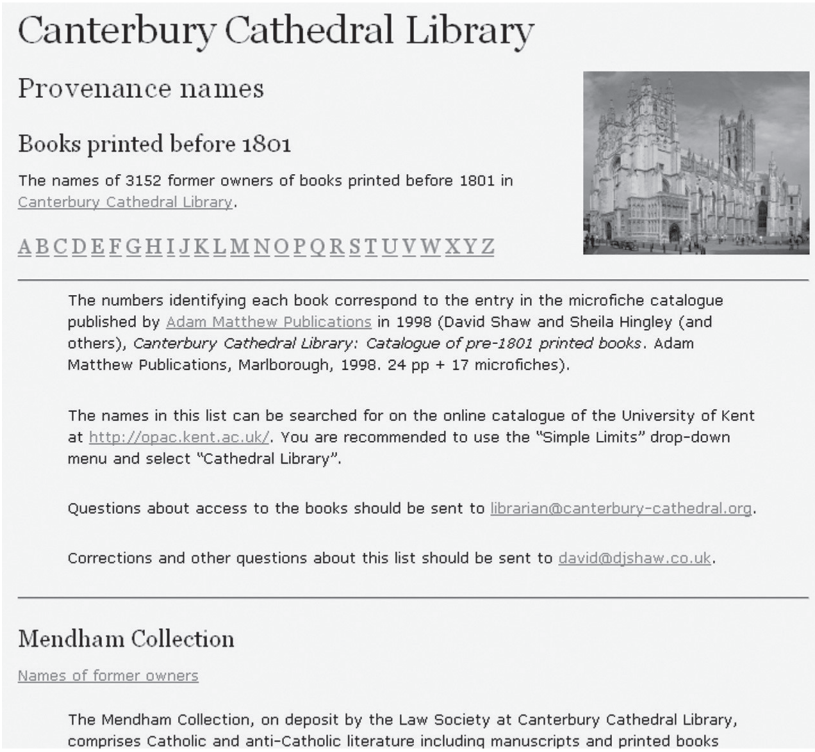
Books beyond frontiers

Books travelled all over Europe in the historical period as their producers and distributors sought to sell them to a wider market and their owners took them from country to country on their travels. Existing collections could be dispersed as a result of the death of their owner, or by the outcome of wars, or the secularisation of monasteries and other religious establishments, or for any number of other reasons. Consequently, copies of a book printed in one country can be found in libraries all over Europe and in the Americas.[7] The cultural heritage of the individual European nations has travelled over frontiers historically and continues to do so today. A resource like the HPB Database can help locate the printed material of each national cultural heritage, even when it has wandered beyond its national borders. For book ownership, the situation is even more difficult because of the highly dispersed nature of the basic information about provenance in online library catalogues and web sites, in bibliographical databases, in card catalogues in special collections rooms, in booksellers' catalogues and in printed catalogues of special collections, as well as in many, many articles in journals. It follows that research on book ownership must be conducted at the international level. The Consortium has tried to find ways in which the Internet can become a significant resource for provenance research.

As an example, we can look at the provenance records for the Cathedral Library in Canterbury. The Cathedral's own web site does not have provision for displaying something as specific as lists of the Library's former owners, so CERL has provided pages for two sets of provenance lists from Canterbury. The first set of pages records the names of 3152 former owners for the Cathedral's books printed before 1801 (see figure 1). The second set gives 1,148 owners of books from the library of the Revd Joseph Mendham, which is on deposit at the Cathedral Library.[8] In both cases, the former owners include many

7 Books beyond frontiers : the need for international collaboration in national retrospective bibliography : papers presented on 8 November 2002 at the Bibliopolis Conference on 'The future history of the book' hosted by the Koninklijke Bibliotheek, The Hague / edited by David Shaw. London : Consortium of European Research Libraries, 2003. (CERL Papers ; III)

8 The catalogue of the pre-1801 books was published by David Shaw and Sheila Hingley (and others): Canterbury Cathedral Library : catalogue of pre-1801 printed books. Marlborough : Adam Matthew Publications, 1998. The MARC records for the catalogue are also on the OPAC of the University of Kent (http://opac.kent.ac.uk/). For the Mendham Collection, see: Catalogue of the Law Society's Mendham Collection, lent to the University of Kent at Canterbury and housed in Canterbury Cathedral Library / completed and edited by Sheila



Canterbury Cathedral Library

Provenance names

Books printed before 1801

The names of 3152 former owners of books printed before 1801 in Canterbury Cathedral Library.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z

The numbers identifying each book correspond to the entry in the microfiche catalogue published by Adam Matthew Publications in 1998 (David Shaw and Sheila Hingley (and others), *Canterbury Cathedral Library: Catalogue of pre-1801 printed books*. Adam Matthew Publications, Marlborough, 1998. 24 pp + 17 microfiches).

The names in this list can be searched for on the online catalogue of the University of Kent at http://opac.kent.ac.uk/. You are recommended to use the "Simple Limits" drop-down menu and select "Cathedral Library".

Questions about access to the books should be sent to librarian@canterbury-cathedral.org.

Corrections and other questions about this list should be sent to david@djshaw.co.uk.

Mendham Collection

Names of former owners

The Mendham Collection, on deposit by the Law Society at Canterbury Cathedral Library, comprises Catholic and anti-Catholic literature including manuscripts and printed books

Figure 1.
Former owners of books printed before 1801 in Canterbury Cathedral Library

foreign names, both personal and institutional, from collections which had been dispersed around 1800 and sold through the book trade in London, subsequently finding their way into the collections of Joseph Mendham in Sutton Coldfield or of Canon Benjamin Harrison in Canterbury and being given to an institutional library: the Law Society of London in the Mendham's case, and the library of Christ Church, Canterbury, for Harrison's books.

Examples of books in the Mendham Collection which had travelled to England from their countries of origin include:

Hingley and David Shaw from the catalogue of Helen Carron and others. London : The Law Society, 1994, and Shaw, David J. Pastor Joseph Mendhams bibliotek [The Library of the Reverend Joseph Mendham]. // Biblis 44(Vintern 2008/09), 45–55 (original English text available at: http://www.djshaw.co.uk/Mendham.pdf [cited 2010-02-17]).

- Three books with the armorial binding of the De Thou family, two of which had probably belonged to Jacques-Auguste de Thou (1553–1617), a Catholic opponent of the Council of Trent and librarian to the French King Henri IV.[9]
- Over fifty items from the library of Jan Frans Van de Velde (1743–1823), professor of theology and librarian of the University of Louvain. Van de Velde's library, which was sold in 1833, had many provenances from religious houses in the Low Countries.[10]
- There are books from the libraries of twelve Jesuit colleges, in the following towns: Antwerp, Augsburg, Baeza (Andalusia), Brussels, Caen, Ingolstadt, Louvain, Mons, Paris, Siena, Tournai, and Utrecht. There are additionally books from Jesuit houses in Ghent, Halle, Luxemburg, Mechelen, and Traunkirch.
- A copy of Joannes de Burgo, *Pupilla oculi* ([Strassburg], 1516/1517'. 4°. Mendham, B481) with the inscription 'In vsum Fratrum Staingadensium' (the Premonstratensian Kloster Steingaden, Bavaria) dated 1649; the book later passed into the Royal Library in Munich from which it was discarded as a duplicate: 'Duplum Bibliothecae regiae Monac.'
- There are books from a number of German universities: Freiburg, Göttingen, Helmstedt, Ingolstadt, Landshut, and Würzburg. It is not clear whether these represent duplicates, or thefts, or the result of wars and other disruptions.

The provenance data from the Mendham Collection are now also available through the CERL Thesaurus (see below); the MARC records for Mendham will be loaded on to the Heritage of the Printed Book Database in 2010.

Using the Internet for provenance researches

The Internet already provides several rare-books and special-collections discussion lists, such as ExLibris and SHARP, which frequently carry messages requesting help with bibliographical problems, includ-

9 Thou, Jacques-Auguste de. La Vie de Jacques-Auguste de Thou (I. Aug. Thuani vita) / introduction, établissement du texte, traduction et notes par Anne Teissier-Ensminger. Paris : Champion, 2007.

10 Roegiers, Jan. Jan Frans Van de Velde (1743–1823). // Les seigneurs du livre : les grands collectionneurs du XIX[ème] siècle à la Bibliothèque royale de Belgique / catalogue rédigé par Marcus de Schepper, Ann Kelders, Jan Pauwels. Bruxelles : Bibliothèque royale de Belgique, 2008. Pp. 46–56.

ing provenance identification. The Consortium of European Research Libraries has tried to help to provide resources and opportunities on the Internet to disseminate information about book owners, in addition to more general information about authors, printers, publishers and book sellers and the books they produced.

The first of these initiatives was the CERL Thesaurus, which records names (in many languages and variations) for authors, printers, publishers and booksellers in the historic period.[11] Originally intended to provide a convergence of relevant name authority files from the different national traditions in Europe and then to use this as a resource to provide assisted searching on the Consortium's main bibliographic database, the Thesaurus has recently started to include data on names of book owners as well as book producers. Some of these data have been collected from records submitted for inclusion in the HPB Database; some have been contributed by libraries which have been keeping files of the former owners of their books. As the amount of this provenance information stored in the CERL Thesaurus increases, we hope that it will become an important tool help with the identification of book owners and provide links to the libraries which hold copies of the books which they once owned. We invite researchers to make use of this material which is freely available from the CERL Thesaurus, and we encourage libraries to submit data for owners of books in their collections to add to the Thesaurus.

By late 2009, the CERL Thesaurus had received files of provenance data from the following libraries or projects:

Basel (CH): Basel University Library
Berlin (DE): Berlin State Library
Canterbury (UK): Cathedral Library (Mendham Collection)
EBOB: Early Book Owners in Britain[12]
Göttingen (DE): State and University Library
Halle/Saale (DE): Library of the Francke Foundations
Hamburg (DE): State- and University Library
Hannover (DE): Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz Library

11 Further information about the CERL Thesaurus can be found in the paper by Dr Claudia Fabian *New conceptual models for information organization: Authority data in a European context*.

12 Provenance names from the EBOB database recording private ownership of printed books in Britain in the late 15th and early 16th century, created by Dr Margaret Lane Ford for her chapter ‚Private ownership of printed books', in: The Cambridge history of the book in Britain. Vol. 3: 1400-1557 / edited by Lotte Hellinga and J.B. Trapp. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 1999. Pp. 205-228. See: EBOB: Early Book Owners in Britain [cited 2010-02-17]. Available at: http://www.kallimachos.net/cgi-bin/ebob/spc.pl

London (UK); Middle Temple Library
Lyon (FR): Bibliothèque Municipal
Madrid (ES): Bibl. Hist. Marqués de Valdecilla (Complutense)
Rostock (DE): University Library
Salamanca (ES): Biblioteca General Histórica de la Universidad de Salamanca
Warsaw (PL): Warsaw University Library
Weimar (DE): Duchess Anna Amalia Library
Wolfenbüttel (DE): Herzog-August-Bibliothek, *Katalog der Wolfenbütteler Lutherdrucke*

It can be seen that these sixteen projects from six different countries already provide a wide European coverage of sources of provenance data in the Thesaurus. Each file contributed to the Thesaurus will probably contain a majority of names from its own national or cultural territory but typically will also contain examples of names of owners of books which have strayed from their own home.

The provenance index in the CERL Thesaurus not only provides information on owners' names; it also offers links to online resources such as library OPACs where further information on the books owned can be sought. Figure 2 shows part of a record for the nineteenth-century book collector Georg Kloss.[13] The Thesaurus had records from two

Figure 2.
CERL Thesaurus provenance record for books owned by Georg Kloss

13 Figure 2 shows the test version of a new user interface for the CERL Thesaurus. It is hoped that this new version will be complete and in use by the time of publication of this paper. The new interface can be accessed from http://thesaurus.cerl.org/ or from the links on the main CERL web site www.cerl.org.

libraries which had books from Kloss's collection. Clicking on the link for each of these libraries opens a window showing relevant records in the catalogue of that library. Libraries and projects which record provenance data are invited to consider making a file available to enhance the Thesaurus, especially if the names have supplementary identification information (dates of birth and death, occupation, etc.).

Another recent new provenance resource offered by CERL is a database called 'Can You Help?' where librarians and researchers can submit queries for identification, preferably with a photograph. Originally, this was a simple web page where I was able to post the queries submitted by email. At the beginning of 2010 our implementation team in the Data Conversion Group at Göttingen University Library had developed this into an interactive database which invites researchers to log on and to post and discuss provenance queries.[14] This is a much more effective resource, as it does not require an editor to intervene to upload queries. Figure 3 shows the home page for this database on the web, with some of the queries which have been posted.

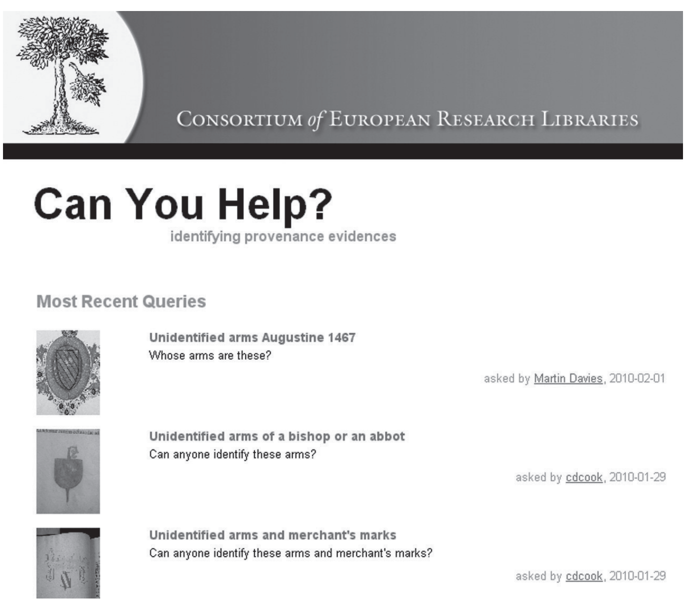


Figure 3.
Provenance queries posted on CERL's 'Can You Help?' Database

14 Consortium of European Research Libraries. Can you help? [cited 2010-02-17]. Available at: http://www.cerl.org/web/en/resources/provenance/can_you_help

In the short period since its inception a number of queries have been successfully resolved by participants from Germany, Canada, New Zealand, the United States and Great Britain. Queries are periodically publicised on specialist email discussion lists such as ExLibris and also the Provenienz email discussion list, another specialist resource for provenance discussion which is administered by HeBIS (Hessischen BibliotheksInformationsSystem).[15]

Figure 4 shows the successful identification of an early owner of a Strasburg incunable (Antoninus Florentinus, *Confessionale: Defecerunt*, Strassburg: Martin Flach, 1488; Goff A-822). The inscription on the first leaf of the book reads 'Pro. d. Melchiore Suffraganeo Const[antiensi]', who was identified as Melchior Fattlin (or Vattlin), auxiliary Bishop of Constanz, 1518–1548. Contributors also listed several other books with Fattlin's bookplate or ownership inscription, together with an encyclopaedia entry for him and a record in the CERL Thesaurus. This example shows the power of a tool with Web 2.0 interactive functionality of this sort to facilitate discussion by specialists in a field where collaboration is often needed to solve problems.

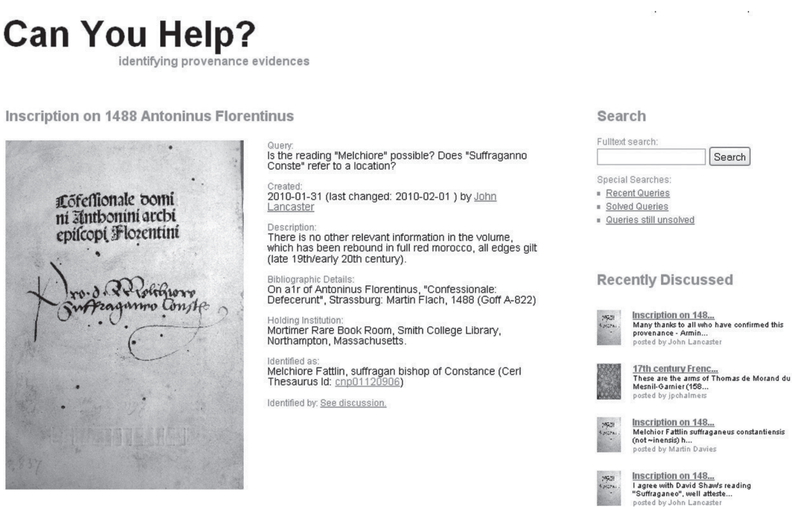


Figure 4.
Inscription of Melchior Fattlin, auxiliary Bishop of Constanz

15 HeBIS-Ad-hoc-Arbeitsgruppe zur Provenienzerschließung [cited 2010-02-17]. Available at: https://dlist.server.uni-frankfurt.de/mailman/listinfo/provenienz

Future plans for recording provenance data

Many libraries do not (yet) have provenance data in their catalogue records. This is typically the case with the very large national collections. Libraries with smaller collections which have recently prepared new online catalogues have often added value to their catalogue records by following modern recommendations for the inclusion of copy-specific data such as previous owners. It is understandable that the larger libraries which have developed traditional bibliographic catalogues of a good standard over many decades now find themselves faced with a daunting task to re-examine their entire early collections to prepare additional copy-specific information to enhance their records. The cost of such a significant re-cataloguing of major collections is unlikely to be a high priority in the face of pressures to digitise these same collections, unless external research funding can be found. But if we are to make significant progress with the documentation of European provenance evidence, these are precisely the collections which need to be recorded.

Even with adequate funding for such projects, there are still difficulties in this type of work. As has been discussed earlier, ownership inscriptions can be particularly difficult to interpret; they are typically too short to allow much palaeographical comparisons to help in reading them. Armorial binding stamps and bookplates require specialist reference works to identify the arms and mottos of their owners. Identification of library stamps, shelf marks and similar physical evidence also require specialist knowledge in an area where there are few relevant repertories to help.

A further problem lies in the continuing inadequacy of schemes for recording provenance data in MARC catalogue records. There is no consistent, complete set of rules for encoding provenance data, although useful steps have been taken in recent years by several groups, including the Rare Books and Special Collections Group of CILIP in the UK,[16] Descriptive Cataloging of Rare Materials (Books)[17] in North America, and other national sets of rules and conventions. European colleagues who use UNIMARC seem to find that its provisions for recording complex provenances are superior

16 The 2007 revision of the Guidelines for the cataloguing of rare books is available online. Available at: http://www.cilip.org.uk/get-involved/special-interest-groups/rare-books/bibliographic-standards/guidlines-for-cataloguing-rare-books/Pages/index.aspx [cited 2010-02-17]. It has an illustrated section on recording provenance data.

17 DCRM(B): Descriptive cataloging of rare materials (books). 2007 ed. Washington, DC. : Library of Congress Cataloging Distribution Service, 2007.

to those of MARC21 in areas such as geography and dates. These differences in coding schemes are not particularly significant within the context of one library's online catalogue database, but they mean that collaborative work is made unnecessarily complicated in such areas as the design of a distributed research portal for provenance data. A final difficulty is that many library OPAC systems fail to search or display provenance data adequately or at all, even though they are present in the records. No doubt this latter difficulty will disappear with the passage of time and the improvement of OPAC technologies.

The Internet will surely provide a solution to some of these problems. The creation of a portal through which the provenance data in many library catalogues could be searched is clearly a possible development. The CERL Thesaurus has already started to provide a resource of this sort. It might be possible to design such a portal so that the scholarly public could contribute information about previous owners which they find in their researches or to provide identification or additional information about provenance problems. CERL's Can You Help? Database is already fulfilling this function in a small way and the User Annotation facility in the CERL Thesaurus offers another example. The Internet also offers the possibility of increasing numbers of digitised copies of reference works which are not available outside the specialist libraries.

We hope that colleagues in many countries will find these initiatives of interest and will be able to contribute to projects such as the CERL Thesaurus. We need an international collaborative effort to use modern technology to bring these dispersed materials together again so that our common cultural heritage and that of each individual country can be fully explored.

References

Books and their owners : provenance information and the European cultural heritage : papers presented on 13 November 2004 at the CERL conference hosted by the National Library of Scotland, Edinburgh / edited by David Shaw. London : Consortium of European Research Libraries, 2005. (CERL Papers ; V)

Books beyond frontiers : the need for international collaboration in national retrospective bibliography : papers presented on 8 November 2002 at the Bibliopolis Conference on 'The future history of the book' hosted by the Koninklijke Bibliotheek, The Hague / edited by David Shaw. London : Consortium of European Research Libraries, 2003. (CERL Papers ; III)

Canterbury Cathedral Library : catalogue of pre-1801 printed books / published by David Shaw and Sheila Hingley [et al.]. Marlborough : Adam Matthew Publications, 1998.

Catalogue of the Law Society's Mendham Collection, lent to the University of Kent at Canterbury and housed in Canterbury Cathedral Library / completed and edited by Sheila Hingley and David Shaw from the catalogue of Helen Carron and others. London : The Law Society, 1994.

CILIP. Rare Books and Special Collections Group. Guidelines for the cataloguing of rare books. 2007 revision [cited 2010-02-17]. Available at: http://www.cilip.org.uk/get-involved/special-interest-groups/rare-books/bibliographic-standards/guidlines-for-cataloguing-rare-books/Pages/index.aspx

Consortium of European Research Libraries (CERL) [cited 2010-02-17]. Available at: http:// www.cerl.org

Consortium of European Research Libraries. Can you help? [cited 2010-02-17]. Available at: http://www.cerl.org/web/en/resources/provenance/can_you_help

Consortium of European Research Libraries. CERL Thesaurus [cited 2010-02-17]. Available at: http://thesaurus.cerl.org/

Consortium of European Research Libraries. Provenance information [cited 2010-02-17]. Available at: http://www.cerl.org/web/en/resources/provenance/main

DCRM(B): Descriptive cataloging of rare materials (books). 2007 ed. Washington, DC. : Library of Congress Cataloging Distribution Service, 2007.

Early Book Owners in Britain (EBOB) [cited 2010-02-17]. Available at: http://www.kallimachos.net/cgi-bin/ebob/spc.pl

HeBIS-Ad-hoc-Arbeitsgruppe zur Provenienzerschließung [cited 2010-02-17]. Available at: https://dlist.server.uni-frankfurt.de/mailman/listinfo/provenienz

Lane Ford, Margaret. Private ownership of printed books. // The Cambridge history of the book in Britain. Vol. 3: 1400-1557 / edited by Lotte Hellinga and J.B. Trapp. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 1999. Pp. 205-228.

Omanikumärgid vanaraamatus : artiklite kogumik = Ownership marks in old books : collection of articles = Владельческий знак на старинной книге : сборник статей / Eesti Rahvusraamatukogu ; koostaja ja toimetaja Larissa Petina ; tõlkijad Ruth Hiie, Inna Saaret, Sirje Lusmägi ; kujundaja Margit Plink ; kaane kujundaja Andrus Igalaan. Tallinn : National Library of Estonia, 2008.

Pearson, David. Provenance research in book history : a handbook. London : British Library Publishing, 1998. (The British Library Studies in the History of the Book) (reprinted with addenda, original edition 1994).

Roegiers, Jan. Jan Frans Van de Velde (1743–1823). // Les seigneurs du livre : les grands collectionneurs du XIX^ème siècle à la Bibliothèque royale de Belgique / catalogue rédigé par Marcus de Schepper, Ann Kelders, Jan Pauwels. Bruxelles : Bibliothèque royale de Belgique, 2008.

Shaw, David J. Pastor Joseph Mendhams bibliotek [The Library of the Reverend Joseph Mendham]. // Biblis 44(Vintern 2008/09), 45–55. (Original English text available at: http://www.djshaw.co.uk/Mendham.pdf [cited 2010-02-17].)

Thou, Jacques-Auguste de. La Vie de Jacques-Auguste de Thou (I. Aug. Thuani vita) / introduction, établissement du texte, traduction et notes par Anne Teissier-Ensminger. Paris : Champion, 2007.

Biographical Sketch

David Shaw was Secretary of the Consortium of European Research Libraries from 2002 to 2009. Previously Senior Lecturer in French at the University of Kent (Canterbury, England), he specialises in the history of the book, particularly in 15th- and 16th-century France, and in provenance studies. He is a Past President of the Bibliographical Society (London) and was Editor in Chief of its Cathedral Libraries Catalogue project.

TKO JE BIO VLASNIK OVE KNJIGE?

PROUČAVANJE PORIJEKLA KNJIGA U EUROPSKIM RAZMJERIMA

Sažetak

Izvorna katalogizacija izravno naglašava jedinstvenost svakog primjerka tiskane knjige u odnosu na njenu proizvodnju i daljnju povijest. Taj je postupak potaknuo razvoj područja proučavanja porijekla knjige. Danas je moguće proučavati raspršene knjižnice ne samo poznatih pojedinaca, nego i drugih pojedinaca i ustanova kojima se u prethodnim razdobljima nije bavilo. Knjige iz raspršenih knjižnica i privatnih zbirki često se pronalaze daleko od svoga izvornog smještaja: knjige mogu prelaziti nacionalne granice u različitim razdobljima svoga postojanja. Dokazi o prijašnjim vlasnicima knjiga nalaze se u obliku rukom pisanih imena, ekslibrisa, pečata na uvezu, mjesnih signatura itd. Internet danas nudi važne izvore za istraživanje porijekla knjiga, uključujući i novorazvijenu bazu podataka o porijeklu knjiga Konzorcija europskih znanstvenih knjižnica (Consortium of European Research Libraries).

Ključne riječi: porijeklo knjiga, vlasništvo knjiga, ekslibrisi, pečati na uvezu, internetski izvori, katalogizacija starih knjiga

PROVENANCE INFORMATION IN CROATIAN CATALOGUES OF HERITAGE COLLECTIONS

Marijana Tomić
Department of Library and Information Science, University of Zadar, Croatia

Abstract
The article presents the state of the art in cataloguing of old and rare books in Croatian libraries, with a short history of such collections in heritage institutions. Provenance information in those records is particularly stressed. The results of a search on provenance information in catalogue records of Croatian libraries, including card catalogues as well as printed and online catalogues, are described.

Key words
heritage collections, cataloguing of old and rare books, provenance information

Introduction

In Croatia there are lots of collections of old and rare books. They are usually called heritage libraries. Some of them are parts of monasteries, parishes or other kinds of ecclesiastical institutions, some are located in research, university and other kinds of libraries, and some are located in other heritage institutions (museums, archives, etc.) or even in private homes. Although some of them are autonomous, they mostly (85%) belong to ecclesiastical institutions (monasteries, bishoprics), and only a minority belong to museums, archives, associations and private collections.[1] The collections that are located in museums are in most cases collections that pertain to writers, scientists, politicians and other notable men or families, and were founded mainly between 1960 and 1975. All those collections are an extremely important part of a national and European cultural history.

1 Šimek, Sanja. Analiza spomeničkih knjižnica u Hrvatskoj – stanje u 1992. godini. // Vijesti Društva bibliotekara Istre 10, 12(1993), 8.

According to a research carried out by the National and University Library in Zagreb in 1992, there are 93 notable heritage libraries in Croatia.[2] Those libraries hold 1,553,661 items and 1,671 incunabula. This research did not include research libraries and the National and University Library in Zagreb, although those libraries hold important collections of old and rare books. The manuscript collections in 54 heritage libraries were recorded (altogether 8,065 manuscripts) and the rest of old and rare books collections (books printed from the 16th to 19th centuries) were recorded in 39 libraries. At the time of the research, 49 heritage libraries were registered in regional institutions for the protection of cultural monuments and 10 were registered as a part of monasteries. Most of those libraries are not organised and library material is not available, and there is not enough library space or shelves. There is an inventory list of 26 libraries, and in 14 there is only a list of old and rare material. The research showed that books in 75 % of libraries need to be recorded and the libraries need to be organised according to library rules.[3] In addition, there are 40 parish and church collections which contain important works and which should also be recorded and preserved.[4] A new research on the situation of recording heritage libraries is in progress in the National and University Library in Zagreb.

Although Croatian librarians are familiar with international standards for bibliographic organisation of old and rare books, and even actively collaborate in their creation through several international organisations,[5] there is no plan for systematic recording/registering of old and rare material on the national level that should be a requirement for appropriate preservation and presentation of those precious collections.[6] As a register of heritage collections is a prerequisite for a systematic national care strategy in recording, maintaining and conserving collections of old and rare books, the National and University Library in Zagreb is, according to its programme for protection and conservation of the written heritage in Croatian libraries, continuously recording collections of heritage libraries, but insufficient financial resources slow down such projects. Those projects are also supported by

2 Ibid.
3 Ibid., p. 10.
4 Ibid., pp. 7-14.
5 One of them is CERL's Heritage of the Printed Book (HPB) Database. The National and University Library in Zagreb became a member of CERL in 1998.
6 Katić, Tinka. Stara knjiga : bibliografska organizacija informacija. Zagreb : Hrvatsko knjižničarsko društvo, 2007. P. XII.

the Commission for the History of Books and Libraries of the Croatian Library Association.[7] But in spite of the efforts of librarians in the main libraries in Rijeka, Split, Dubrovnik and Osijek who are responsible under Croatian law for heritage collections in their areas, and the librarians in the National and University Library in Zagreb as well as other librarians, there are obviously still lots of heritage collections, mainly in ecclesiastical institutions, that are recorded but not organised according to library rules.[8] At the moment, there are no such data for private collections or collections of old and rare books that are parts of museum or archive institutions.

Universities in Osijek, Zadar and Zagreb, which have departments of library and information sciences, have initiated several projects on organising monastery library collections. These projects involve students who are working hand in hand with librarians and professors. It is expected that, as a result of this experience, some of those students will continue working with old and rare books.

Definition of heritage collections

T. Aparac-Gazivoda indicates that there are two perspectives of the term heritage collection, one that involves private libraries of notable families or noblemen, and the other that involves all monastery or parish collections of old and rare books.[9] S. Šimek defines heritage libraries as those that "contain mostly old material that is representative of world and national culture, older works that are relevant for particular areas, works relevant for particular persons or events or collections of scientific or art works of different sizes that are rare and old, and present important instruments for work".[10] Regarding their value, she mentions heritage libraries of world value, of national value, of regional value, and those that hold collections of minimal value.[11] T. Katić indicates that there are a few types of libraries that hold old and rare books, mostly those belonging to ecclesiastical communities. There are also collections of old and rare books in research, national and other types

7 See: Katić, Tinka; Mihaela Kovačić. Komisija za povijest knjige i knjižnica HKD-a : posrednik u standardizaciji obrade, prezentaciji i očuavanju stare i rijetke tiskane građe. // 35. Skupština Hrvatskoga knjižničarskog društva : Knjižnice – riznice pisane i digitalne baštine : radni materijali. Zagreb : Hrvatsko knjižničarsko društvo, 2006. Pp. 52-54.

8 Aparac-Gazivoda, T. Op. cit., p. 4.

9 Aparac-Gazivoda, Tatjana. Organizacija knjižničnog poslovanja u spomeničkim knjižnicama. // Vijesti Društva bibliotekara Istre 10, 12(1993), 2.

10 Šimek, S. Op. cit., p. 8.

11 Ibid.

of libraries. Those collections are either located in separate departments, or included in the main collection.[12]

Šime Jurić, the most deserving librarian in contemporary Croatian history who was involved in registering and describing collections of old and rare books in Croatia, both on theoretical and practical level, made criteria for defining a collection as old and rare,[13] which are based on the criteria made by Giuseppe Fumagalli.[14] Some of the criteria he mentioned are author, content, edition, printer, and a special significance for Croatian or world culture.

Previous work on recording collections of old and rare books in Croatia

The majority of monastery libraries in Croatia either have no catalogue at all, or only a part of their collection is catalogued (catalogue of manuscripts, incunabula, *cinquecentina*, etc.), or have a catalogue that was made very long ago and needs revision. Some of the monasteries do have an inventory list of movable and immovable property that includes books. Those lists, usually made by the principal of a monastery sometimes a few centuries ago, include information about the number of books, genres, location of the books (rooms, bookcases or shelves), formats, kind of paper, year of publication, language of the books, title, author, owners, etc.[15] Unfortunately, a great number of those lists are also missing. Card catalogues in monastery libraries usually contain information about author, title, place and year of publication and material designation, and do not have any provenance information. No monastery library in Croatia has an online public access catalogue (OPAC) or even an inventory list on the web page of the monastery.

Card catalogues in other Croatian libraries made before 1970s are based either on the Prussian Instructions or on some other rules created in particular libraries for the purpose of recording collections. Those which are based on the Prussian Instructions do not supply any provenance information, as it was not prescribed. The Commission for the History of Books and Libraries of the Croatian Library Association initiated in 1985 a project for a central catalogue of *cinquecentina*.

12 Katić, T. Op. cit., p. 1.

13 Jurić, Šime. Stara i rijetka građa. // Seminar Standariziranje kataložne obrade stare i rijetke tiskane građe. Zagreb, 10-11. prosinca 1992. / uredila Tinka Katić. Zagreb : Nacionalna i sveučilišna biblioteka, 1993. P. 3.

14 Those criteria were given in Fumagalli's Lexicon typographicum Italiae.

15 Ibid., p. 5.

During the project, 1,200 card catalogue records of books from the 16th century from all over Croatia were gathered in the National and University Library in Zagreb, but the project terminated before the union catalogue was established.[16]

In the late 1980s a working group in the National and University Library in Zagreb started preparations for the machine-readable cataloguing of old and rare books. Because of different structure of the users of old and rare material and their specific needs as well as the specific characteristics of old and rare printed material, it was decided to change bibliographic description for that kind of material, and to take new measures of protection related to availability of those books.[17] International standards, guidelines and thesauri were analysed and compared with national standards and codes,[18] as well as with characteristics of old and rare printed material. Afterwards, the recommendations were sent to the IFLA Permanent UNIMARC Committee about additions to UNIMARC for old printed material which concerned coded information, information about specific item (illustrations, form of content, etc.), notes pertaining to state of binding, to material-specific information, to copy in hand, provenance notes, etc.

In 1992 a seminar on standardisation of cataloguing of old and rare books was organised in the National and University Library in Zagreb. The proceedings from the seminar were printed in 1993.[19] The themes elaborated in the seminar established a proper basis for establishing a strategy in cataloguing of old and rare books. The articles covered theoretical issues on old and rare library material,[20] an overview of libraries holding old and rare printed material in Croatia[21], a detailed overview of standards, guidelines and manuals for cataloguing of old and rare printed material, and standards for machine-readable cataloguing of

16 Katić, T. Stara knjiga. Op. cit., pp. 2-3.

17 Katić, Tinka; Mirna Willer. Retrospektivna katalogizacija u Zbirci starih i rijetkih knjiga Nacionalne i sveučilišne biblioteke. // Vjesnik bibliotekara Hrvatske 36(1993), 3.

18 Croatian national cataloguing rules, 2nd edition of ISBD(A), UNIMARC for bibliographic data, UNIMARC Authorities format, Guidelines for authority and reference entries, Guidelines for subject authority and reference entries, thesauri for genre, paper, printing and publishing evidence, provenance evidence and type evidence, standard citation forms and manual for fingerprints. See Ibid, pp. 1-32.

19 Seminar Standariziranje kataložne obrade stare i rijetke tiskane građe. Zagreb, 10-11. prosinca 1992. / uredila Tinka Katić. Zagreb : Nacionalna i sveučilišna biblioteka, 1993.

20 Jurić, Š. Stara i rijetka građa. Op. cit., pp. 1-6.

21 Šimek, Sanja. Stanje u spomeničkim knjižnicama Republike Hrvatske s osvrtom na staru i rijetku tiskanu građu. // Seminar Standariziranje kataložne obrade stare i rijetke tiskane građe. Zagreb, 10-11. prosinca 1992. / uredila Tinka Katić. Zagreb : Nacionalna i sveučilišna biblioteka, 1993. Pp. 7-14.

old and rare printed material, including standards for bibliographic description,[22] as well as for authority format.[23] The participants concluded that "many valuable library holdings are not adequately stored, protected and catalogued, i.e., that they are neither accessed for use nor registered as part of the national and world heritage".[24] These articles are still guidelines for cataloguing of old and rare books.

In 1995, a Croatian translation of International Standard Bibliographic Description for Older Monographic Publications (Antiquarian)[25] was published, in 1997, a conversion into machine-readable form of the Bibliography of Croatian Latin Writers written by Šime Jurić was initiated[26] and Guidelines for using UNIMARC for older monographic publications were translated in 2000.[27]

The above-mentioned guidelines, translation of standards, seminars, articles and even books on bibliographic organisation of old and rare material ensured the proper basis for uniform catalogue records for old and rare material and for a union catalogue. Croatian cataloguing rules[28] based on ISBD and all the international standards and guidelines ensure compatibility of the records with international standards. What is missing, is an agreement between Croatian institutions holding old and rare material about several questions, including format of machine-readable cataloguing and exchange of records not only between Croatian

22 Willer, Mirna. Prikaz UNIMARC-a za bibliografsku obradu stare i rijetke tiskane građe. // Seminar Standariziranje kataložne obrade stare i rijetke tiskane građe. Zagreb, 10-11. prosinca 1992. / uredila Tinka Katić. Zagreb : Nacionalna i sveučilišna biblioteka, 1993. Pp. 107-134.

23 Radovčić, Slobodanka. Prikaz „UNIMARC-a za izradu pregledanih katažnih jedinica" u strojnočitljivoj obradi stare i rijetke tiskane građe. // Seminar Standariziranje katažne obrade stare i rijetke tiskane građe. Zagreb, 10-11. prosinca 1992. / uredila Tinka Katić. Zagreb : Nacionalna i sveučilišna biblioteka, 1993. Pp. 135-154.

24 Conclusions and recommendations of the seminar Standardization of cataloguing for old and rare printed material. // Seminar Standariziranje katažne obrade stare i rijetke tiskane građe. Zagreb, 10-11. prosinca 1992. / uredila Tinka Katić. Zagreb : Nacionalna i sveučilišna biblioteka, 1993. P.165.

25 ISBD(A) : Međunarodni standardni bibliografski opis starih omeđenih publikacija (antikvarnih) / preporučila Radna skupina za međunarodni standardni bibliografski opis starih omeđenih publikacija (antikvarnih) / prevela Tinka Katić. 1. hrv. prijevod 2. prerađenog izd. Zagreb : Hrvatsko bibliotekarsko društvo ; Nacionalna i sveučilišna biblioteka, 1995.

26 Jurić, Šime. Iugoslaviae scriptores Latini recentioris aetatis. Zagrabiae : Consilium Academiarum scientiarum et artium Iugoslaviae, 1968-1982. Sv. I/1-2, II, Dodatak.

27 Smjernice za upotrebu UNIMARC-a: stare omeđene publikacije (antikvarne) / prevela i hrvatske primjere izradila Tinka Katić. Zagreb : Nacionalna i sveučilišna knjižnica, 2000. [cited 2009-12-27]. Available from: http://www.nsk.hr/e-izdanja/430305116.htm

28 Verona, Eva. Pravilnik i priručnik za izradbu abecednih kataloga. Zagreb : Hrvatsko bibliotekarsko društvo, 1983-1986. Dio 1 : Odrednice i redalice. 2. izmijenjeno izd. 1986.; Dio 2 : Kataložni opis. 1983.

libraries, but also between Croatian and libraries in Europe and worldwide. The reasons for this situation will be explained later in this article.

All projects concerning the national written heritage, including those connected with digitisation, should be accompanied with a presentation of the written heritage through proper catalogues of old and rare material with records that should be extended with all the information concerning specificities of old and rare material (access points for place of publication, previous owners, genre, etc.). That extension is possible in UNIMARC format, which is officially a standard format in Croatia, and is applied in most records of old and rare books that are made in UNIMARC format in the union catalogue. The fact that UNIMARC was adjusted to those extensions and that librarians in Croatia working with old and rare books apply them while organising collections of old and rare books in several main libraries, ensured that the National and University Library in Zagreb actively collaborates not only in building of CERL's HPB database, but also in further adjusting of international standards for machine-readable cataloguing of old and rare books. The results of research in the field of extending catalogue records with additional information concerning specificities of old and rare books will be presented later in this article on the example of stressing provenance information in catalogue records. It is also important to consider adding digitised pictures to catalogue records. In her article about digitisation of old and rare books, Tinka Katić even stated that selected digitised parts of books, like pages with bookplates, tables, illustrations, etc., should be incorporated in bibliographic description as they present an added value to description, and a basis for scientific research.[29]

To conclude, it should be pointed out that a number of Croatian librarians, the Commission for the History of Book and Libraries of the Croatian Library Association, the National and University Library in Zagreb, universities and other libraries holding collections of old and rare books, together with many librarians in heritage collections have worked tirelessly on describing those collections. Šime Jurić, Franjo Šanjek and Vatroslav Frkin visited a number of monastery libraries in Croatia, and published many lists of monastery library collections, especially those of libraries of the Franciscan order. They are indefatigable recorders of monastery collections as well as

29 Katić, Tinka. Digitalizacija stare građe. // Vjesnik bibliotekara Hrvatske 46, 3-4(2003), 36.

advisers in matters of protecting the collections and registering them with the appropriate institutions.

As a result of the enthusiasm of many Croatian librarians, other collections were described. Some of the collections described are held in special departments in libraries, some are incorporated in the main collection of the library and extracted for the purpose of exhibition and then catalogued, and some are collections of old and rare books that are held in museums as a part of the legacy of some notable family or person. Some of the collections that pertain to writers, scientists, politicians and other notable men or families that are held in libraries and museums have been recorded and researched recently. Some researches were made for the purpose of exhibitions that are frequently accompanied by printed catalogues of exhibits. Still there are lots of unrecorded collections. Later in this article provenance information in some of those catalogues will be examined.

A programme for protection and conservation of the Croatian written heritage conducted by the National and University Library in Zagreb, as well as several projects to organise monastery libraries conducted by departments of library and information sciences, and several research and special libraries partly pave the way for a collective Croatian programme of registering, protecting and organising of collections of old and rare books. But it is necessary to integrate all those separate projects under the joint umbrella of national standards and guidelines for collection management.

Provenance information in catalogue records in Croatia

When the history of books introduced the research of provenance information as one of its methodologies, previous owners started to be reconstructed from data that could be found in books. Tony Curwen and Gunilla Jonsson listed some of them: "A brief list would comprise names, coats of arms, dedications, initials, dates, prices, number or codes, booksellers' signatures, margin notes, bindings, etc."[30] Studies made in this field help in reconstruction of national, regional or one's own history. Every book started to tell two parallel stories, a story about its content, and a story about the history of its printers, editors, do-

30 Curven, Tony; Gunilla Jonsson. Provenance and the itinerary of the book : recording provenance data in on-line catalogues. // Imprints and owners : recording the cultural geography of Europe : papers presented on 10 November 2006 at the CERL Seminar hosted by the National Széchényi Library, Budapest / edited by David Shaw. London : Consortium of European Research Libraries, 2007., P. 32

nors and previous owners. That is why catalogue records were extended to describe such information, and access points for previous owners showed up. In the past, provenance information was recorded in catalogue records occasionally, mostly in note fields.

Libraries of eminent writers, scientists, politicians and other notable men or families that are held in heritage institutions as donations or legacies are almost always rich sources of information about social history of the city, region or a wider area. They are sometimes scattered throughout the collections, and the possibility of reconstructing those important collections can be very tiny. As this information is exceptionally important to all historians, their demands toward the catalogue initiated the recording of provenance information in catalogue records. They wanted to find provenance information concealed in these books as fast as possible and catalogue had to help them by adding that information not just in note fields, but also as access points. Recording this information in catalogue records can help not only in reconstructing those libraries, but in reconstructing history of families, cities, regions or countries.

With the introduction of the IFLA's UNIMARC format to Croatian libraries together with the participation of eminent Croatian librarians, who specialised in cataloguing of old and rare books, in international projects of applying UNIMARC to the description of old and rare books, provenance information started to attract Croatian librarians and they started to research them. The catalogue records at the end of the 20th century have been enriched with provenance information in note fields, as well as in access points. Simultaneously, printed catalogues and bibliographies that appeared in the last few decades of the 20th century only rarely omit provenance information in note fields.

This was recognised by historians who started to read the note fields, reconstruct private libraries and complete gaps in social history with information gathered in this way. In her bibliography of printing in Dalmatia,[31] Jelena Lakuš indicates that the reconstruction and examination of family libraries can lead to a clear idea about the attitude towards reading and books. As a historian of the book, she looked at the records she made for her bibliography as a resource for historical research. Provenance information is opening a new field for historical research in library and information sciences.

31 Lakuš, Jelena. Izdavačka i tiskarska djelatnost na dalmatinskom prostoru (Zadar, Split i Dubrovnik) u prvoj polovici 19. stoljeća (1815-1850) : bibliografija monografskih i serijskih publikacija – građa. Split : Književni krug, 2005.

Provenance information started to be very interesting in museums, too. Those that hold collections of books of notable men or families started to print catalogues of these collections. The records are often supplied with provenance information, and in introduction to printed catalogues there are sometimes articles about previous owners reconstructed from the bookplates.[32] Some of those catalogues are examined in the research the results of which are shown in this article.

But those projects are still very rare, although they can show a trend in recording provenance information and it is hoped that this issue will be followed in other projects.

An examination of the provenance situation in Croatian catalogues of heritage collections was made in order to show the state of the art in recording provenance information in Croatia. The results are expected to show the trends in recording this information, as well as the need for following good models in cataloguing of old and rare books and its specificities, like recording copy specific data.

Examination of the provenance situation including electronic resources and traditional lists

An examination of the provenance situation in Croatian catalogues included card catalogues in three big libraries (National and University Library in Zagreb, Library of the Croatian Academy of Sciences and Arts, and Metropolitan Library in Zagreb), nineteen catalogues printed to accompany exhibitions of old and rare books, ten printed catalogues of incunabula collections in particular libraries, six printed catalogues of collections of old and rare books in ecclesiastical institutions, two printed catalogues of research and city libraries, three printed catalogues of collections that are located in museums, and online catalogues of ten general research libraries in Croatia that hold collections of old and rare books: National and University Library in Zagreb, Library of the Croatian Academy of Sciences and Arts, university libraries in Rijeka, Split, Zadar and Pula, Juraj Habdelić Library of the Jesuit Faculty of Philosophy in Zagreb, research libraries in Zadar and

32 Zglav-Martinac, Helga. Zbirka starih i rijetkih knjiga Muzeja grada Splita = The Collection of Old and Rare Books of the Split City Museum. Split : Muzej grada, 2009.; Knjižnica splitske obitelji Martinis-Marchi : katalog izložbe / [urednik izložbe i kataloga Arsen Duplančić]. Split : Arheološki muzej, 2001.; Bošnjaković, Renata. Knjižnica Pejačević u Našicama : katalog izložbe : Zavičajni muzej Našice, studeni/prosinac 2003. / Renata Bošnjaković ; [fotografije i likovni prilozi Zvonko Pinter... [et al.]. Našice : Zavičajni muzej, 2003.

Dubrovnik, and the City and University Library in Osijek. The examined online catalogues are mostly those that are part of the union catalogue of Croatian libraries. The records were examined for provenance information, and no other element of description was examined. The catalogues were examined by random searching for records for old and rare books. Approximately 100 records for the books printed before 1830 were examined in each online catalogue.

The examination showed that provenance information was not recorded in card catalogues in Croatian libraries, as the Prussian Instructions do not prescribe putting this information in the records. Information about previous owners occasionally appears in the card catalogue in the Metropolitan Library, but only when a librarian assumed that the information was important. Nevertheless, information about a specific binding (*Metropolitan binding*) that can be used as very precise provenance information was never provided in card catalogues.

A search in printed catalogues showed that records in most printed catalogues of incunabula (89%) provide provenance information, mainly signatures of previous owners on the title page. Printed catalogues of other old and rare material in ecclesiastical institutions are different. Half of the examined catalogues of that group have provenance information in their records, while the other half do not. Printed catalogues that describe collections in research or public libraries and are published as separate books have very rich provenance notes in the records. They are usually accompanied with introductions in which their authors explain the history of the collection, including previous owners. Museum libraries are very interesting. The examination showed that librarians in those libraries often note provenance information in catalogue records very precisely. Every catalogue examined has such notes. The biggest group of printed catalogues of old and rare books are those that are printed to accompany exhibitions of old and rare material. Nineteen catalogues were examined, seven that accompanied exhibitions in ecclesiastical institutions (37%), and twelve that accompanied exhibitions in other institutions (63%). The examination showed that provenance information is present in nine catalogues (47%), three are made according to provenance criteria so the notes were not necessary (16%), in two of them these notes are only occasionally present (11%), one of them is just a list of titles with no other information (5%), while four of them do not supply any provenance information (21%). Among the group of twelve printed catalogues that accompanied exhibitions in institutions other than the ecclesiastical, there are six catalogues made in autonomous libraries, and six in museum libraries. It is interesting that those from museum libraries usually have rich provenance information, and are often made according to provenance criteria. On the other hand, catalogues from the exhibitions in autonomous libraries are rarely made by the provenance criteria, and sometimes omit provenance information. All of the printed catalogues of the collections in ecclesiastical institutions have some kind of provenance information, as opposed to other catalogues that sometimes omit this information (44%).

Descriptions in exhibition catalogues are mainly provided according to the international standard bibliographic description – ISBD(A). As the records are mostly made by librarians, they contain provenance information in note fields. It is mainly a note about bookplates written on the title page.

A research of online catalogues of ten general research libraries in Croatia[33] showed that six of them (60%) put provenance information in a note field. It is mainly information about a bookplate or a stamp of other libraries on the title page. Access points for previous owners, as well as for printers are present in those records. In two libraries (20%) this information occurs only occasionally, and its use is not standardised. When information about previous owners is present, in most cases there are no access points for them. In two libraries (20%) this information is never a part of a catalogue record.

The research showed that provenance information is more visible in libraries that use UNIMARC format, ISBD(A) and *Guidelines for using UNIMARC for older monographic publications* that were translated into Croatian and contain the elements of data required for the description of older monographic publications, including all kinds of provenance information. In those guidelines to librarians, it is recommended to make an access point for every person connected with the specific item, including previous owners. The recommendation was followed in most institutions holding collections of old and rare books that were a part of the union catalogue programme. Records in the union catalogue of Croatian libraries are also made according to the Guidelines and are standardised, and extended with access points for previous owners, printers, donors, etc., and specific information about copy in hand. The

33 The National and University Library in Zagreb, Library of the Academy of Sciences and Arts in Zagreb, university libraries in Osijek, Pula, Rijeka, Split and Zadar, research libraries in Dubrovnik and Zadar, and Juraj Habdelić Library of the Jesuit Faculty of Philosophy in Zagreb.

possibility of exchange of the records was used, and the records were mostly supplied with information about copy in hand in every institution that downloaded a record from the union catalogue.

When the National and University Library in Zagreb, which started and maintained the programme of the union catalogue of Croatian libraries, changed the CROLIST (library system) for Endeavour's Voyager and the format from UNIMARC to MARC 21, the exchange of the records between the National Library and other libraries became limited. Downloading of the records is still possible between the libraries that have continued to use CROLIST, but the National and University Library in Zagreb does not maintain the union catalogue which is nowadays maintained by the libraries in the CROLIST. Those libraries can download the records made in National and University Library in Zagreb (Voyager) and can exchange records between themselves, but Voyager does not use the downloading possibilities of the records made in the Croatian union catalogue. Additionally, there are some library systems in Croatian libraries that can download records from the union catalogue, as well as from the National and University Library in Zagreb, but because of the limitations of their softwares they cannot participate in the building of a union catalogue. All those problems disable the building of a union catalogue that would contain records from all of the Croatian libraries. If the union catalogue of Croatian libraries were still active, today it would be possible to reconstruct many private libraries that are scattered in libraries all over Croatia by access points for previous owners such as persons, families or institutions. The reconstruction of scattered private libraries has become almost impossible.

Illustrative information about specific collections or examples of ownership

The National and University Library in Zagreb

The National and University Library in Zagreb[34] was founded by merging two libraries: the Library of the Law Academy, and the National Museum Library. The books in the Library of Law Academy were gathered over several centuries, and in the National Museum Library

34 Today's National and University Library in Zagreb changed its name several times. In this article these versions of its name, used during a particular period of time, are used accordingly: Royal Academy Library, Academy Library, University Library, and finally National and University Library in Zagreb.

the books were merged during the 19th century.[35] Before the opening of the University in Zagreb, the Library of the Juridical Academy was the only public library in Zagreb and had 23,920 volumes. Additionally, a considerable number of donations were given to it.[36] Before the merger, Matija Smodek, a librarian in the National Museum Library, made an alphabetic catalogue according to which that library held more than 16,000 items.[37]

Lots of donations of books were given to the National Library during the four centuries of its existence. Branko Tomečak has listed some of them,[38] such as a donation from the humanist Joannes Sambucus (1531-1584), a doctor and a historian, who donated books to the Jesuit *collegium* whose collection later became a part of the National Library, in 1614.[39] As presumed, the rest of his library is scattered in many libraries in Hungary and in Austria. Unfortunately, in the catalogue of the National and University Library in Zagreb there are no catalogue records with searchable information about Sambucus as previous owner.

A very important donation came into the Royal Academy Library in 1777. The donor was Baltazar Adam Krčelić (1715-1778). His library became a part of the Academy Library in 1778 when a list of 677 donated books and 50 manuscripts was composed.[40] But, by the end of the 18th century, the Academy Library had to deliver a part of this collection to the Pest Library (Hungary). Since a part of that library was lost, it is assumed that the National and University Library in Zagreb now has about 400 books from this private collection. The collection is separated from the others, but the research in the WebPAC of the National and University Library in Zagreb showed that there are no records with access points made for this previous owner in the catalogue.

In 1818, Countess Eleonora Patačić (1770-1834) donated the private library (2,709 items) of her family to the Academy Library. A significant number of these books bear a bookplate and/or a charac-

35 Sečić, Dora. Kraljevska i sveučilišna knjižnica u Zagrebu : razvoj i djelovanje srednjoeuropske knjižnice od 1874. do 1918. Zagreb : Nacionalna i sveučilišna knjižnica u Zagrebu ; Lokve : Naklada Benja, 2007. P. 9.

36 Ibid., p. 97.

37 Ibid., p. 104.

38 Tomečak, Branko. Ostavštine – darovi u knjižničnom fondu. // Nacionalna i sveučilišna knjižnica u Zagrebu : 1607.-2007. : u povodu 400. Obljetnice. Zagreb : Nacionalna i sveučilišna knjižnica, 2007. Pp. 35-48.

39 Ibid., p. 66.

40 Ibid., p. 70.

teristic call number of the Patačić family.[41] Lists of those books were made in 1818, but a search in the WebPAC of the National and University Library in Zagreb showed that there are no catalogue records with information about this previous owner. The other important donation came also in 1818. It is the donation of Bishop Maksimilijan Vrhovac (1752-1827). He donated about 825 items, and a list was made afterwards.[42] The collection is separated from the others, but a search in the WebPAC of the National and University Library in Zagreb again showed that there are no catalogue records with access points for him as a previous owner.

The Collection of Manuscripts and Rare Books in the National and University Library in Zagreb was founded as a separate department in the late 19th century, after purchasing two important private libraries. In 1894 the University Library bought the private library of Ljudevit Gaj, the leader of Croatian National Movement, and his family, including their collection of approximately 16,000 volumes of books and more than 700 manuscripts. In 1892, a precious library of the Civil Governor Nikola Zrinski was purchased, with about 530 volumes of books and 26 manuscripts. It was then that Ivan Kostrenčić, director of the University Library, suggested that the Government should open a new department for old and rare books with a reading room, and should ensure a special catalogue of manuscripts including correspondence pertaining to Croatian history, a special catalogue of old Croatian and Serbian books printed until 1835.[43] The government accepted the proposal and in 1895 Velimir Deželić and Stjepan Ortner started to work in the University Library on cataloguing of old books and establishing the department of old and rare books. At the same time, Deželić started to work on the Croatian bibliography. Deželić was especially interested in the description of incunabula. He examined the way those early prints were catalogued in other European countries and made a printed catalogue of incunabula in the University Library in Zagreb.[44] After a detailed introduction in which he described the characteristics of the incunabula that are important for cataloguing, he listed them with very rich records. He provided information about bibliographic references, and enhanced it with further information about copy in

41 Ibid., p. 71.
42 Ibid., p. 75.
43 Sečić, D. Op. cit., p. 107.
44 Deželić, Velimir. Inkunabule (prvotisci) Zagrebačke sveučilišne biblioteke. U Zagrebu : Tisak C. Albrechta, 1902.

hand. It was enhanced by Antun Einsle who wrote guidelines for cataloguing of early prints in which he stated that it is important to describe the incunabula as a representative of the edition, but at the same time to look at the copy in hand and describe its unique attributes.[45] According to those recommendations, Deželić provided very rich provenance information where possible. For the sake of illustration here is one example: "Ova knjiga bila je vlastništvo Josipa Poljaka svećenika dieceze zagrebačke još god. 1781. Zatim je prešla u posjed Adama Baričevića, a iza toga je bila svojina knjižnice Gajeve."[46]

In 1915 Velimir Deželić wrote Guidelines for an alphabetic catalogue, an edited translation of the Prussian Instructions.[47] Catalogue records written according to the Prussian Instructions were very short, with only basic information. That is why old card catalogues did not contain information about previous owners, translators, editors, marginal notes in books, etc.

While Eva Verona, a very active, worldwide known participant in the creation of the ISBD standard, and author of Croatian national cataloguing rules that have been applied until now in most of the South European countries, worked in National and University Library in Zagreb, the card catalogues were made according to the ISBD after the 1960s. In 1993, Mirna Willer and Tinka Katić stated that the whole collection of the Department of Manuscripts and Rare Books in the National and University Library in Zagreb was catalogued and therefore available to public through different kinds of printed card catalogues.[48] However, they pointed out that enhanced users' interest in the national heritage should force the librarians to make those collections more available to public, and to provide the users with more information about the collections and specific items in them.[49] One of the problems with catalogues in the National and University Library in Zagreb was the fact that the old card catalogues were made according to different rules and different methods of searching them have to be applied.[50]

45 Einsle, Anton. Die incunabel-bibliographie. Wien : Verlag des Oesterr, 1888.
46 "This book was owned by Josip Poljak, a priest of the diocese of Zagreb in the year of 1781. After that the owner was Adam Baričević, and finally it was owned by Gaj."
47 Sečić, D. Op. cit., p. 214.
48 Katić, T.; M. Willer. Op. cit., pp. 1-32.
49 Ibid., p. 2.
50 The alphabetic catalogue was made according to the Prussian Instructions, and is searchable only if the author or the title is known, while a systematic catalogue has been maintained only from the year 1911, and is searchable according to the old classification scheme. For more information see Katić, T.; M. Willer. Op. cit.

As in 1991 the CROLIST computer system which is based on UNIMARC bibliographic and authorities formats was implemented in the National and University Library in Zagreb, the cataloguing of collections of old and rare books and building of union catalogue of Croatian libraries started in the National and University Library in Zagreb. In the National and University Library in Zagreb several retrospective activities were conducted simultaneously. Records for Croatian literature and history books printed until the year 1835 were converted from the card catalogue, Croatian books from the 16th century were recatalogued according to the ISBD(A) rules, a library of governor Tomašić was catalogued according the ISBD(M) rules and records from the bibliography of Croatian Latin writers were catalogued according the Croatian version of the Prussian Instructions and accompanied by coded data mandatory for machine-readable records, with entries for printers, imprint places, etc. The result was a varying quality of records of old and rare books in the online catalogue.[51]

The implementation of UNIMARC authorities format, and the enriched bibliographic format with content designators for old and rare material,[52] enabled the recording of provenance information which was included in the catalogue records of the National and University Library in Zagreb and the union catalogue of Croatian libraries. The first part of the collection that was catalogued in a machine-readable format included the books from the 16th century. As the project included building of an authority database, the catalogue allowed searching the collection also by previous owners, donors, etc.[53]

When the National and University Library in Zagreb, that started the programme of the union catalogue of Croatian libraries, changed the format of its catalogue to MARC 21, the access points for previous owners were kept, but the note fields with the information about previous owners are not as visible as they used to be. Sometimes this could confuse the user, but research should be conducted in order to show a level of users' satisfaction with the change of a format. That research should encompass the specific users of those collections and their specific needs. At the same time, the National and University Library in Zagreb, as the main library in Croatia, should open a discussion about a union catalogue of Croatian libraries in order to ensure sharing of records for old and rare books among Croatian libraries.

51 Katić, T. Stara knjiga. Op. cit., p. 6.
52 Katic, T.; M. Willer. Op. cit., p. 15.
53 Ibid.

Metropolitan Library

The Metropolitan Library in Zagreb is considered to be one of the oldest libraries in Croatia and one of the most valuable European libraries. It was probably founded in the same year as the Bishopric in Zagreb, around 1094, and was a part of the cathedral's treasury.[54] An enlargement of the library collection caused the need for its separation from the treasury. From 1916 to 1995 it was placed in the building of the National and University Library in Zagreb. When the National Library moved to the new building in 1995, the Metropolitan Library remained in the old building, now the house of the Croatian State Archives in Zagreb.

The library holds a very rich collection of incunabula (252) together with a valuable collection of geographic material, an important private collection of a Slovenian intellectual J.W. Valvasor, etc. This library represents an extremely important part of Croatian cultural and intellectual history.

One of a few old card catalogues in the Metropolitan Library[55] was made by clergyman Ivančan at the beginning of 20th century. Each card is organised according to numbers written in separate lines. Each number indicates a separate data element. One is reserved for the author, two for the title, etc. The last number is sixteen and it is reserved for provenance information. It is used only occasionally, obviously only when provenance information was important according to the cataloguer's opinion. This card catalogue is a rare example of recording provenance information in card catalogues written before 1995.

The head of the Metropolitan Library, Vladimir Magić, published a catalogue of books printed in the 16th century that are part of the collection.[56] The records in this catalogue are very detailed and supply all kind of provenance information, signatures of previous owners, stamps and even book binding characteristics that can be used as provenance information. Unfortunately, a catalogue is not available online at the moment. The second big project conducted by Vladimir Magić, and soon to be finished, is a printed catalogue of incunabula in that library. The records prepared for that catalogue are as detailed as in the previous one. It is expected to be also available through the WebPAC.

54 Jurić, Šime. Inkunabule Metropolitanske knjižnice. // Vjesnik bibliotekara Hrvatske 8, 3-4(1962), 107-131.

55 Ibid., p. 108.

56 Magić, Vladimir. Katalog knjiga XVI. st. u Metropolitanskoj knjižici u Zagrebu. Zagreb : Hrvatski državni arhiv, 2005.

Library of the Croatian Academy of Sciences and Arts

The library of the Croatian Academy of Sciences and Arts is one of the biggest libraries in Croatia, with a considerable collection of old and rare books. Owing to the very important place of the Croatian Academy in Croatian cultural and intellectual history, there were lots of donors who donated their private libraries, or parts of them, to this library. One of the biggest donors was Ivan Kukuljević Sakcinski, and there are a number of books with his bookplate in the collection of old and rare books, but also scattered through the main collection. As the old card catalogue does not provide any provenance information and there is no list of donated books, today bookplates are the only method of tracing his collection. The same applies to other donations.

A search in WebPAC of this library (based on the UNIMARC format) showed that provenance information is recorded. A record for each book with bookplates or other provenance information has a note field, as well as access points for previous owners. At the end of the process of cataloguing the whole collection in machine-readable format, it is going to be possible to reconstruct virtual collections of donations of important noblemen and their families.

The project European Library Heritage Protection in the University Library in Rijeka – Creation of Historical Collection[57]

The project is being conducted by the University Library in Rijeka. The main goal is to catalogue the historical collection of that library, and to make it available to the public through exhibitions, printed catalogues and WebPAC. At the same time, the project includes digitisation of the collection. As a first step, digitised images of title pages are added to catalogue records. Records made during this project supply users with provenance information, both in note fields and as access points.

A collection of old and rare books of the Split City Museum[58]

This museum holds old and rare books that belonged to some very important men and families of Split. The collection is catalogued and records contain very precise note fields, including those concerning the provenance of books and collections. A printed catalogue was published

57 Očuvanje europske knjižnične baštine u Sveučilišnoj knjižnici Rijeka [cited 2010-02-25]. Available at: http://www.svkri.hr/povijesnazbirka/ciljeviprojekta.html

58 Zglav-Martinac, Helga. Zbirka starih i rijetkih knjiga Muzeja grada Splita. Split : Muzej grada Splita, 2009.

in 2009 but there is no available online catalogue. The printed catalogue is accompanied by several articles about the collection. In the article about the previous owners of books from the collection of Capogrosso-Kavanjin family Arsen Duplančić explains how the ownership marks on books and inventories can show us the history of the families and of the city. By examining the collection of the Capogrosso-Kavanjin family, he examines the interests and intellectual achievement of the members of that family. At the same time, he monitors the movement of books from one family to another. Through inscriptions, he reconstructed some connections of people at that time.[59] This significant catalogue is a first class source for a lot of research in the history of the book and cultural history.

Library of the Martinis-Marchi family from Split[60]

A very detailed printed catalogue of the library of the Martinis-Marchi family from Split was made in the Archaeological Museum in Split, together with colleagues from other institutions in Split that hold books belonging to that collection. In the articles written as the introduction in the catalogue, the authors described the collection of those books very precisely, including the methodology of tracing those books throughout collections of several Split libraries. The methodology included detecting of characteristic ownership marks on books belonging to that family (bookplates, signatures of several members of the family, bindings, marginal notes). Detailed description was made with the help of librarians from the University Library in Split.[61]

Library of the Pejačević family, Našice

A printed catalogue of the exhibition about the Pejačević Library in Našice[62] is also an example of a collection that has been examined and described in great detail. The library of the notable family Pejačević is held in the Regional Museum in Našice. The collection was used by a few generations of the Pejačević family, and books bear marks of al-

59 Duplančić, Arsen. Vlasnici knjiga iz knjižnice Obitelji Capogrosso-Kavanjin u Muzeju grada Splita. // Zbirka starih i rijetkih knjiga Muzeja grada Splita / Helga Zglav-Martinac. Split : Muzej grada Splita, 2009. Pp. 57-112.

60 Knjižnica splitske obitelji Martinis-Marchi : katalog izložbe. Split : Arheološki muzej, 2001.

61 Kovačić, Mihaela. Katalog sačuvanih knjiga i rukopisa knjižnice Martinis-Marchi. // Knjižnica splitske obitelji Martinis-Marchi : katalog izložbe. Split : Arheološki muzej, 2001. Pp. 131-222.

62 Bošnjaković, Renata. Knjižnica Pejačević u Našicama : katalog izložbe. Našice : Zavičajni muzej Našice, 2003.

most each member. Renata Bošnjaković examined the collection, and accompanied the catalogue with information about the history of the Pejačević family, as well as the history of their library, and the social history that could be read from their library. Among other things, she described the provenance marks from the books, such as stamps and signatures, which she described in detail. The catalogue records are very rich in note fields, providing lots of provenance information.

Conclusion

According to research carried out by the National and University Library in Zagreb in 1992, there are 93 notable heritage libraries in Croatia, but 75 % of libraries need to be organised according to library rules. Among them there are majority of monastery libraries which have no catalogue at all or have a catalogue of only a part of their collection. There are some very good examples of registering, describing and protecting some of the collections, and the National and University Library in Zagreb and other institutions are separately working on recording those collections, but it is extremely important to link these efforts, and to conduct a joint programme of recording and preserving those collections the national level.

An extended bibliographic description for old and rare books with additional elements, like provenance information, should be better promoted in libraries that have such collections. The research showed that records made in online catalogues, especially those made in UNIMARC format, have all the prerequisites to mark all the provenance information and to be searchable according to provenance criteria. Simultaneously, the problem of a union catalogue should be solved as soon as possible in order to enhance the exchange of records. The records made in the national, and some university and research libraries in UNIMARC format are very detailed and have access points for previous owners. The possibility of exchanging records among the libraries, and recording access points for previous owners in all the records in a future union catalogue, will allow the creation of virtual collections of former noblemen, monasteries, families, etc. The research of provenance information in books could be very helpful in drawing the history of those men, including very interesting and important part of social history. Searchable access points pertaining to the provenance information in catalogue records, and a union catalogue of such collections could help in reconstructing the whole of those important libraries. The main problem with the heritage collections in Croatia is that there are a very big number of unrecorded collections. Collections that are recorded are parts of separate projects and programmes, and should be linked in order to enable presentation and research of the entire Croatian written heritage. An agreement on a union catalogue, formats and softwares used for cataloguing on the national level should enable the exchange of records between libraries as well as building of the national written heritage data base. The prerequisites for searching that data base by provenance criteria are made, so the creation of the virtual collections of books with the same previous owners that are scattered throughout Croatian libraries will be possible and the historians will be able to read the social history of Croatia and its regions and families with the help of catalogue records.

References

Aparac Gazivoda, Tatjana. Organizacija knjižničnog poslovanja u spomeničkim knjižnicama // Vijesti Društva bibliotekara Istre 10, 12(1993), 2-7.

Bošnjaković, Renata. Knjižnica Pejačević u Našicama : katalog izložbe. Našice : Zavičajni muzej Našice, 2003.

Curven, Tony, Gunilla Jonsson. Provenance and the itinerary of the book : recording provenance data in on-line catalogues. // Imprints and owners: recording the cultural geography of Europe : papers presented on 10 November 2006 at the CERL Seminar hosted by the National Széchényi Library, Budapest / edited by David Shaw. London : Consortium of European Research Libraries, 2007.

Deželić, Velimir. Inkunabule (prvotisci) Zagrebačke sveučilišne biblioteke. U Zagrebu : Tisak C. Albrechta, 1902.

Duplančić, Arsen. Vlasnici knjiga iz knjižnice Obitelji Capogrosso-Kavanjin u Muzeju grada Splita. // Zglav-Martinac, Helga. Zbirka starih i rijetkih knjiga Muzeja grada Splita. Split : Muzej grada Splita, 2009. Pp. 57-112.

ISBD(A) : Međunarodni standardni bibliografski opis starih omeđenih publikacija (antikvarnih) / preporučila Radna skupina za međunarodni standardni bibliografski opis starih omeđenih publikacija (antikvarnih) / prevela Tinka Katić. 1. hrv. prijevod 2. prerađenog izd. Zagreb : Hrvatsko bibliotekarsko društvo ; Nacionalna i sveučilišna biblioteka, 1995.

Jurić, Šime. Inkunabule Metropolitanske knjižnice. // Vjesnik bibliotekara Hrvatske 8, 3-4(1962), 107-131.

Jurić, Šime. Iugoslaviae scriptores Latini recentioris aetatis. Zagrabiae : Consilium Academiarum scientiarum et artium Iugoslaviae, 1968-1982. Sv. I/1-2, II, Dodatak.

Katić, Tinka. Stara knjiga : bibliografska organizacija informacija. Zagreb : Hrvatsko knjižničarsko društvo, 2007.

Katić, Tinka. Primjena formata UNIMARC pri katalogiziranju starih knjiga: praksa Nacionalne i sveučilišne knjižnice u Zagrebu. // Vjesnik bibliotekara hrvatske 39, 3-4(1996), 31-50.

Katić, Tinka. Digitalizacija stare građe. // Vjesnik bibliotekara hrvatske 46, 3-4(2003), 33-47.

Katić, Tinka; Mihaela Kovačić. Komisija za povijest knjige i knjižnica HKD-a : posrednik u standardizaciji obrade, prezentacija i očuavanja stare i rijetke tiskane građe. // 35. Skupština Hrvatskoga knjižničarskog društva : Knjižnice – riznice pisane i digitalne baštine : radni materijali. Zagreb : Hrvatsko knjižničarsko društvo, 2006. Pp. 52-54.

Katić, Tinka; Mirna Willer. Retrospektivna katalogizacija u Zbirci starih i rijetkih knjiga Nacionalne i sveučilišne biblioteke. // Vjesnik bibliotekara Hrvatske 36, 1-4(1993), 1-32.

Knjižnica splitske obitelji Martinis-Marchi : katalog izložbe. Split : Arheološki muzej, 2001.

Kovačić, Mihaela. Katalog sačuvanih knjiga i rukopisa knjižnice Martinis-Marchi. // Knjižnica splitske obitelji Martinis-Marchi : katalog izložbe. Split : Arheološki muzej, 2001. Pp. 131-222.

Lakuš, Jelena. Izdavačka i tiskarska djelatnost na dalmatinskom prostoru (Zadar, Split i Dubrovnik) u prvoj polovici 19. Stoljeća (1815-1850) : bibliografija monografskih i serijskih publikacija – građa. Split : Književni krug, 2005.

Sečić, Dora. Kraljevska i sveučilišna knjižnica u Zagrebu : razvoj i djelovanje srednjoeuropske knjižnice od 1874. do 1918. Zagreb : Nacionalna i sveučilišna knjižnica u Zagrebu ; Lokve : Naklada Benja, 2007.

Seminar Standariziranje kataložne obrade stare i rijetke tiskane građe. Zagreb, 10-11. prosinca 1992. / uredila Tinka Katić. Zagreb : Nacionalna i sveučilišna biblioteka, 1993.

Smjernice za upotrebu UNIMARC-a za stare omeđene publikacije (antikvarne) / prevela i hrvatske primjere izradila Tinka Katić. Zagreb : Nacionalna i sveučilišna knjižnica, 2006.

Šimek, Sanja. Analiza spomeničkih knjižnica u Hrvatskoj – stanje u 1992. godini. // Vijesti Društva bibliotekara Istre 10, 12(1993), 8-11.

Tomečak, Branko. Ostavštine - darovi u knjižničnom fondu // Nacionalna i sveučilišna knjižnica u Zagrebu : 1607.-2007. : u povodu 400. obljetnice. Zagreb : Nacionalna i sveučilišna knjižnica, 2007. Pp. 35-48.

Zglav-Martinac, Helga. Zbirka starih i rijetkih knjiga Muzeja grada Splita. Split : Muzej grada Splita, 2009.

A list of printed catalogues of old and rare books analysed in this article

Catalogues of incunabula

Deželić, Velimir. Inkunabule (prvotisci) Zagrebačke sveučilišne biblioteke. U Zagrebu : Tisak C. Albrechta (Jos. Witasek), 1902.

Jurić, Šime: Inkunabule Metropolitanske knjižnice // Vjesnik bibliotekara Hrvatske 8, 3-4(1962), 107-131.

Jurić, Šime. Inkunabule u zadarskim knjižnicama. Zadar : Društvo bibliotekara ; Zagreb : Nacionalna i sveučilišna biblioteka, 1985.

Katalog inkunabula u fondu Naučne biblioteke u Zadru / [katalog priredili: Pavao Galić, Mate Mihaljević ; kataložni opis inkunabula: Šime Jurić ; likovno i grfičko uređenje kataloga: Antun Travirka]. Zadar : Naučna biblioteka, 1986.

Jurić, Šime. Inkunabule u isusovačkim knjižnicama u Hrvatskoj. // Vrela i prinosi 18(1990/91), 88-131.

Jurić, Šime. Katalozi inkunabula crkvenih ustanova u Hrvatskoj : I. Zbirka inkunabula Metropolitanske knjižnice u Zagrebu. // Croatica Christiana periodica 8, 13(1984), 154-215.

Jurić, Šime; Franjo Šanjek. Katalozi inkunabula crkvenih ustanova u Hrvatskoj : II. Zbirka inkunabula dominikanskih knjižnica u Hrvatskoj. // Croatica Christiana periodica 9, 15(1985), 123-199.

Jurić, Šime; Vatroslav Frkin. Katalozi inkunabula crkvenih ustanova u Hrvatskoj : III. Zbirka inkunabula u knjižnicama Hrvatske franjevačke provincije sv. Ćirila i Metoda. // Croatica Christiana periodica 11, 20(1987), 132-135.

Jurić, Šime; Vatroslav Frkin. Katalozi inkunabula crkvenih ustanova u Hrvatskoj : IV. Zbirka inkunabula u knjižnicama franjevačke Provincije sv. Jeronima. // Croatica Christiana periodica 15, 27(1991), 207-235.

Jurić, Šime ; Vatroslav Frkin. Katalozi inkunabula crkvenih ustanova u Hrvatskoj : V. Zbirka inkunabula Hrvatske provincije franjevaca konventualaca sv. Jeronima. // Croatica Christiana periodica 22, 42(1998), 178-211.

Printed catalogues of ecclesiastical institutions

Bibliotheca Valvasoriana : katalog knjižnice Janeza Vajkarda Valvasorja / kataloška obdelava Božena Kukolja ; priredba, predgovor, indeks Vladimir Magić ; [prevod v slovenščino, hrvaščino, nemščino, angleščino Ksenija Kosem ... [et al]. ; fotografije Boris Gaberščik ; vodja projekta in urednik Lojze Gostiša]. Ljubljana : Valvasorjev odbor pri Slovenski akademiji znanosti in umetnosti ; Zagreb : Nacionalna i sveučilišna knjižnica, 1995.

Frkin, Vatroslav. Hrvatske rijetke knjige u Knjižnici Franjevačkog samostana u Osijeku. // Vjesnik HAZU 2, 1-3(1993), 75-99. Prilog: Popis hrvatskih rijetkih knjiga iz 17. i 18. stoljeća u Knjižnici Franjevačkog samostana u Osijeku.

Frkin, Vatroslav. Rijetke knjige franjevačkog samostana u Vukovaru. // Vjesnik HAZU 5, 1-3(1996), 67-82.

Frkin, Vatroslav ; Miljenko Holzleitner. Bibliografija knjiga hrvatskih autora u knjižnicama Hrvatske franjevačke provincije sv. Ćirila i Metoda : 1495.-1850. Zagreb : Hrvatska akademija znanosti i umjetnosti : Hrvatska franjevačka provincija sv. Ćirila i Metoda, 2008.

Katalog knjiga tiskanih u XVI. stoljeću : Historijski arhiv u Zadru, Samostan sv. Marije u Zadru, Samostan sv. Mihovila u Zadru, Stolni kaptol zadarski, Samostan sv. Pavla na Školjiću kod Preka / skupili, priredili i kazala sastavili Pavao Galić, Bosiljka Hercig. Zadar : Historijski arhiv : Stolni kaptol zadarski, 1989.

Magić, Vladimir. Katalog knjiga XVI. stoljeća u Metropolitanskoj knjižnici u Zagrebu. Zagreb : Hrvatski državni arhiv, 2005.

Public, university and research libraries' catalogues

Katalog knjiga tiskanih u XVII. stoljeću, koje se čuvaju u zadarskoj Znanstvenoj knjižnici : knjiga 1 : 1601.-1650. / obradila Andriana Jusup. Zadar : Znanstvena knjižnica, 2005.

Vegh, Željko. Croatiae scriptores Latini : hrvatske knjige tiskane na latinskom jeziku u Zbirci Rara [Gradske knjižnice, Zagreb]. Zagreb : Knjižnice grada ; Gradska knjižnica, 2003.

Museum libraries' catalogues

Vinaj, Marina. Tiskopisi XVI. stoljeća iz riznice Muzeja Slavonije u Osijeku. Osijek : Muzej Slavonije 2007.

Zglav-Martinac, Helga. Zbirka starih i rijetkih knjiga Muzeja grada Splita = The Collection of Old and Rare Books of the Split City Museum. Split : Muzej grada, 2009.

Knjige tiskane u 17. stoljeću iz fundusa Zavičajnog muzeja grada Rovinja / (autor Marija Smolica). Rovinj : Zavičajni muzej grada Rovinja, 2004.

Catalogues of exhibitons

Blago knjižnice Franjevačkog samostana u Osijeku : izbor : katalog izložbe / [tekst Dragutin Katalenac, Vatroslav Frkin ; fotografije Krešimir Lendić]. - Osijek : Sveučilište Josipa Jurja Strossmayera u Osijeku : Gradska i sveučilišna knjižnica, 2002.

Blago Nacionalne i sveučilišne knjižnice u Zagrebu : 400. obljetnica : katalog izložbe, 22. veljače – 22. svibnja 2007. / [autori Josip Bratulić, Stjepan Damjanović ; ilustracije Darko Čižmek, Sonja Hrelja, Sanja Vešligaj ; urednik Ivan Kosić]. Zagreb : Nacionalna i sveučilišna knjižnica, 2007.

Bošnjaković, Renata; Marina Vinaj. Knjige 16. i 17. stoljeća iz knjižnice Franjevačkog samostana Našice : katalog izložbe. Zavičajni muzej Našice, 9.-31. svibnja 2008. Našice : Zavičajni muzej, 2008.

Bošnjaković, Renata. Knjižnica Pejačević u Našicama : katalog izložbe : Zavičajni muzej Našice, studeni/prosinac 2003. / Renata Bošnjaković ; [fotografije i likovni prilozi Zvonko Pinter... [et al.]. Našice : Zavičajni muzej, 2003.

Doba francuske uprave u Dalmaciji u svjetlu arhivske, bibliotečne i numizmatičke građe Arheološkog muzeja u Splitu : [izložba Arheološkog muzeja u Splitu u suradnji s Društvom jugoslavensko-francuskog prijateljstva "Yougoslavie-France" u Splitu i s Muzejom narodne revolucije u Splitu] : u povodu 200. obljetnice francuske revolucije : [Muzej narodne revolucije u Splitu 21. rujna - 14. listopada 1989.] / koncepcija izložbe, izbor građe, obrada kataložnih jedinica i komentari uz opise novca i medalja Arsen Duplančić]. Split : Arheološki muzej, 1989.

Drei Schriften – drei Sprachen : kroatische Schriftdenkmaeler und Drucke durch Jahrhunderte : [Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin, Preussischer Kulturbesitz, 26. April - 8. Juni 2002.] / [herausgegeben von Srećko Lipovčan ; Uebersetzer Dagmar Hadžić ... [et al.] ; Photos Damir Fabijanić ... et al.]. Zagreb : Erasmus naklada, 2002.

Geografske knjige u Knjižnici Grkokatoličke biskupije u Križevcima : katalog izložbe održane u Knjižnici grkokatoličke biskupije u Križevcima od 24. travnja do 30. lipnja 2008. / katalog sastavio Željko Vegh. Križevci : Samostan sestara bazilijanki, 2008.

Hrvatske knjige tiskane u Mlecima od XV-XVIII stoljeca: izlozba knjiga iz riznice NSB [Kroatische, in Venedig vom 15. bis 18. Jh gedruckte Bücher. Eine Ausstellung von Büchern aus dem Schatz der National- und Universitätsbibliothek]. Zusammengestellt von Drazen Budiša. Zagreb 1990.
Inkunabule i knjige XVI. stoljeća u knjižnici grkokatoličke biskupije u Križevcima : katalog izložbe : Knjižnica grkokatoličke biskupije u Križevcima, 24. travnja - 30. svibnja 2007. / katalog sastavio Željko Vegh ; [prijevod Livio Marijan ; fotografije Igor Vuković]. Križevci : Samostan sestara brazilijanki, 2007.
Knjige 16. stoljeća Franjevačkog samostana u Osijeku : katalog izložbe : Gradska i sveučilišna knjižnica Osijek, 2003. / predgovor i kataloška obrada Dragutin Katalenac. Osijek : Gradska i sveučilišna knjižnica, 2003.
Knjige tiskane u 16. stoljeću : iz fundusa Zavičajnog muzeja grada Rovinja / (autor izložbe i kataloga Marija Smolica). Rovinj : Zavičajni muzej grada Rovinja, 2001.
Knjige tiskane u XVII. stoljeću : Katalog fonda Sveučilišne knjižnice u Splitu / [autor kataloga Mihaela Kovačić]. Split : Sveučilišna knjižnica u Splitu, 1998.
Knjižnica splitske obitelji Martinis-Marchi : katalog izložbe / [urednik izložbe i kataloga Arsen Duplančić]. Split : Arheološki muzej, 2001.
Liturgijske knjige u Knjižnici Grkokatoličke biskupije u Križevcima : katalog izložbe, Knjižnica grkokatoličke [!] biskupije u Križevcima, 6. rujna – 15. studenog 2007. / katalog sastavio Željko Vegh. Križevci : Samostan sestara bazilijanki, 2007.
Novi život povijesnih riječkih knjižnica : knjige 16. stoljeća / [autori tekstova Irvin Lukežić, Ines Cerovac]. Rijeka : Sveučilišna knjižnica, 2007.
Plava krv, crna tinta : knjižnice velikaških obitelji od 1500. do 1700. : međunarodna putujuća izložba : Zagreb, Bratislava, Martin, Budapest, Forchtenstein, jesen 2005.- jesen 2007. / [karte crtali Katalin Plihal, Balazs Mihalyi ; prijevod na hrvatski Tamara Bakran ... [et al.] ; fotografije Darko Čižmek ... [et al.] ; urednik kataloga Ivan Kosić]. Zagreb : Nacionalna i sveučilišna knjižnica, 2005.
Rariteti Knjižnice franjevačkog samostana u Sinju / Galerija ADAM u Sinju, 2-17.6.1989. Sinj : Kulturno društvo Cetinjanin : Galerija ADAM, 1989.
Smolica, Marija. Antonio Ive : (1851. – 1937.) : knjižnica jednog profesora = Antonio Ive : (1851. – 1937.) : biblioteca di un professore. Rovinj : Zavičajni muzej grada Rovinja, 2007.
Stancoviciana : katalog izložbe = catalogo della mostra = exhibition catalogue : Zavičajni muzej Rovinj = Museo civico di Rovigno = Museum of Rovinj's Heritage / tekst kataloga = testo del catalogo = text of the catalogue Bruno Dobrić. Rovinj : Zavičajni muzej Rovinj = Museo civico di Rovigno = Museum of Rovinj's Heritage, 1992.

Biographical sketch

Marijana Tomić is a research assistant at the Department of Library and Information Science at the University of Zadar. She is enrolled in the PhD study programme of mediaeval science at the Faculty of Philosophy of the University of Zagreb. She is one of the coordinators of the project of organising the library of the monastery of St. Francis in Zadar and an associate on the project *Digital Library of Croatian Print-*

ed Heritage (by 1800): Structural Premises which is financed by the Ministry of Science, Education, and Sport, Republic of Croatia (head of the project team is dr. sc. Zoran Velagić). She is a member of a Croatian Library Association, Commission for the History of Book and Libraries, Croatian Reading Association and Association of Friends of Glagolitic Script. Her research interests are organisation of information, cataloguing of old and rare books, history of the book, monastery libraries, Glagolitic script, organisation and appropriation of Croatian medieval Glagolitic texts.

PODACI O POVIJESTI PRIMJERKA U HRVATSKIM KATALOZIMA STARE I RIJETKE GRAĐE

Sažetak

U članku je prikazano stanje u katalogizaciji starih i rijetkih knjiga u hrvatskim knjižnicama te kratka povijest zbirki stare i rijetke građe u baštinskim ustanovama. Podataci o povijesti primjerka u kataložnim zapisima posebno su istraženi. Prikazani su rezultati istraživanja podataka o povijesti primjerka u lističnim katalozima, tiskanim katalozima i u OPAC-ima hrvatskih knjižnica.

Ključne riječi: baštinske zbirke, katalogizacija stare i rijetke građe, podaci o povijesti primjerka

III.

New Conceptual Models for Information Organization

RDA (RESOURCE DESCRIPTION AND ACCESS) AND ITS APPLICATION TO RARE BOOKS, MANUSCRIPTS, AND THEIR DIGITAL SURROGATES

Gordon Dunsire
University of Strathclyde, Centre for Digital Library Research, Glasgow, UK

Abstract
The paper introduces the basic concepts of RDA – Resource Description and Access, a new set of guidelines for determining the content of bibliographic records, and Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records (FRBR), a model for the structure of bibliographic records, and how they are aligned with each other. The paper discusses the application of RDA to describe bibliographic resources in general, and the specific guidelines given for rare books, manuscripts, and their digital surrogates.

Keywords
RDA, FRBR, rare books, manuscripts, cataloguing

RDA

RDA: resource description and access is a new standard for creating bibliographic metadata.[1] It builds on the Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules (AACR) which have been in development since 1841 when Panizzi's rules for the British Museum catalogue were created. RDA is also based on more modern approaches, including the model developed in FRBR published in 1998.[2]

There are many features of RDA which have the use of bibliographic metadata as a focus. It is intended to meet the needs of all types of user, including those who need to find, identify, select, obtain and

1 RDA – Resource description and access : a prospectus. July 2009 [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.rda-jsc.org/docs/5rda-prospectusrev7.pdf

2 IFLA Study Group on the Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records. Functional requirements for bibliographic records : final report. 1998, amended Feb. 2009 [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.ifla.org/files/cataloguing/frbr/frbr_2008.pdf

use information, and manage and organize information bibliographically. It covers all media, whether print-based or digital and irrespective of content, be it textual, visual, etc. Media are treated in an equal and even way which gives more control to the user in finding and choosing the most appropriate resources to suit the task in hand. RDA clearly distinguishes content from carrier, essential when almost any kind of information content can be carried on digital media, such as moving pictures on DVD and text on CD-ROM. The distinction is particularly helpful for users with special needs who may wish, for example, to exclude non-visual resources from a search. RDA provides controlled vocabularies for describing the characteristics of the content of a resource separately from the characteristics of the carrier of that content.

RDA is designed for multinational application. Anglo-American-centric features of AACR have been removed, along with cataloguer-eccentric practices arising from the legacy of over one hundred years of development and application. For example, abbreviations and acronyms are generally avoided, and Latinisms such as "s.n.", "s.l." and "et al." do not feature in RDA. The guidelines emphasise transcription over interpretation; the exact title of the resource, as displayed on the resource, should be transcribed as the content of the title element in the bibliographic record regardless of misprints or other errors, with any corrections given in notes. This ensures consistency of approach across cataloguing communities and cultures.

RDA is independent of technical metadata formats. It can therefore be used with MARC, DC (Dublin Core) and many other metadata storage and exchange formats. Application of RDA is intended to give the user familiar metadata regardless of what system is used to store, retrieve and display them. RDA is designed for the digital environment. It will be published as an online product, so there is potential for incorporating appropriate parts of RDA in user help facilities; for example, an explanation of how a "preferred title for the work" (equivalent to the uniform title of AACR) is derived. The online digital publication of RDA will allow it to be incorporated into online cataloguing software to provide contextualised workflows and local customization.

The core user-centred features of RDA, however, result from its close alignment with FRBR and the related model presented in Functional Requirements for Authority Data (FRAD).[3] This allows RDA to

3 Functional requirements for authority data : a conceptual model / edited by Glenn E. Patton. München : K.G. Saur, 2009.

be applied readily to catalogue records based on the FRBR and FRAD models and encourages the development of catalogue interfaces which better meet the requirements of users.

FRBR

The FRBR final report presents a common understanding of the aims and purpose of bibliographic metadata, with a framework and model to support that understanding. FRBR was developed for International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA) between 1992 and 1997. FRBR takes a user-focussed approach, and identifies a set of user tasks associated with bibliographic metadata:

- Find an information resource matching the user's search criteria.
- Identify a resource confirming the user's criteria and distinguishing similar resources.
- Select a resource meeting the user's needs.
- Obtain a resource to access the information in the resource.

The FRBR model is based on an entity-relationship analysis of the data typically found in bibliographic records. An entity is a key object of interest to a user and acts as a focal point for a set of metadata statements or attributes. Entities interact with each other through one or more defined relationships.

The model identifies three groups of entities:

- Group 1 entities represent the different aspects of user interests in the products of intellectual or artistic endeavour.
- Group 2 entities represent what is responsible for the content, production and custodianship of Group 1 entities.
- Group 3 entities represent the subjects of one of the Group 1 entities.

There are four entities in Group 1:

- A work is a distinct intellectual or artistic creation.
- An expression is an intellectual or artistic realisation of a Work.
- A manifestation is a physical embodiment of an Expression.
- An item is a single exemplar of a Manifestation.

A work is realised through an expression which is embodied in a manifestation which is exemplified by an item. Conversely, a specific bibliographic resource in the hand of a cataloguer or sought by a user is an item which is an exemplar of a manifestation which is an embodiment of an expression which is a realisation of a work. All relationships between entities defined in the model come in reciprocal pairs; an expression is embodied in a manifestation, a manifestation is an embodiment of an expression.

Although a work can have multiple expressions, an expression multiple manifestations, and a manifestation multiple items, the reverse is restricted to single instances: an item can have only one manifestation, a manifestation one expression, and an expression one work.

Diagram 1 shows the FRBR Group 1 entities and primary relationships applied to a theoretical musical work which is performed (expressed) on two separate occasions during which it is recorded. One recording is issued (manifested) on, say, audiocassette, while the other is issued on both audiocassette and DVD-A. One copy of each of the audiocassette manifestations is available, along with two copies of the DVD-A. The text beside the diagram refers to item 2.2.2: a copy of the DVD-A containing the LSO performance of Symphony no.1. The entity numbers are for referencing and are not part of the model.

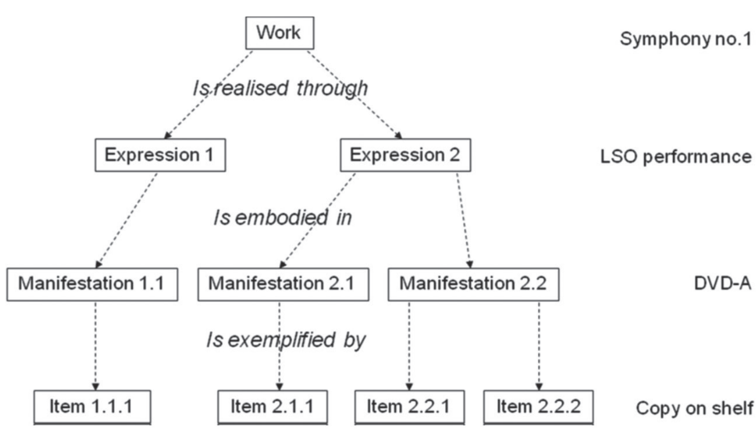


Diagram 1.
Theoretical example of FRBR Group 1 entities and relationships

This is quite different from the traditional approach, where the metadata for each manifestation and related expression and work are held in a single record (item metadata are typically held in a separate data file in modern automated systems). The example would consist of three separate records which duplicate some of the expression and all of the work attributes, and the user might have to examine all three records to be sure of fulfilling their task. The tree structure associated with a catalogue based on the FRBR model is more intuitive and efficient; the user can carry out their tasks in stages by drilling-down from the top, and avoiding the display of duplicate metadata.

RDA and cataloguing

The cataloguer using RDA, on the other hand, will typically traverse the structure from the bottom up: determining the manifestation characteristics of the item in hand, then the expression, and finally the work.

RDA places more emphasis on cataloguer's judgment, and the instructions for determining metadata content are intended to be used as guidelines rather than "rules". Nevertheless, those instructions are likely to be referred to as cataloguing rules, as does this paper. RDA groups rules by bibliographic element or attribute such as title, rather than by format as in AACR. Those attributes are explicitly related to FRBR entities, and therefore ultimately to user tasks, to assist cataloguers in determining the utility of the metadata they create. They help the cataloguer to focus on why they are recording the information, rather than the specific infrastructure used to create and store it.

RDA includes guidance on authority control, now a much more important aspect of the bibliographic metadata environment than in the past as a result of the development of global information and communication networks. As the number of authors and subjects that can be retrieved in an online search increases, so does the need to determine whether different labels refer to the same author or subject, and similar labels refer to different authors or subjects.

Despite these new features, however, RDA is generally compatible with AACR, and will not be entirely unfamiliar to many cataloguers.

The objectives of RDA encompass comprehensiveness, consistency, clarity, rationality, currency, compatibility, adaptability, ease and efficiency of use, and format. The principles of RDA cover generalization, specificity, non-redundancy, terminology, and reference structure. The IFLA Statement of international cataloguing principles,[4] published in 2009, is used to inform the cataloguing principles used throughout RDA.

As well as alignment with various IFLA models, RDA is influenced by, and in turn influences, approaches used by several other related communities. The controlled vocabularies for describing

4 IFLA. Statement of international cataloguing principles. 2009 [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.ifla.org/files/cataloguing/icp/icp_2009-en.pdf

content and carrier types are based on the RDA/ONIX framework for resource categorization,[5] a collaboration between RDA and the publishing community. The framework provides an ontology and methodology for creating "high-level" categories of content and carrier which are the basis for controlled terms. For example, "text" and "still image" are terms which can be used to describe the content type attribute of a FRBR expression, while "volume" and "online resource" are applicable to the carrier type attribute of a FRBR manifestation. The ontology is intended for general use, beyond the library and publishing communities.[6]

Another initiative is the DCMI RDA Task Group,[7] a collaboration between RDA and the Dublin Core Metadata Initiative. The aim of the group is to define RDA elements and controlled terms as an RDF[8] vocabulary, compatible with the Semantic Web, for use in developing a Dublin Core application profile.[9] [10] And, linking these various collaborations together, the Vocabulary Mapping Framework project[11] is developing an extension to the RDA/ONIX framework to improve Semantic Web interoperability between elements of RDA, ONIX, DC, FRBR, FRAD and a number of other related metadata models and vocabularies.

The RDA elements are assigned to FRBR Group 1 entities; for example, the element for preferred title is part of the work entity. Although RDA does not mandate any element, some are designated as core elements of an entity. Core elements are those required to support the functional objectives of RDA entity and relationship elements. Special communities, such as those dealing with rare books or manuscripts, are expected to designate additional core elements. A full set of core elements is likely to form a minimum input standard for a community,

5 RDA/ONIX framework for resource categorization. 2006 [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.rda-jsc.org/docs/5chair10.pdf

6 Dunsire, Gordon. Distinguishing content from carrier : the RDA/ONIX framework for resource categorization. // D-Lib magazine 13, 2 (January/February 2007) [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.dlib.org/dlib/january07/dunsire/01dunsire.html

7 DCMI/RDA Task Group wiki [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://dublincore.org/dcmirdataskgroup/

8 W3C. RDF Working Group. Resource description framework (RDF) [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.w3.org/RDF/

9 Coyle, Karen; Tom Baker. Guidelines for Dublin Core application profiles. 2009 [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://dublincore.org/documents/profile-guidelines/

10 Hillmann, Diane; [and others]. RDA vocabularies : process, outcome, use. // D-Lib magazine 16 1/2 (January/February 2010) [cited 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.dlib.org/dlib/january10/hillmann/01hillmann.html

11 Vocabulary Mapping Framework [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://cdlr.strath.ac.uk/VMF/

along with guidance on the use of some of the few options provided in RDA, such as the preferred language of cataloguing agency.

Communities should take into account the purpose of the metadata, especially from the point of view of the user, and be aware of the availability of relevant metadata from other sources. For example, information about the nearest available item of a resource, helping a user to obtain it, can be typically obtained from a combination of bibliographic metadata with collection-level description and borrower transaction metadata. User needs often focus on manifestation and expression metadata rather than items. Expression metadata inform the user about editions and translations, while manifestation metadata indicate, for example, whether special equipment is required to access the resource, such as a computer with PDF reader software. There may be little requirement for item metadata, other than, say, a barcode, if all items of a manifestation are essentially identical. On the other hand, specialized communities may need a different approach to how much metadata is required in the expression, manifestation and item areas. Rare books communities are likely to have a greater focus on item metadata than general libraries, for example recording the numbering of an item in a limited edition, or the provenance of an item. A manuscripts community may choose to ignore the item altogether if all useful metadata can be accommodated in the manifestation area.

The following examples of RDA rules for rare books and manuscripts illustrate some of the features of RDA. The examples are taken from the full draft of RDA produced for constituency review in 2008.[12] The final version of RDA has not yet been published, but it is unlikely that there will be significant change from the draft.

RDA uses a hierarchical numbering system for delineating sections and rules. For example, RDA 2.8.4.1 states "For early printed resources, printers and booksellers are treated as publishers." The number shows that this is a subsection of the rules for publisher's name (2.8.4), which is part of the publication statement (2.8) in the section dealing with identifying manifestations and items (2). This rule hierarchy aids the logical layout of RDA, but can be transparent in the digital environment in which RDA will be published, where hyperlinks can be used to group rules together and navigate through them.

12 RDA – Resource description and access : constituency review. 2008 [cited 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.rdaonline.org/constituencyreview/

The phrase "early printed resources" is controlled terminology; it is used throughout RDA to refer to the same type of resource, and is semantically equivalent to the controlled term "older monographic resources" used by International standard bibliographic description (ISBD).[13] The use of controlled terminology improves the clarity and ease of use of the rules. Other relevant controlled terms used to refer to resource types in RDA are "manuscript" and "digital resource".

The RDA rule for recording the production method for manuscripts (RDA 3.9.2.3) says "If the resource is a manuscript, record one of the following terms as appropriate." The terms are:

- holograph (written by the work creator)
- manuscript (written by other than the creator)
- printout
- typescript

This is another example of the use of controlled terminology, this time in the metadata created using RDA. It improves clarity and consistency for the user.

The RDA rule for title of the work (6.2) has subsections for early works and incunabula. For works created before 1501 (6.2.2.5) "... choose the title or form of title in the original language by which the work is identified in modern sources as the preferred title." For incunabula (6.2.2.8) "Choose as the preferred title for a work contained in an incunabulum the title found in standard reference sources for incunabula." Both of these rules are based on the more general RDA principle of representation (0.4.3.4) which states "... the preferred title for a work should be ... the title most frequently found in resources embodying the work in its original language, the title as found in reference sources, or the title most frequently found in resources embodying the work." This again improves consistency, both for the cataloguer and the user.

Digital surrogates

Diagram 2 shows the FRBR model of a rare book which is the single extant item of a work. Item 1.1.1 is the sole exemplar of manifestation 1.1 which is the sole embodiment of expression 1 which is the sole realization of the work. Digitizing the content of the item is equivalent to producing another manifestation (1.2) of the expression. The new

13 IFLA. ISBD Review Group. International standard bibliographic description (ISBD). Preliminary consolidated edition. 2007 [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.ifla.org/files/cataloguing/isbd/isbd-cons_2007-en.pdf

manifestation is a digital carrier with its own characteristics, including the kind of technical encoding it uses to store and represent the content of the expression; in this example, the encoding is portable document format (PDF). One of the objectives of digitizing a rare item is to improve access, which can be achieved not only by publishing its content online but also by providing multiple copies. Here, two copies have been made available (items 1.2.1 and 1.2.2). If the digitized expression is encoded in a different format, such as Microsoft Word document format (doc), a different manifestation (1.3) is created, which can have its own multiple copies.

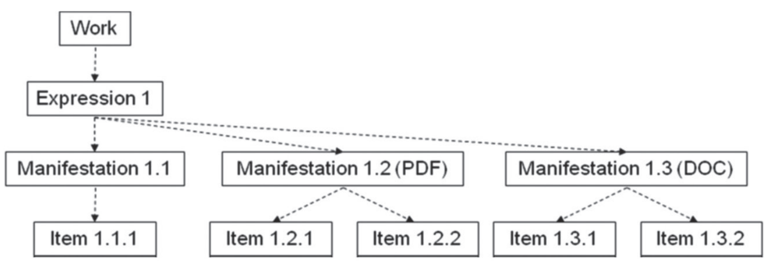


Diagram 2.
FRBR model of a rare book and its digital surrogates

Digitization, then, typically results in one or more new manifestations for which metadata must be created. If those manifestations use a physical carrier such as CD-ROM or DVD, then item metadata are also required to distinguish copies. If a manifestation is made available as an online resource in several places (that is, with more than one electronic address or Uniform Resource Locator (URL)), then explicit item metadata are required to describe those addresses. However, if the manifestation is an online resource at only one location, item metadata may be embedded in the manifestation record rather than form a discrete item record.

Digitization does not usually result in the need for new work or expression metadata. In a cataloguing system using discrete FRBR records a new manifestation record is merely linked to the existing expression record, as in Diagram 2. In a more traditional system, the new manifestation metadata is combined with a copy of the existing work and expression metadata to form a new catalogue record for the resource.

Relating manifestations

Diagram 3 shows the FRBR model for a manuscript and a digital surrogate. As with the example in Diagram 2 there is only one manifestation and item for the original resource, as is typical for a manuscript. The manuscript has been digitized in PDF format and made available online at two different URLs.

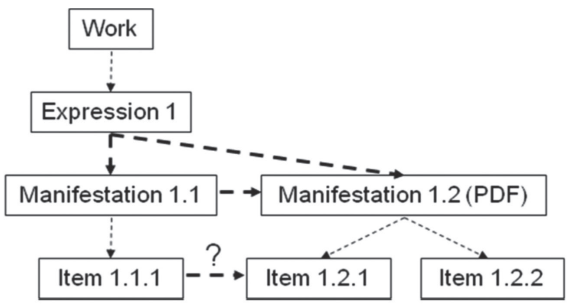


Diagram 3.
Implicit and explicit relationships in the FRBR model

There is an implicit relationship between the two manifestations because they have the same expression. But this relationship cannot describe, for example, whether the digital manifestation is a scanned image of the original manifestation or was derived from another, unrecorded digital manifestation using a different encoding scheme (as might be the case with the PDF and DOC format manifestations in Diagram 2). Although this information may be included in each manifestation record in the form of a note or some other attribute, it may not be in a form from which a direct manifestation to manifestation relationship can be inferred by a human, let alone a machine.

It is desirable, then, that relationships between manifestations are explicitly stated in the metadata. FRBR provides a set of relationships between Group 1 entities; the appropriate relationship pair for this example is "has a reproduction" and "is a reproduction". RDA further refines this by adding two sub-relationships:

- digital transfer: A manifestation resulting from the transfer of another manifestation from an analog format to a digital one, or from one digital format to another.
- electronic reproduction: A digital manifestation resulting from the reproduction of an analog manifestation.

Each of these has a reciprocal. So a scanned image manifestation is an electronic reproduction of the original manifestation, while a re-encoded digital manifestation is a digital transfer of the manifestation with the original encoding.

There is a question about whether the relationship in diagram 3 should be created more appropriately between the items rather than the manifestations. RDA allows for this and provides the relationships "digital transfer of (item)" and "electronic reproduction of (item)" if the cataloguer decides that this is a better approach, but it should only be used if it is important to distinguish the particular item used as the source of the digital surrogate. This might be the case, for example, if the only item of a rare book available for digitization is damaged or incomplete. Conversely it might not be the case, for example, for a manuscript if there has only ever been one item, and the manifestation and item can be effectively treated as a single entity.

An extensive set of FRBR Group 1 relationships is given in Appendix J of RDA.

Organizing metadata

The "traditional" approach used by modern library catalogues is based on the concept of a catalogue record for each resource containing all the metadata relevant to the resource except authority headings which are linked to the record. Metadata created using RDA, and therefore FRBR, can be accommodated by this approach; indeed, this is likely to be the scenario when RDA is adopted by communities already using AACR. RDA is independent of metadata formats, and there is no specific reason why the order of metadata elements in a record should follow the sequence given by RDA in order to group them as FRBR entities. Some of those elements will be used, variously, to create indexes, short and full record displays, etc. following current practice.

But this approach does not take full advantage of the FRBR model. Work and expression metadata has to be duplicated for each manifestation to form the resource record, whereas FRBR allows a single instance of a work or expression record to be linked to multiple manifestation records. Avoidance of duplication is more efficient as it takes less cataloguer time, and is more effective for the user as it improves hierarchical browsing. It may not always be possible to process resource records to create a virtual, duplicate-free FRBR view of the catalogue for the user, particularly if records are taken from multiple cataloguing sources with variations in adherence to RDA, even though RDA strives to maximize the potential for such processing by, for example, giving clear and unambiguous instructions for determining titles and other match-points. A "best value" application of RDA and FRBR instead suggests that future catalogues may consist of discrete work, expression, manifestation, and (possibly) item records linked together using global machine-processable identifiers to allow aggregations from multiple catalogues. This link rather than copy approach is characteristic of the Web today, and underpins the development of the Semantic Web.[14]

The current, traditional approach and potential linked-record approach are contrasted in Diagram 4. Five separate resources are represented, consisting of the manuscript and digital surrogate given in Diagram 3 together with a translation of the content of the manuscript, a summary derived from the content, and a part of the content (for example an illustration) which the cataloguer has decided is self-contained and important enough to warrant treatment as a separate work with its own metadata. The translation is a new expression because it changes the content without affecting the abstract creation behind it; the work remains the same. The summary is treated as a new work because it has a different creator and conception.

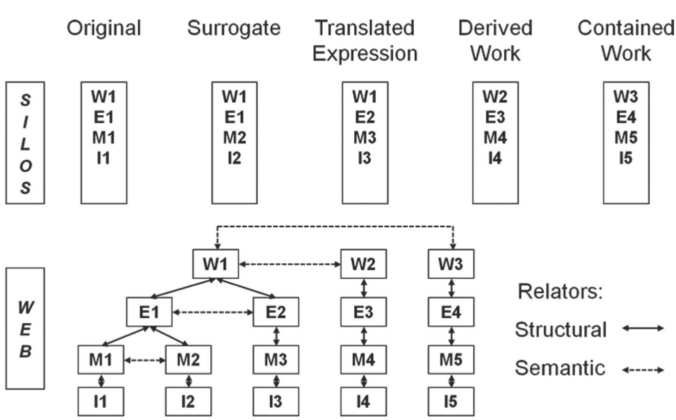


Diagram 4.
Metadata silos vs web of links

14 W3C Semantic Web activity [cited 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.w3.org/2001/sw/

The top part of Diagram 4 shows the five records and their FRBR component entities that result from the traditional approach. (In practice, the cataloguer may choose to reduce the number of records in the same catalogue by just adding, say, a note about the translation to the record for the original manuscript, but this makes it more difficult for a user to find and identify the translation, and in any case consistency cannot be guaranteed in an aggregation of records from different catalogues.) The duplication of entities is indicated by their numbering. The metadata associated with the entities may not, in fact, be exactly duplicated, especially if, as has already been noted, the records are created by different cataloguers at different times; this makes it much more difficult for links between these records to be generated by machine, or for the content to be de-duplicated for display. So the user must browse the content of all five records, and usually has to carry out additional searches to find associated works rather than navigating seamlessly from one to another.

The bottom part of Diagram 4 shows the result of treating the same metadata as discrete FRBR records linked by explicit relationships. Relationships can be broadly categorized as structural, reflecting the logical structure of FRBR, and semantic, indicating the differences in meaning represented in specific relationships. The FRBR relator "is embodied in" is structural, while the RDA relator "electronic reproduction" between M1 and M2 is semantic. In the diagram, the RDA relator between W1 and W2 is "summary (work)", that between W1 and W3 is "contained in (work)", and that between E1 and E2 is "translation of (expression)"; all are semantic. Although this results in a larger number of discrete records, 12 instead of 5 (excluding item records), each is significantly smaller and overall the metadata require fewer personnel and time resourcing to create, maintain, store, display and browse.

Conclusion

This paper has given an overview of RDA and FRBR and discussed some aspects of their application to rare books and manuscripts metadata. Communities of practice for those types of resource will need to consider a number of issues before being able to exploit the features of RDA and obtain best value from them.

Some have been mentioned in this paper, including the designation of additional core metadata elements and development of a minimum input standard, and the need, or not, to distinguish item and manifestation metadata. Others include the circumstances in which components of a work might be treated as separate works in their own right. For rare books, there may well be a case for describing owner bookplates and stamps, and even bindings, as works embedded in the book. The use of controlled terms for relators between FRBR Group 1 and Group 2, given in Appendix I of RDA, is another consideration; there is an extensive list of relators of interest to the rare books and manuscripts communities, including "book designer", "engraver", "platemaker", "printer", "current owner", "previous owner", and "autographer".

RDA appears to offer a contradictory mix of guidelines which on the one hand encourage greater uniformity of metadata, for example through the use of controlled vocabularies, and on the other allow different interpretations of what metadata should be recorded, for example through community-specified core element sets. But this is a reflection of the proliferation of metadata content and structure models and standards which have emerged in the past few years; a one-size-fits-all does not seem to meet the needs of the various communities in the bibliographic environment. RDA allows a community to select whatever subset of RDA's rich metadata element set suits the community best, and ensures that the bibliographic descriptions produced using that subset are as consistent as possible.

Application of RDA by specialised communities of practice such as rare books and manuscripts will improve the potential for their metadata to be better integrated with that produced by other communities, to accommodate the outputs of digitization initiatives, to contribute to the emerging Semantic Web, and, most importantly, to provide an information retrieval environment that better serves the needs of its users.

References

Coyle, Karen; Tom Baker. Guidelines for Dublin Core application profiles. 2009 [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://dublincore.org/documents/profile-guidelines/

DCMI/RDA Task Group wiki [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://dublincore.org/dcmirdataskgroup/

Dunsire, Gordon. Distinguishing content from carrier : the RDA/ONIX framework for resource categorization. // D-Lib magazine 13, 2 (January/February 2007) [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.dlib.org/dlib/january07/dunsire/01dunsire.html

Functional requirements for authority data : a conceptual model / edited by Glenn E. Patton. München : K.G. Saur, 2009.

Hillmann, Diane; [and others]. RDA vocabularies : process, outcome, use. // D-Lib magazine 16 1/2 (January/February 2010) [cited 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.dlib.org/dlib/january10/hillmann/01hillmann.html

IFLA. ISBD Review Group. International standard bibliographic description (ISBD). Preliminary consolidated edition. 2007 [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.ifla.org/files/cataloguing/isbd/isbd-cons_2007-en.pdf

IFLA. Statement of international cataloguing principles. 2009 [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.ifla.org/files/cataloguing/icp/icp_2009-en.pdf

IFLA Study Group on the Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records. Functional requirements for bibliographic records : final report. 1998, amended Feb. 2009 [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.ifla.org/files/cataloguing/frbr/frbr_2008.pdf

RDA – Resource description and access : constituency review. 2008 [cited 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.rdaonline.org/constituencyreview/

RDA – Resource description and access: a prospectus. July 2009 [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.rda-jsc.org/docs/5rda-prospectusrev7.pdf

RDA/ONIX framework for resource categorization. 2006 [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.rda-jsc.org/docs/5chair10.pdf

Vocabulary Mapping Framework [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://cdlr.strath.ac.uk/VMF/

W3C. RDF Working Group. Resource description framework (RDF) [cited: 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.w3.org/RDF/

W3C Semantic Web activity [cited 2010-01-22]. Available at: http://www.w3.org/2001/sw/

Biographical sketch

Gordon Dunsire is a member of the CILIP-BL Committee on RDA, the RDA Outreach Group, the FRBR Review Group, and IFLA's Classification and Indexing Section. He is co-chair of DCMI RDA Task Group and a member of the DCMI Advisory Board. He is consultant to the ISBD/XML Task Group and the Vocabulary Mapping Framework, and was the facilitator of the group which produced the RDA/ONIX framework for resource categorization. He is an Honorary Member of the Chartered Institute of Library and Information Professionals in Scotland. He was a recipient of the Library Association Charter Centenary Gold Medal in 1998, and the Alan Jeffries Award in 2008. He is experienced in the use of AACR with the UKMARC and MARC 21 formats in academic libraries. His research interests are in collection-level description, metadata, wide-area information retrieval, and the Semantic Web.

RDA (RESOURCE DESCRIPTION AND ACCESS) I NJEGOVA PRIMJENA NA STARE KNJIGE, RUKOPISNU GRAĐU I NJIHOVE DIGITALNE SUROGATE

Sažetak

Rad uvodi u osnovne pojmove RDA-a (Resource Description and Access), novih smjernica za određivanje sadržaja bibliografskih zapisa, i FRBR-a (Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records), modela za strukturu bibliografskih zapisa, te njihovu međusobnu usklađenost. U radu se raspravlja o primjeni RDA-a na opis bibliografske građe općenito te njegovim posebnim smjernicama za staru knjigu i rukopisnu građu te njihove digitalne surogate.

Ključne riječi: RDA, FRBR, stara knjiga, rukopisna građa, katalogizacija

CONCEPTUAL MODEL FOR AUTHORITY DATA

FRAD, AND ITS APPLICATION TO OLD BOOKS

Mirna Willer
University of Zadar, Department of Library and Information Science, Croatia

Abstract

The paper first introduces the conceptual model for authority data *Functional Requirements for Authority Data* – FRAD which is a complementary model to the one for bibliographic data *Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records* – FRBR, both developed by IFLA. The first part of the paper focuses on entities defined by the model, as well as the tasks users perform in accessing and using authority data. In the second part, examples are used to describe printers/typographers and imprint place names, i.e. entities *person*, *corporate body*, *family* and *place*, the four categories of relationships defined by the model, and discussed is their application to specific requirements of name authority control related to old books cataloguing.

Keywords

name authority control, conceptual model, FRAD: *Functional Requirements for Authority Data*, old books, cataloguing

Introduction

In 2009 IFLA – International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions published its second conceptual model to organise bibliographic universe at the abstract level. The model defines functional requirements for authority data – FRAD, thus representing "one portion of the extension and expansion of the *Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records* model",[1] published

1 Functional requirements for authority data : a conceptual model / edited by Glenn E. Patton ; IFLA Working Group on Functional Requirements and Numbering of Authority Records (FRANAR) ; final report, December 2008 approved by the Standing Committees of the IFLA Cataloguing Section and IFLA Classification and Indexing Section, March 2009. München : K. G. Saur, 2009. P. 7.

in 1998.[2] It refers to the implementation of the entity-relationship methodology on which the FRBR model is based, as well as to the definition of entities, attributes and relationships, as well as user tasks performed in relation to authority data. The FRAD model was developed by the Working Group on Functional Requirements And Numbering of Authority Records (FRANAR) established in 1999 under the auspices of IFLA Division of Bibliographic Control and UBCIM (Universal Bibliographic Control and International MARC) Programme.[3] A decade of work on the model shows all the complexities of delineating at the abstract level the field known as the name authority control: both theoretical assumptions, and established traditions and practices had to be taken into consideration. Namely, the name authority control resides at the core of a library catalogue: without control of a name – whether personal, corporate body, place or title of a work, there would not be a successfully performed search nor retrieval of trustworthy information from catalogues, bibliographies, lists, full text databases, and indeed, any information search and retrieval service, in any form or media.

This paper will focus on the description of the conceptual model, and will discuss its application to the name authority control in the field of the study of old books. It will put an emphasis on the analysis of bibliographic conditions in which persons, corporate bodies, families and imprint places are related to the production of old books, and which impose specific solutions in recording their names to meet user requirements.[4] A

2 Functional requirements for bibliographic records : final report / IFLA Study Group on the Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records. München : K. G. Saur, 1998. Current text including amendments and corrections to date, available from: http://www.ifla.org/en/publications/functional-requirements-for-bibliographic-records [cited: 2010-03-15]. Detailed description of the FRBR model can be found in the paper by Gordon Dunsire in these proceedings.

3 Comprehensive description of the Group's background, terms of reference, liaison activities, and the working model at the time it was named FRANAR can be found in: Patton, Glenn E. FRANAR : a conceptual model for authority data. // Authority control in organizing and accessing information : definition and international experience / Arlene G. Taylor, Barbara B. Tillett, editors. Binghamton, NY : Haworth Information Press, 2004. Pp. 91-104. Also available at: http://www.sba.unifi.it/ac/relazioni/patton_eng.pdf [cited: 2010-03-15].

4 Concerning user requirements related to the research of old books, and the extended functions of the catalogue in this respect, see: Katić, Tinka. Stara knjiga : bibliografska organizacija informacija. Zagreb : Hrvatsko knjižničarsko društvo, 2007, specifically chapters III (Stara knjiga kao predmet zanimanja korisnika), IV (Stara knjiga kao predmet bibliografske organizacije informacija), and VI (Pravila za bilbiografsku organizaciju informacija. Zadaci kataloga). See also issues in recording provenance authority data in the paper by David Shaw and Marijana Tomić published in these proceedings.

broad range of international endeavours in the development of the field of name authority control the result of which - FRAD could be considered as its epitome will not be discussed here.[5]

FRAD: A conceptual model for authority data

Before starting the description of the conceptual model for authority data – FRAD, it is necessary to refer first to its definition of authority data. Authority data are for the purposes of this model defined as "the aggregate of information about a person, family, corporate body or work whose name is used as the basis for a controlled access point for bibliographic citations or for records in a library catalogue or bibliographic database".[6] As the model focuses on data, rather than its packaging (e.g., in authority records), it provides a framework for analysis of a wide set of functional requirements that is needed for authority control and sharing of data. Namely, although intentionally limited to the library sector, the model was defined in consultation with archive, museum and publishing communities, thus laying the ground for comparative analysis or possible harmonisation or dialogue with models of those sectors.

In order to organise that "aggregate of information about a person, [etc.]", the entity-relationship methodology requires as the first step the identification of the key objects, or *entities*, that are of interest to the users of information. As a second step, it is necessary to identify the *relationships* that may exist between instances of these entities, and as a third step, main or primary characteristics or *attributes* of entities have to be identified.[7] Before continuing with the description of the model, and in order to understand why a particular entity or relationship is defined as such, it is necessary to see who are the users of authority data, and what tasks do they perform in respect to those data.

Users of authority data and their tasks

The users of authority data, as defined for the purposes of the model, include: "authority data creators who create and maintain authority data; [and] users who use authority information either through direct ac-

5 Comprehensive discussion on this topic can be found in: Willer, Mirna. Name authority control paradigm shift in the network environment. // Frameworks for ICT policy : government, social and legal issues / edited by Esharenana E. Adomi. Hershey, PA: IGI Global, 2010. Str. 182-205. DOI: 10.4018/978-1-61692-012-8.ch012

6 Functional requirements for authority data. Op. cit., p. 15.

7 The paper will not deal with attributes of the entities.

cess to authority data or indirectly through the controlled access points (authorised forms of name, variant forms of name/references, etc.) in catalogues, national bibliographies, other similar databases, etc." These users perform four tasks as follows: "*find* an entity or set of entities corresponding to stated criteria [...] or explore the universe of bibliographic entities using those attributes and relationships, *identify* an entity [...] or validate the form of name to be used for a controlled access point, *contextualize*, [that is,] place a person, corporate body, etc., in context [and] clarify the relationship between two or more persons, [etc.], and a name by which that person, [etc.], is known, and *justify* [or] document the authority data creator's reasons for choosing the name on which the controlled access point is based".[8] Although the four tasks are defined as representing all users, it should be made clear that two types of users perform these tasks each from specific aspect of their needs. For example, *find* can be considered as primarily (end) user task in accessing – searching a catalogue, while at the same time it is the necessary first step for the creator of authority data in his/her process of establishing a new controlled access point for a particular name of person or corporate body, or of maintaining the existing authority data. And, although *justify* or document can be considered as specifically a creator's task (as eventually it is described as such), without getting the information why some name or form of a name is chosen over the other, the (end) user could either misunderstand the data or lack important information.

Primary entities and their relationships at the generic level

The FRAD model builds its entities, as already stated, on the extension of the entities of the FRBR model; precisely, three groups of entities of the FRBR model (with additional entity *family*) are taken as one (or the first) of the three fundamental or primary entities called *bibliographic entities*. Two other primary entities are *names/identifiers* and *controlled access points*. These three primary entities form the fundamental basis for the conceptual model (Figure 1).[9] The relationships which reflect the inherent associations between various entity types are described as follows: bibliographic entities, or entities in the bibliographic universe, are *known by* (or, *have appellation*) names and/or identifiers; in the cataloguing process those names and identifiers are the *basis for* constructing controlled access points. The reverse relationship is also defined,

8 Ibid., p. 83.
9 Ibid., p 19.

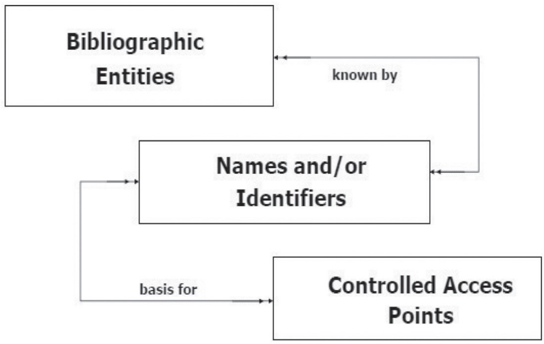


Figure 1.
Fundamental basis for the conceptual model

that is, controlled access point *is based on* the name which *is appellation of* the bibliographic entity, i.e., controlled access point *is based on* identifier which *is assigned to* the bibliographic entity. Except for the latter relationship,[10] all the other relationships are defined as multiple and reverse; this means that a specific instance of any of the defined bibliographic entities may be known by one or more names, and conversely any name may be associated with one or more specific instances of any of the bibliographic entities.

The model defines two more entities that manage the process of determining the content and form of the entity controlled access point: these are *rules* and *agency*. Considering relationships between these three entities, they are defined as follows: controlled access point *is governed by* rules which *are applied by* the agency. At the same time, controlled access point *is created/modified by* the agency which *applies* the rules (Figure 2).

Detailed description of relationships defined in the context of the model will be given in the next section together with the analysis of their applicability to specific requirements that the old book cataloguing poses on name authority control. However, it is necessary to give here a brief description of the entities and relationship that are drawn in the upper part of the diagram in Figure 2 referring to instances of *bibliographic entities*. The FRBR Group 2 entities (*person*, *corporate body*,

10 For this specific relationship see diagram in Figure 2.

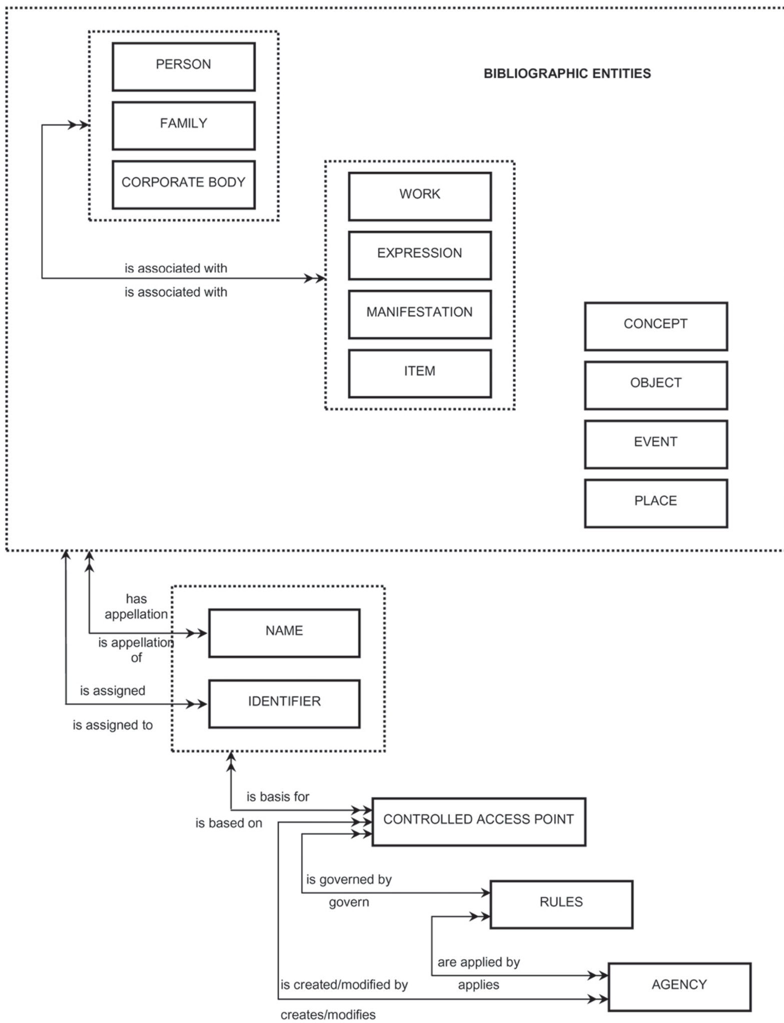


Figure 2.
Conceptual model for authority data

plus *family*) is depicted as related to the FRBR Group 1 entities (*work*, *expression*, *manifestation*, and *item*) in the multiple and reverse relationship type *is associated with*. This general, high-level relationship can be exemplified by a *work* is "created by" a *person*, but the model does not develop further this type of relationship which is commonly described as the qualification of the role (illustrator, composer, writer of a text, etc.) a person may have in the creation of a work, in this instance. The relationship between a *person*, *corporate body* or *family* and an *expression*, *manifestation* or *item* such as translator, editor, typographer, previous owner, etc., is another type of the role in this type of association. These bibliographic entities and their attributes are defined in the context of the FRAD conceptual model; however, description of their specific relationships is referred to the entity-relationship diagram and definitions of the FRBR model.[11] Bibliographic entities considered as subject authority data – *concept*, *object*, *event*, and *place* (FRBR Group 3 entities) are defined at the level of entities, but their attributes are not defined pending the work of the FRSAR Working Group on the complementary model FRSAD – Functional Requirements for Subject Authority Data.[12]

FRAD relationships and their application to the old books name authority control

FRAD model defines four broad categories of relationships reflected in the authority data. The fist category of relationships operates on the generic level between entity types as presented in the diagram in Figure 2, and is basically described in the previous section.

In order to understand this type of relationship, it should be noted that bibliographic entities reflect "intellectual constructs or concepts that are integral to the rules used to create library catalogues, and what is perceived as a specific instance of a particular entity type may vary from one set of rules to another".[13] How such a specific instance of a particular entity type may vary in the context of the model's application to old book name authority control will be explained with the reference to the entities *person*, *corporate body*, *family* and *place*, entities related to the production of old books.

Entities person, corporate body and family, and their relationships

Cataloguing rules view authors uniformly as individual (*persons*) or corporate (*corporate bodies*), while bibliographic entity *family* is generally

11 In the context of a database design, these types of relationships are commonly expressed in the linking mechanism between bibliographic and authority files/databases, with the use of codes describing the specific type of relationship.

12 See the latest available draft version: Functional requirements for subject authority data (FRSAD) : a conceptual model / IFLA Working Group on Functional Requirements for Subject Authority Records (FRSAR), 2nd draft 2009-06-10 [cited: 2010-03-15]. Available at: http://nkos.slis.kent.edu/FRSAR/report090623.pdf

13 Functional requirements for authority data. Op. cit., p. 20.

not recognised. However, this entity is particularly important for old book cataloguing specifically in order to record the role of the family in the process of production and use (provenance or ownership) of old books. Thus, while there is no problem in depicting the role a family plays in the history of a manifestation (printer, typographer, bookbinder) or an item (bookbinder, owner),[14] the categorisation of the entity for a printer/typographer and/or bookbinder becomes problematic. Namely, under some cataloguing rules, printer may be viewed as a *person*, while under the same rules, but applied by different agency or under different cataloguing rules as a *corporate body*. For example, udovica Bernarda Piperata [vedova/widow Piperata di Bernardo] is under Croatian cataloguing rules considered a person (Example 1), while under the rules adopted by the CERL Thesaurus she is treated as a corporate body (Example 2). Additionally, printer can be viewed as a *family* under certain cataloguing rules, as is exemplified by the access point Giunti [familie] governed by German cataloguing rules,[15] but treated, again, as corporate body by those adopted by the CERL Thesaurus (Example 3). That means that in the case of the rules adopted by the CERL Thesaurus the function of an entity outweighs its intrinsic characterisation.

The second category of relationships comprises of relationships between specific instances of the entities *person*, *family*, *corporate body* and *work*, while the third category comprises of relationships between a specific instance of the entity *person*, *family*, *corporate body* or *work*, on the one hand, and a specific *name* by which the entity is known.

Relationships defined in the second category are relationships that operate between specific instances of one bibliographic entity type, and a specific instance of either the same or a different bibliographic entity type. The relationships between instances of the entities *person – person* may be pseudonymous, secular, religious, official, attributive, collaborative, sibling, and parent/child relationship. Following the above discussion about the printers/typographers, the relationships between *persons* that could be applied to old books are the three latter ones – collaborative, sibling, and parent/child relationship. Although sibling relationship is rarely expressed in bibliographic or authority data, it is often found in the case of printers, such as brothers Bernardino and Matteo Vitali, who worked together, but also separately, Matteo only

14 See above for the discussion about FRBR relationships.

15 This is assumed according to the addition to name and notes in German, as well as to the origin of the authority record (UNIMARC field 801 11aDEbGyGoGBV).

in Venice, while Bernardino in Rimini and Rome (Example 4). Parent/child relationship can be exemplified by Luca Antonio Giunta [der Ältere, Erben], 1538-1566, and Luca Antonio Giunta [junior], 1566-1601. The relationship between husband and wife is not defined by the FRAD model, although there are such cases as, for example, the above mentioned udovica [widow of] Bernarda Piperata [vedova Piperata di Bernardo], and Bernardo Piperata, printer and typographer who worked in Split and Vienna, 1826-1841, while his widow worked in Split only, or Witwe [widow of] Johann Konrad Stoessel, printer and bookbinder from Dresden, 1733-1768, and her husband, printer Johann Konrad Stoessel, ?-1733.[16] An example of a more complex set of relationships – sibling, parent/child and widow can be seen in the case of relationships among members of the Melchiorre Sessa family (Example 5). Another example of inheriting the printer/typographer business either within a family, or including members outside the family, but without specifying the type of relationship, can be seen in the case of eredi di [heirs to] Andrea Bresciano, thus written on the edition. In this case, son-in-law of Andrea is named as one of the heirs (Example 6).[17]

The relationships between a specific instance of a different bibliographic entity type *person – family*, and *person – corporate body* are defined in the model only as a membership relationship, *family – corporate body* as founding and ownership relationships, and *corporate body – corporate body* as hierarchical and sequential relationships. Thus, in the context of the above examples on printers, and the above discussion about the first, generic category of relationships in which it was shown how under certain cataloguing rules or their applications in certain databases/catalogues (such as the CERL Thesaurus) the instances of the entity *person* and *family* are treated as instances of the entity *corporate body* we have come to the problem at the conceptual level. Namely, if under certain cataloguing rules the printer is not considered an instance of the bibliographic entity *person* but a *corporate body*, relationships between different entity types would be used, such as membership or sequential relationship, types of relationships at the lesser granularity than those between entities *person – person*. The consequences of such a decision would have a direct impact on the level of application, that is, the use/reuse of data in the process of the exchange of authority data, and specifically in the creation of union, co-operative catalogues. It

16 The examples are taken from the CERL Thesaurus.
17 I am endebted to Tinka Katić for pointing out this type of relationship to me.

should be noted, though, that FRAD as a conceptual model is not prescriptive in identifying types of relationships, but rather representative and it "do[es] not aim to provide an exhaustive taxonomy of relationships in this category [...]. It is recognised that specific applications will select relationships important to the application, so there is no intention to make these relationships mandatory or optional".[18]

Other categories of relationships between entities

The third category of relationships operates between specific instances of the entity *name* and other related names for the instances of the *bibliographic entities*. A sample of relationship types which is, again, representative rather than providing an exhaustive taxonomy, is given in Table 1.

The types of relationships defined within the second and third category are commonly reflected in the reference structure of the authority record, such as *see* and *see also* references to link variant and related access points (often in coded form), in information notes to explain the relationship between the access points in the record, instruction phrases, or cataloguer's note, and are used to generate display information in online catalogues. It should be noted (again) that the use of *see* or *see also* references depends on how a particular set of cataloguing rules treats each specific bibliographic condition. For example, under one set of rules, authors are viewed under certain circumstances as establishing more than one bibliographic identity, and a specific instance of the bibliographic entity *person* may correspond to one or more personas adopted by that individual. That is a case of *person – person* pseudonymous relationship which would be expressed by *see also* reference. In the case of another set of rules that does not accept the concept of a persona, the *see* reference would be used to express this type of relationship. Subsequently, the relationship *name of a person – name of a person* would be treated as variant name relationship (see Table 1), in which case one form of the name would be treated as preferred (authorised) form of the name for that person, and the other or others as "variant forms".[19]

The fourth category of relationships comprises relationships between specific instances of the entity *controlled access point*. Relationship types that are defined in the model are parallel language, alternate

18 Functional requirements for authority data. Op. cit., p. 59.

19 Croatian cataloguing rules do not accept the concept of persona contrary to, for example, Anglo-American and French traditions.

Entity Type	Sample Relationship Types
Name of Person ⇔ Name of Person	▪ earlier name relationship ▪ later name relationship ▪ alternative linguistic form relationship ▪ other variant name relationships
Name of Family ⇔ Name of Family	▪ alternative linguistic form relationship
Name of Corporate Body ⇔ Name of Corporate Body	▪ expanded name relationship ▪ acronym / initials / abbreviations relationship ▪ alternative linguistic form relationship ▪ other variant name relationships
Name of Work ⇔ Name of Work	▪ alternative linguistic form relationship ▪ conventional name relationship ▪ other variant name relationships

Table 1.
Relationship types that operate between a specific instance of a name of a specific bibliographic entity and other names for that entity (FRAD Table 2)

script, and different rules relationship, as well as name/corresponding subject term or classification, and name/identifier relationship. Interesting types of relationships to the old book authority name control are the three first mentioned ones. These types of relationships between controlled access points are commonly expressed by the linking structure mechanisms of the database/catalogue usually by coding the language and/or script of the access point, and cataloguing rules used by the agency creating the authority record. Again, depending on the specific *cataloguing rules* used by a certain cataloguing *agency* these relationships may be expressed through *see* or *see also* reference structures.[20]

Entity place and the treatment of fictitious imprint place names

Places are of interest to the old book user primarily as imprint places, although place names have their inevitable function in the corporate body names such as institutional owners, or even as the place associ-

20 It may be noted here that the CERL Thesaurus specifically treats the *different rules relationship* concept: it intentionally does not distinguish between authorised and variant forms of a name due to the different European cataloguing traditions in establishing the authorised forms of names. In such a way all forms are treated equally, though the forms are identified by the source cataloguing agency using a particular set of cataloguing rules. For more on this solution see the paper by Claudia Fabian in these proceedings.

ated with a family. As already mentioned, entity *place* is categorised in the FRBR model as Group 3 entity, considered as part of the "subjects of artistic or intellectual endeavours".[21]

Namely, cataloguing rules uniformly view this entity as belonging to the subject authority control, while its function as an access point to old book descriptive cataloguing is essential, and has obviously to be reconsidered in revisions of cataloguing rules due to user specific requirements.[22] Further, cataloguing rules may differ in their treatment of fictional characters, supernatural or legendary beings, imaginary places, etc. In respect to their categorisation, they will be viewed in some cases as *persons*, *families*, *places*, etc., while in other cases they will be viewed as *concepts*.[23] Additional problem is raised by the case of fictitious imprint place names; such examples are not rare or exceptional. Note, for example, fictitious names recorded in the CERL Thesaurus for Frankfurt – Cana in Galiläa, Cosmopolis, Deutschland, Hersalaim, London, Utopien, etc. Such type of relationship is not dealt with in the FRAD model because entity *place*, as part of the subject authorities, is envisaged to be fully analysed within the FRSAD: Functional Requirements for Subject Authority Data conceptual model.

Concluding remarks

The paper describes the FRAD – Functional Requirements for Authority Data conceptual model, with detailed analyses of the four broad categories of relationships reflected in the name authority data which are referenced to old book cataloguing. On the examples of printers/typographers and imprint place names taken from the CERL Thesaurus, the richest and most trustworthy source of authority data in the European context, the paper wants to draw attention to various cataloguing traditions in creating authority data, but particularly the consequences that a specific treatment of entities, and their relationships within a certain cataloguing tradition may have to the application of the model, and consequently to the creation of library services in meeting the requirements of users of old books.

21 Functional requirements for bibliographic records. Op. cit., p. 18 [e-version]. As a consequence of such a treatment of place names, UNIMARC format defined the field for Place Name in the 6-- Subject Analysis Block – 620. The 6-- block was in the format's 3rd edition (2008) renamed to Subject Analysis and Biographical History Block. In the same edition the scope of the 620 field underwent extensive revision including change of name to Place and Date of Publication, Performance, etc.

22 See, Katić, T. Op.cit., Chapter VI.

23 Functional requirements for authority data. Op. cit., p. 21.

References

Functional requirements for authority data : a conceptual model / edited by Glenn E. Patton ; IFLA Working Group on Functional Requirements and Numbering of Authority Records (FRANAR) ; final report, December 2008 approved by the Standing Committees of the IFLA Cataloguing Section and IFLA Classification and Indexing Section, March 2009. München : K. G. Saur, 2009.

Functional requirements for bibliographic records : final report / IFLA Study Group on the Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records. München : K. G. Saur, 1998. Current text including amendments and corrections to date, available at: http://www.ifla.org/en/publications/functional-requirements-for-bibliographic-records [cited: 2010-03-15].

Functional requirements for subject authority data (FRSAD) : a conceptual model / IFLA Working Group on Functional Requirements for Subject Authority Records (FRSAR), 2nd draft 2009-06-10 [cited: 2010-03-15]. Available at: http://nkos.slis.kent.edu/FRSAR/report090623.pdf

Katić, Tinka. Stara knjiga : bibliografska organizacija informacija. Zagreb : Hrvatsko knjižničarsko društvo, 2007.

Patton, Glenn E. Franar : a conceptual model for authority data. // Authority control in organizing and accessing information : definition and international experience / Arlene G. Taylor, Barbara B. Tillett, editors. Binghamton, NY : Haworth Information Press, 2004. Pp. 91-104. Also available at: http://www.sba.unifi.it/ac/relazioni/patton_eng.pdf [cited: 2010-03-15].

Willer, Mirna. Name authority control paradigm shift in the network environment. // Frameworks for ICT policy : government, social and legal issues / edited by Esharenana E. Adomi. Hershey, PA: IGI Global, 2010. Str. 182-205. DOI: 10.4018/978-1-61692-012-8.ch012

Further reading

Bourdon, Francoise. International cooperation in the field of authority data: an analytical study with recommendations. München : K.G. Saur, 1993.

Tillett, Barbara B. A review of the feasibility of an International Standard Authority Data Number (ISADN) / prepared for the IFLA Working Group on Functional Requirements and Numbering of Authority Records by Barbara B. Tillett ; edited by Glenn E. Patton, 1 July 2008 ; approved by the Standing Committee of the IFLA Cataloguing Section, 15 September 2008 [cited: 2010-03-15]. Available at: http://archive.ifla.org/VII/d4/franar-numbering-paper.pdf

Delsey, Tom. Authority records in a networked environment. // International cataloguing and bibliographic control 4, 33(2004), 71-74.

Delsey, Tom. IFLA Working Group on an International Authority System : a progress report. // International cataloguing 9 (January/March, 1980), 10-12.

Svenonius, Elaine. The intellectual foundation of information organization. Cambridge, MA & London, England : The MIT Press, 2000. Croatian translation: Svenonius, Elaine. Intelektualne osnove organizacije informacija. Lokve : Benja, 2005.

Tillett, Barbara B. Authority control : state of the art and new perspectives. // Authority control in organizing and accessing information : definition and international experience / Arlene G. Taylor, Barbara B. Tillett, editors. Binghamton, NY : Haworth Information Press, 2004. Pp. 23-57. Also available at: http://www.sba.unifi.it/ac/relazioni/tillett_eng.pdf [cited: 2010-03-15].

Willer, Mirna. UNIMARC format for authority records : its scope and issues for authority control. // Authority control in organizing and accessing information : definition and international experience / Arlene G. Taylor, Barbara B. Tillett, editors. Binghamton, NY : Haworth Information Press, 2004. Pp. 153-184.

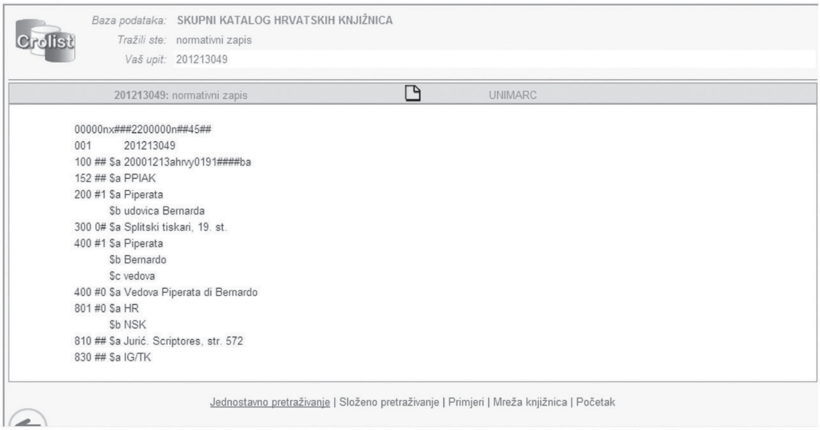
UNIMARC manual : authorities format. 3rd ed. edited by Mirna Willer. München : K. G. Saur, 2009.

UNIMARC manual : bibliographic format. 3rd ed. edited by Alan Hopkinson. München : K. G. Saur, 2008.

Biographical sketch

Mirna Willer is Associate Professor at Department of Library and Information Science, University of Zadar, Croatia since 2007. From 1980 to 2007 she worked as systems librarian, standards officer, and senior researcher at the National and University Library in Zagreb, Croatia. She was a standing member of the IFLA Permanent UNIMARC Committee since its establishment in 1991 until 2005 (chair of Committee from 1997 to 2005), since then she is its consultant and honorary member. She was a standing member of various IFLA sections and/or working groups such as Section on Information Technology, Working Group on Metadata, Working Group on Future Developments of ISBD, ISBD Review Group, Working Group on FRANAR (Functional Requirements and Numbering of Authority Records), the Working Group responsible for the conceptual model FRAD, as well as chair of the Advisory Task Group of the Consortium of European Research Libraries (CERL) (1999-2007) which takes care of the maintenance and development of the Heritage of the Printed Book (HPB) Database and CERL Thesaurus. She edited the 3rd edition of IFLA's *UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format* which was published by K. G. Saur in 2009.

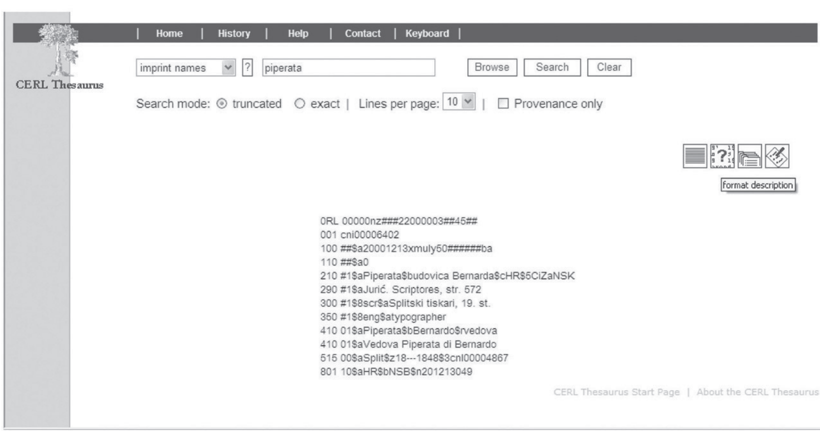
Appendix


Crolist
Baza podataka: SKUPNI KATALOG HRVATSKIH KNJIŽNICA
Tražili ste: normativni zapis
Vaš upit: 201213049
201213049: normativni zapis UNIMARC

00000nx###2200000n##45##
001 201213049
100 ## $a 20001213ahrvy0191####ba
152 ## $a PPIAK
200 #1 $a Piperata
$b udovica Bernarda
300 0# $a Splitski tiskari, 19. st.
400 #1 $a Piperata
$b Bernardo
$c vedova
400 #0 $a Vedova Piperata di Bernardo
801 #0 $a HR
$b NSK
810 ## $a Jurić. Scriptores, str. 572
830 ## $a IG/TK

Jednostavno pretraživanje | Složeno pretraživanje | Primjeri | Mreža knjižnica | Početak

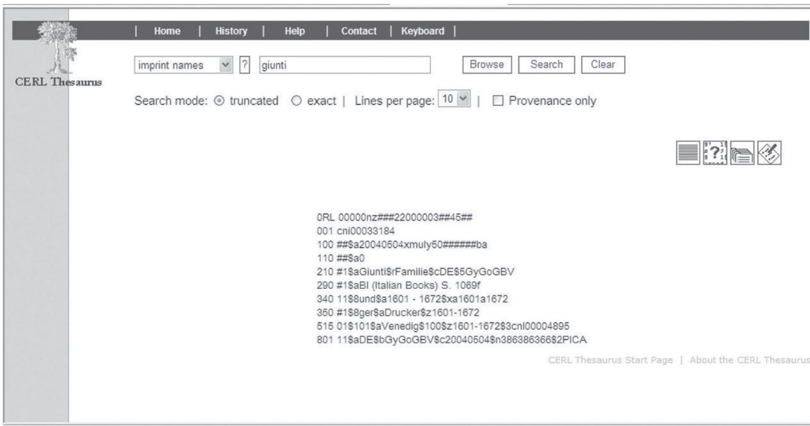
Example 1.
Printer as bibliographic entity Person according to the Croatian cataloguing rules (UNIMARC authorities format, field 200); example taken from the CROLIST, Croatian union catalogue


| Home | History | Help | Contact | Keyboard |
CERL Thesaurus
imprint names ? piperata Browse Search Clear
Search mode: truncated exact | Lines per page: 10 | Provenance only
format description

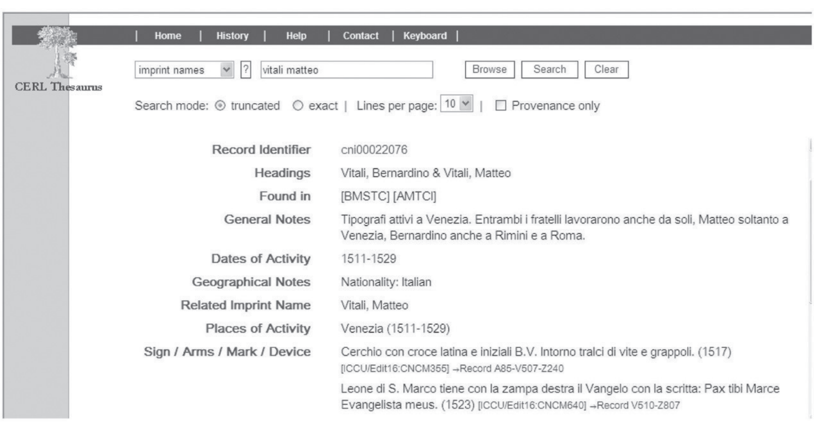
0RL 00000nz###22000003##45##
001 cni00006402
100 ##$a20001213xmuly50######ba
110 ##$a0
210 #1$aPiperata$budovica BernardacHR5CiZaNSK
290 #1$aJurić. Scriptores, str. 572
300 #1$8scr$aSplitski tiskari, 19. st.
350 #1$8eng$atypographer
410 01$aPiperata$bBernardo$rvedova
410 01$aVedova Piperata di Bernardo
515 00$aSplit$z18---1848$3cnl00004867
801 10aHRbNSB$n201213049

CERL Thesaurus Start Page | About the CERL Thesaurus

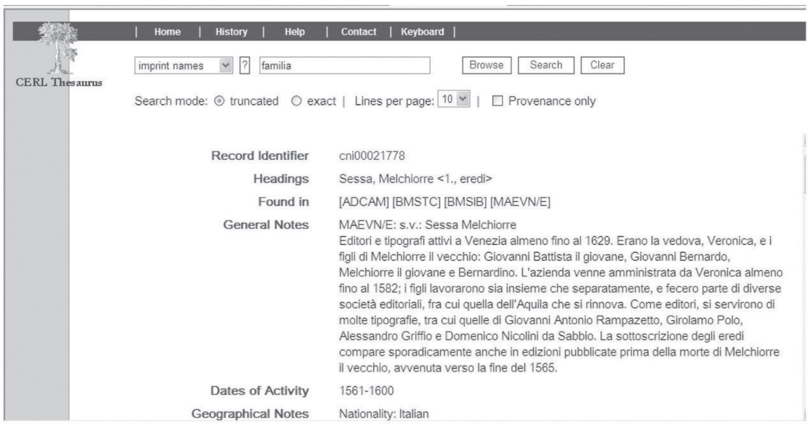
Example 2.
Printer as bibliographic entity *Corporate Body* according to the rules applied by the CERL Thesaurus (UNIMARC authorities format, field 210)



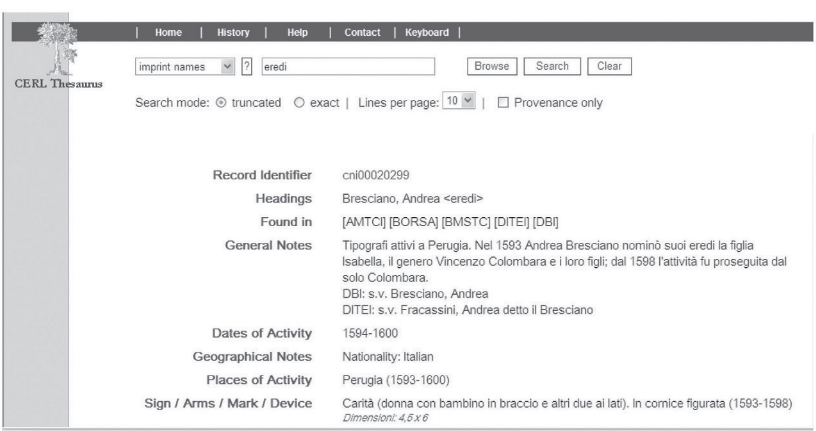
Example 3.
Printer considered as bibliographic entity *Family* by German cataloguing rules, but treated as *Corporate Body* according to the rules applied by the CERL Thesaurus (UNIMARC authorities format, field 210)



Example 4.
Sibling relationship between instances of the two entities *person* – printers; example taken from the CERL Thesaurus



Example 5.
Melchiorre Sessa and relationships within family members; example taken from the CERL Thesaurus



Example 6.
Andrea Bresciano, eredi [heirs]; example taken from the CERL Thesaurus

KONCEPTUALNI MODEL ZA AUTORIZIRANE PODATKE
FRAD I NJEGOVA PRIMJENA NA STARE KNJIGE

Sažetak

Rad započinje uvodom u konceptualni model za autorizirane podatke FRAD – *Functional Requirements for Authority Data*, komplementarni model FRBR-u, modelu za bibliografske podatke – *Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records*. Oba je modela izradila IFLA. U tom se dijelu rada opisuju entiteti koje definira model te postupci korisnika u pristupanju i korištenju autoriziranih podataka. U drugom se dijelu na primjerima opisuju imena tiskara/tipografa i nazivi mjesta tiskanja, tj. entiteti *osoba*, *korporativno tijelo*, *obitelj* i *mjesto*, i četiri kategorije odnosa definirana modelom, te se raspravlja o njihovoj primjeni na posebne zahtjeve nadzora nad autoriziranim podacima u odnosu na katalogizaciju stare knjige.

Ključne riječi: normativni nadzor imena, konceptualni model, FRAD: *Functional Requirements for Authority Data*, stare knjige, katalogizacija

NEW CONCEPTUAL MODELS FOR INFORMATION ORGANISATION OF AUTHORITY DATA IN THE EUROPEAN CONTEXT

Claudia Fabian
Bayerische Staatsbibliothek, Munich, Germany

Abstract
The paper focuses on the CERL Thesaurus as an example of building the European authority file relating to the early printed book production. It discusses Thesaurus contents and structure, methods of providing content, editing procedures, further developments, use of computer technology (assisted searching, access to local catalogues, provision of web-linking to other relevant resources of information), and the role of authority files for organising intellectual content.

Keywords
authority data, early printed book production, CERL Thesaurus, European context

Introduction – History of authority data

Cataloguing can be seen as an activity as old as gathering of books in order to establish collections and (later) libraries. It is a natural activity to draw up lists of books as – more generally – lists of goods and possessions. Compared to the archaic activity of cataloguing, authority data are in fact a new conceptual model for information organisation.

It is interesting to observe a close interaction between cataloguing rules (or concepts) and the physical medium as well as the size of a catalogue. The rules for a handwritten book catalogue, the one we are all familiar with from the 19th century, although much older catalogues exist (the oldest printed catalogue of holdings stored today in the Bavarian State Library listing Greek manuscripts of the Augsburg library dates back to 1575) are different from those used for a card catalogue which allows easier filing and additions, and those for machine-readable catalogues. Cataloguing rules are more complex and more explicit the bigger the quantity of objects to be listed. A smaller list, conceived by one person, can do with fewer rules than a union catalogue with thousands of contributing libraries.

Authority data – thus named and discussed – became a concept in cataloguing only with the considerable growth of catalogues, the development of union catalogues and the development of machine-readable cataloguing, the use of multi-file IT-systems and international cooperation.

Nevertheless, they have ancestors in cataloguing in traditional formats. In the old alphabetical card catalogue of the Bavarian State Library built up since 1841 and in use until 1981, for instance, special entries were made in separate sections called „PR" („Personalrückweis") or „KR" (Körperschafts-Rückweis). These sections contain entry cards for persons or for corporate bodies – usually for „important names". They give dates and provide information on books about this person or the entries for a corporate body.

Authority data also have predecessors outside the library and cataloguing world, especially in encyclopaedic works. Encyclopaedias describe all sorts of entities. Biographical reference works came up quite early in history, for example, in the form of lists of members of religious orders. Church or political registers were kept for centuries. In order to arrange the names in these kinds of books, rules or guidelines had to be established and followed. Information established and sorted to build up all kinds of registers or indexes to complex books (or catalogues) could also be called authority data. These ancestors of authority data keep playing an important role today in building up authority files as they name entities in a consistent and reflective way. Nowadays they are often used for the establishment of authority records.

International impact of authority data

The fundamental rule which led the way to authority records on the international level can be found in the Paris Principles of 1961. They prescribe the "Choice of uniform heading": No. 7 – "The uniform heading should normally be the most frequently used name (or form of name), or title appearing in editions of the works catalogued or in references to them by accepted authorities".[1] This implies that a person should always be entered under the same name, and references should be made from other forms of the name – a rule at that time already well known and observed by local, regional and national cataloguing rules or codes, was addressed on an international level so as to give details about the choice of the heading in an international context (7.1 and 8.2). Catalogues always followed this rule, but the larger the catalogues became, the more explicitly this rule had to be spelt out, and the more difficult it proved to apply. Thus the need for authority data grows with the size of the catalogue, the number of contributors to a catalogue, particularly on an international level. With international cooperation in cataloguing, with the concept of Universal Bibliographic Control (UBC),[2] the term authority data came into being and the use of authority data gained importance. The earliest examples are IFLA's lists of uniform titles for classical anonymous works (published in 1978)[3] – immediately as an international approach, and lists integrated into cataloguing codes, e.g., in the German cataloguing rules for uniform titles of biblical works or for printed music. The awareness of authority data and their importance thus can be traced back to its beginnings in the 1970s and 1980s.

Authority data are not only a modern concept in cataloguing, linked to the existence of machine-readable multi-file catalogues, they also show from the beginning a strong international impact or vocation or, to put it another way, they are immediately placed in the European (if not worldwide) context.

The idea of an international standard authority number (ISADN) not for a heading, but for an entity came up already in the 1980s, in connection with the establishment of *Guidelines for authority and reference entries* published as early as 1984.[4] In 1991 IFLA published a study concerned with *Management and use of authority files*,[5] and in 1993 about

1 Statement of principles adopted by the International Conference on Cataloguing Principles, Paris, October 1961. // Report / International Conference on Cataloguing Principles, Paris, 9th–18th October, 1961; edited by A. H. Chaplin and Dorothy Anderson. Reprint. London : IFLA International Office for UBC, 1981.

2 Anderson, Dorothy. Universal Bibliographic Control : a long term policy, a plan for action. Pullach/ München : Verlag Dokumentation, 1974.

3 Anonymous classics : a list of uniform headings for European literatures / compiled by the IFLA International Office for UBC ; edited by Rosemary C. Hewett. London : IFLA International Office for UBC, 1978.

4 Guidelines for authority and reference entries / recommended by the Working Group on an International Authority System, approved by the Standing Committees of the IFLA Section on Cataloguing and the IFLA Section on Information Technology. London : IFLA International Programme for UBC, 1984.

5 Beaudiquez, Marcelle; Françoise Bourdon. Management and use of name authority files (personal names, corporate bodies and uniform titles) : evaluation and prospects. München : K.G. Saur, 1991.

International cooperation in the field of authority data.[6] In 1991 the first edition of UNIMARC authorities showed the adaptation of this concept to the IFLA and European exchange format, followed by the second edition in 2001 and in 2009, the third edition, completely updated and enlarged version of the *UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format* was published (with a change of terminology, especially "uniform heading" is replaced by "authorised access point").[7] Since 1998, the year of publication of the *Functional requirements for bibliographic records* (FRBR)[8] IFLA established a group to extend the concepts of FRBR to authority data, the Working Group on FRANAR (Functional Requirements for Authorities and Numbering of Authority Records). In 2001 IFLA published the 2nd edition of the *Guidelines for authority records and references* (GARR)[9] in which the idea of a uniform heading was abolished in favour of an "authorised" heading, authorised by a national agency. This is taken up by the *RDA: Resource Description and Access*[10] in the term of "preferred" heading. The 2008 review on the feasibility of an ISADN decided to abandon this concept. In summer 2009 IFLA finally published the *Functional requirements for authority data*[11] as a result of the FRANAR Working Group. They aim at two user groups: authority data creators and librarians, and end users. Authority data help the user to "find" and "identify" – the same tasks FRBR defines for bibliographic records – and they allow the user to "contextualise" (create relationships) and to "justify". These two qualities are particular for authority data.

6 Bourdon, Françoise. International cooperation in the field of authority data: an analytical study with recommendations. München : K.G. Saur, 1993.

7 UNIMARC manual : authorities format. 2nd revised and enlarged edition. München : K.G. Saur, 2001; UNIMARC manual : authorities format. 3rd ed. / edited by Mirna Willer. München : K.G. Saur, 2009.

8 Functional requirements for bibliographic records : final report / IFLA Study Group on the Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records. München : K.G. Saur, 1998. Available also at: http://www.ifla.org/VII/s13/frbr/frbr.pdf [cited 2010-02-08].

9 Guidelines for authority records and references / revised by the Working Group on GARE Revision. 2nd ed. München : K.G. Saur, 2001.

10 RDA: Resource Description and Access [cited 2010-02-08]. Available at: http://www.rda-jsc.org/rda.html; Full Draft 11/24/08 [cited 2010-02-08]. Available at: http://www.rda-jsc.org/rdafulldraft.html

11 Functional requirements for authority data : a conceptual model / edited by Glenn E. Patton ; IFLA Working Group on Functional Requirements and Numbering of Authority Records (FRANAR). Final report, December 2008 / approved by the Standing Committees of the IFLA Cataloguing Section and IFLA Classification and Indexing Section, March 2009. München : K.G. Saur, 2009.

Authority data for old books in the European context – The CERL Thesaurus

Theoretical reflection on and practical creation and application of authority data are parallel. On the European level, and as far as early printed books are concerned, the practicality of the European approach can be best illustrated by the CERL Thesaurus – an authority file built up and maintained by the Consortium of European Research Libraries since 1999. The Data Conversion Group in Göttingen is responsible for the development and maintenance of this tool which is hosted in Göttingen.[12] The CERL Thesaurus puts authority data in the European context insofar as it brings together into one file authority data created by different European libraries for different purposes, and makes them serve new purposes. It can thus be considered as a melting point of various European initiatives in the field of authority data serving the history of the book.

Another international project in this area is the Virtual International Authority File (VIAF) initiated by the Library of Congress, the Deutsche Nationalbibliothek, the Bibliothèque nationale de France and OCLC.[13] VIAF concentrates on personal names and consists (as of August 2009) of 10 million names from 16 authority files of 13 participating national libraries. A user interface is available at http://viaf.org/. VIAF does not concentrate on early printed books but it will certainly have an impact on CERL's Thesaurus work.

European aspects

The CERL Thesaurus offers access to five files: imprint places, imprint names, personal names, corporate names and references. For the time being all files contain information which is of concern for the printed book production in Europe from ca. 1450 to 1830/50. Thus the CERL Thesaurus is closely related – both in content and in chronological limits – to the Heritage of the Printed Book Database (HPB) that has been built up by the same Consortium of European Research Libraries since 1990.[14] It is interesting to see that the development of the Thesaurus comes about nearly ten years later than the concern for the bib-

12 CERL Thesaurus [cited 2010-02-08]. Available at: http://cerl.sub.uni-goettingen.de/ct/
13 VIAF: The Virtual International Authority File [cited 2010-02-08]. Available at: http://www.oclc.org/research/activities/viaf/default.htm
14 CERL: Consortium of European Research Libraries [cited 2010-02-08]. Available at: http://www.cerl.org/

liographic records: a typical situation for authority control. In autumn 2009 the CERL Thesaurus contained data coming from 54 authority files contributed by 12 European countries: Belgium, Croatia, Denmark, Germany, France, Italy, the Netherlands, Poland, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, United Kingdom. An up-to-date list of contributions is maintained on the website of the CERL Thesaurus.

A particular feature of the CERL Thesaurus and an issue of prime importance to authority data in the European context is multilingualism. As the records come from different sources, not only the language of cataloguing differs. Merging records from different European sources does not only mean merging different forms of names. It also implies merging comments and supplementary information in quite a number of different languages. The decision taken for the CERL Thesaurus was to leave these comments in whatever language they appear and to mark the language code in an $8 subfield. The European Thesaurus is used by the Europeans – and they are supposed to understand (or at least to want to understand) the information in the record. In order to accommodate different scripts, particularly Cyrillic contributed through records of the National Library of Russia in St. Petersburg, the Thesaurus is fully UNICODE (UTF 8) compliant. Information in non-Latin script can be entered and retrieved making use of a virtual keyboard – made available to the user on the search screen of the CERL Thesaurus in the Internet.

The CERL Thesaurus is also firmly anchored in the European context because of its format. UNIMARC was chosen in order to use the European format for records exchange, but UNIMARC could not be fully applied as it allows for only one standard form in its authority format. The CERL Thesaurus however wishes and needs to retain all standard (authorised or preferred) forms defined by different contributing agencies without being selective or prescriptive for only one form. Therefore parallel headings had to be accommodated – and thus a vital principle of UNIMARC authorities had to be abandoned. UNIMARC is nevertheless the guiding structure to define the components of an authority record and the structure in fields and subfields. The format can therefore be qualified as "UNIMARC inspired".

Contents of the CERL Thesaurus

With over 715,000 records the number of records in the CERL Thesaurus in autumn 2009 was impressive: 4,200 are for imprint places, 30,400 for imprint names, 670,000 for personal names, 8,300 for corporate names and 2,100 for references. Let us now consider in greater detail each of the components.

Place names

For the place name segment, the first contribution was an authority file for place names occurring in early printing created by the Bavarian State Library and published in1991 as a book: "Druckorte des 16. bis 19. Jahrhunderts: Ansetzungs- und Verweisungsformen" (Wiesbaden, Reichert). The file was then enhanced by standardised forms from the Swedish national bibliography for the 17th and 18th centuries and forms from the early book holdings from the National Library of Russia, St. Petersburg. In both cases these were not genuine authority records, but lists of names giving the standardised form and a variant. Today, all standardised place names available on files contributed for the Heritage of the Printed Book Database are also used to enhance the place name part of the CERL Thesaurus if they have standardised place names on the bibliographic records. Place names recorded in clearly defined fields of printers' records are also integrated into this part of the Thesaurus. The place name file mirrors quite well the history of printing in Europe and shows – besides the standard forms defined by the various institutions or even projects – a huge number of variant forms in different vernacular languages, declinations or spelling differences and even mistakes (both ancient and modern) as found in the books themselves and/or in our catalogues. Fictitious place names present a particular issue. If they can be related to a real place in an individual edition of a book they are recorded in particular fields in the record for this real place name. Some of them cannot be located at all, and therefore have their own authority records. Geographic coordinates will be introduced in the foreseeable future and will allow CERL to build a map of printing places in Europe. The records for place names in the CERL Thesaurus have been edited in order to avoid duplicates among the different contributing files, and to make a single comprehensive record containing all relevant information, even references. This part of the Thesaurus not only helps to "find and identify" but also to "justify" and - by a special feature allowing the user to switch from the place name to the printers working at a particular place – also to "contextualise". These are the tasks of an authority record as defined by IFLA's FRANAR Working Group.

Authority control of place names has a long tradition before CERL's Thesaurus work if we remember the famous dictionary of Latin place names "Orbis Latinus" published by Graesse (Theodor Graesse: Orbis Latinus oder Verzeichnis der wichtigsten lateinischen Orts- und Ländernamen. 2nd edition. F. Benedict. Breslau 1909. New edition 1972). A lot of these forms are today part of the CERL Thesaurus and the heading of Orbis Latinus is always marked ($sOrbis), but – most certainly – Graesse goes beyond printing places.

Imprint names

The imprint names file includes records of printers, publishers, booksellers, all those responsible for the physical production and distribution of a book. Authority files for imprint names have existed for a long time – one only needs to think of Josef Benzing's book on German printers of the 16th and 17th centuries (Die Buchdrucker des 16. und 17. Jahrhunderts im Deutschen Sprachgebiet, 2nd edition 1982). We also find quite a number of authority files established in the context of national retrospective bibliography. The authority files of the Short-Title Catalogue Netherlands, 1450–1800 (STCN) and the famous "Répertoire d'imprimeurs/libraires: vers 1500 – vers 1810" compiled by Jean-Dominique Mellot and Élisabeth Queval published as "Nouvelle édition mise à jour et augmentée" of the Bibliothèque nationale de France published in Paris in 2004 with its very extensive and well documented records are part of the CERL Thesaurus. The German file for printers used in the context of the GBV (Gemeinsamer Bibliotheksverbund) and for the VD17 was also integrated. As for VD16, authority records for printers and publishers were built up especially for the CERL Thesaurus containing the standardised name form (present in the bibliographic record) and reference forms (originally handled in separate records with a reference from an unauthorised other form of a name to the standardised form used in the VD16). A colleague in Stockholm is currently using the file to add records for early Swedish printers by working directly into the file.

Imprint names have special problems because the definitions of the standardised forms differ very much. Many bibliographic files do not use authority control for printers' names. According to the different cataloguing rules for early printed books the name as found on the book may be found in the publishers' statement – without any differentiation of homonyms or standardisation of variants like different spellings or name forms of both first and family names. In some cases the whole imprint statement as found on the book is shown in the record. The German cataloguing rules restrict the indication of the name to the family name. When authority records exist, printers are sometimes considered as personal names, sometimes as corporate bodies and this is reflected in the differing structures of the names. Another problem is the definition of an entity: when is a new record needed for a printer or publisher – when the name does not change? Some tend to have a long history – family history and printer's shop history. All these rules are now well-defined in a paper accessible on CERL's website. Nevertheless, editing of the records present in the CERL Thesaurus according to these rules is still outstanding and even merging of the contributed records has not yet been undertaken. So the number of the records in the file is higher than the number of entities. Merging will soon start at least for those records which have identical standardised forms as headings.

In the records of the CERL Thesaurus we find again standard forms and variants, even if the variants are less frequent than for place names and will need a lot of editing, especially adding the non-standardised or differently standardised forms present in the bibliographic records. Editing should only start once the purpose these variants may serve is better known – especially for assisted searching. Again we see contextualisation taking place in linking the names to predecessors or successors and by the wealth of information contributed by some files. Imprint names are not only linked to place names in the internal structure of the CERL Thesaurus but also to an ever increasing number of printers' devices coming either from original files which already show a link to this kind of image information or from digitisation projects undertaken by CERL in order to enhance this part of the Thesaurus based on printed resources. Not only records contributed by the Italian Edit16 database allow direct linking to digitised printers' devices, images are also accessible from Ronald B. McKerrow's *Printers' & Publishers' Devices in England & Scotland 1485-1640* (London, 1913), Francisco Vindel's *Escudas y marcas de impressores y libreros en Espana durante los siglos XV a XIX (1485–1850)* (Madrid, 1935), and Philippe Renouard's *Les marques typographiques parisiennes des 15e et 16e siècles* (Paris, 1926) thanks to the digitisation of the printed volumes. This work is ongoing.

Personal names

In the personal names file – the most important part of the CERL Thesaurus – all persons contributing to the intellectual and artistic creation of a printed book are taken into account. The first input in this part of the CERL Thesaurus came again from the national retrospective bibliography, STCN, created by the Royal Library in The Hague. 52,000 authority records of the ESTC were integrated at an early stage. The biggest number of records is contributed by the German Personennamendatei (PND). This national authority file is highly specialised in names of early printing and they are marked by a special code which allows their automated selection for inclusion into the CERL Thesaurus. The PND also contains all the classical and mediaeval authors published in printed editions (Personennamen der Antike, PAN, Wiesbaden, Reichert, 1993 and Personennamen des Mittelalters, PMA first published in 1989, and in the 2nd enlarged edition in 2000) and since then maintained within the PND. The CERL Thesaurus receives a weekly update from the PND. Again the records contain standard and variant forms, sometimes pseudonyms, mostly biographical data, often sources. A particular strength of the list are names related to the provenance of the books, mainly former owners, marked as a special kind of record type – thus allowing particular features in retrieval. This is described in more detail by David Shaw in his book. Internal links within the Thesaurus may lead to associated corporate names or related personal names. Manual editing – described later – and inclusion of other authority files for personal names, especially those which control bibliographic data recorded in the Heritage of the Book Database are ongoing.

Corporate names

The corporate names included into the CERL Thesaurus have been less developed until now as names of corporate bodies in early book cataloguing are extremely difficult and heterogeneous among files. Most of the records have been contributed in the context of provenance information. They may also contain links to successors or predecessors, and show the same particular feature for provenance as the personal names file.

References

This part of the CERL Thesaurus is a sort of a help file. It gives full bibliographic information for all those titles which are quoted in different authority records, mostly in abbreviated form, and relates this to the abbreviations which might vary considerably between different agencies contributing the files. The reference helps to create the mouse-over presentation in the Internet version of the Thesaurus for the abbreviated sources.

Providing content – editing the CERL Thesaurus

The CERL Thesaurus brings together authority records created for different authority files. That is very much in the tradition of CERL: merging in one file originally separate files coming from different libraries and/or cataloguing projects. That is exactly what CERL does in building up the Heritage of the Printed Book file hosted by OCLC. For internationally shared authority work this methodology is interesting, as there are experiments elsewhere with search engines, cross-file searching and record linking (especially in the VIAF project) whereas the CERL Thesaurus is applied for physical merging of files.

The CERL Thesaurus is not prescriptive of any standard form, but by quoting the agencies using different standard forms it may help cataloguers in choosing an appropriate standard form, if it is used for this purpose. As the records come from different files, it is not selective in content but aims at accommodating in a common structure all kinds of records and all information coming in. The value of the Thesaurus is to list all name forms in one record. As for all authority records the name forms thus become equally eligible as access points, the entity described in an authority record is clearly defined and named more by its number than by any heading. Therefore keeping already assigned authority record numbers of the source files is another important feature of the CERL Thesaurus. This is not only vital for automated updating but may also allow one day for directly linking to the bibliographical records in the Heritage of the Book Database or within the CERL Portal in which these authority numbers appear.

One of the interesting features of the CERL Thesaurus is that it does not use – or better, reuse – only genuine authority data. It also allows the use of standardised forms contained in a bibliographic record in order to construct an authority record out of information gathered in the bibliographic record. This is especially interesting for recording place names – but also for making best use of reference forms for personal names contained in a bibliographic record and for further developing the imprint names section.

The integration of all these records into a common file structure allows the creating of added-value features, e.g. links to places, successors, predecessors, provenance marks, etc. Thus the CERL Thesaurus also creates new records and enables the enrichment of the existing records by adding new information.

Editing the CERL Thesaurus is done in three ways:

(a) The preferred way is an automatic process. New records are integrated by machine process, records are created and prepared by automatic routines, duplicates are detected and merged by machine procedures. Further information is supplied by machine processes. Links to digitised images or to other authority records in the file are detected and added automatically into the records.

(b) Not all editing and merging of duplicates can be done by machine, as the records do not contain all the information needed for successful (i.e. correct) merging without intellectual input. Nevertheless, in view of the quantity of records, it is helpful to apply machine routines for detecting possible duplicates. Machine-supported manual editing is used to work in the files. The likely duplicates are listed in a file for editorial checking. The editorial control may approve a machine-detected duplicate, in which case a particular software routine merges the records, that means maintains all information given in the record marked for deletion which is not present in the record to be kept. The decision about merging has to be taken by a human eye and brain, comparing the two records and pressing the yes or no button. A good number of de-duplications can thus be achieved per hour. Sophisticated machine power – for the merging process – enables rather quick human editing with reliable results. Once the editor decides that there is no duplicate, the two records remain in the file and they are marked to be withdrawn from the duplicates list or to be maintained for further checking. For the time being, editorial control remains at the level of the authority records. According to the content of the two records, de-duplication takes place or the record is discarded. Quite a number of duplicates remain in the file which can only be detected by closer bibliographical and biographical studies.

(c) Manual editing also allows an editor to create new records, to enhance existing records or to merge identical records. New records can be created online in the CERL Thesaurus. This is done for Swedish printers names and was used for adding some place names in the past. This also needs to be done to edit user comments inserted via the annotation tool which allows the user to contribute to the development of the CERL Thesaurus. Manual editing is also necessary if a complete revision of the content of the records is envisaged.

All manual editing is done via the WinADH cataloguing client, maintained by the Data Conversion Group in Göttingen. A special login is required which can be obtained through CERL's Secretariat.

Use of the CERL Thesaurus

The CERL Thesaurus can be accessed and used in two ways. It is accessible free of charge for everybody via the Internet and WWW (http://cerl.sub.uni-goettingen.de/ct/). Unlike some other CERL products, especially the Heritage of the Book Database, the use is not limited to the CERL membership. A second access is through SRU – this allows the Thesaurus to be integrated into other applications, for the time being especially into the Heritage of the Printed Book Database and into the CERL Portal, but in principle and upon agreement of CERL, the Thesaurus could be integrated into other Internet applications and databases dealing with early imprints and needing to overcome the problem of different forms of names for one and the same entity. The SRU Interface is SRU 1.1 compatible and provides the CT information in a MARCXML syntax or in a proprietary format for using variant names in assisted searching. The indexes are the same as in the web interface. The WEB interface for the general user and access is supposed to be self-explaining. The search box on the first screen allows the user to choose a section of the Thesaurus with the help of a pull-down menu, to select a method of searching (truncated or exact name) and – at a very prominent place – to limit the search to provenance information only. "Browse" and "search" are the two possible access options. I would always recommend browsing in order to get a feeling of the content of the files. The use of a virtual keyboard for searching in non-Roman script is offered. "Browse" leads to an alphabetically sorted list of names, preceded by the number of hits. If the name is a reference form within the authority record the (first) standardised heading is also indicated by "=". If one or more forms from this browse list – which also allows viewing previous or next page – are chosen, the system automatically ticks all other names contained in the same authority record and presented on this screen. From there the user is taken to a short display – in case of two or more hits – or to the full record in case of a single hit. Icons with mouse-over text display allow further navigation once the record has been identified. The display of the internal format is very helpful for librarians who thus understand the history and creation of this record, especially if it was merged from several different and multilingual files. Other options are the display of related records, the display of standard forms, showing the chosen headings according to different files and/or cataloguing rules. If the icon for provenance information shows up on a record of a person or a corporate body, this allows access to different remote databases from which provenance information has been included into the CERL Thesaurus. The CERL Thesaurus is thus – to my knowledge – the first tool that allows provenance searching in different local catalogues through one access point: the record in the Thesaurus. In printers' records a link may be present which allows the user to access digitised printers' devices hosted on different remote systems.

One of the very important and future oriented WEB2 features of the CERL Thesaurus is to allow for annotations. They can be linked to a particular record by clicking on the annotation icon, which also allows reading the existing comments or annotations. By this means everybody – researcher or librarian – can contribute to the content and quality of the CERL Thesaurus.

Assisted searching

When CERL started to conceive and subsequently to build up the Thesaurus in 1999, this was governed by two complementary reasons: firstly, that great number of files arrived for the inclusion into HPB which in their original context were based on authority files, mostly for names of persons, but sometimes also for printers and publishers. This original link to an authority file was maintained in the HPB, recording the respective ID Number of the authority record, but was no longer of any help in searching as this number lost its linking value. The information contained in the authority records referred to was lost for HPB, which in most cases only retained the standardised form (there is nevertheless the option to include all name forms in the bibliographical record). The second and principle reason was HPB itself. This is a highly specialised information tool for early printed books from 1450 to 1850. The information contained in the records is carefully maintained, mapped and thus retrievable in a way that is most adequate for early printing, much better than what our OPACs can do. Still, this sophisticated retrieval cannot by itself overcome different traditions of cataloguing transported in the records. So the CERL

Thesaurus was meant to directly help the user of HPB to find his way through the multiplicity of cataloguing traditions and to give him the best and the most complete results for a particular search without asking him to perform himself the whole intellectual work (like knowing all variants of a place name). When searching for a place name or a personal name the user does not only get the hits for his search term, he is also invited to find more results by using assisted searching (clicking on the link "find variations of this … name"). If he chooses this option, the search term is transferred to the CERL Thesaurus (a separate and distant file) and the hits within the CERL Thesaurus are displayed. According to the choice of the user, a record identified on the Thesaurus can be used to enhance the search on HPB (pressing the "search" button displayed on each retrieved record) by taking into account all name forms present in the CERL Thesaurus record, translated into "or" searched within HPB. This feature is available and works very well for place names (called: "publisher location" in the HPB) and personal names. For imprint names ("publisher" in the HPB) it is offered but has still to be more developed and better adapted. The Heritage of the Book Database hosted by OCLC thus makes use of an external file in order to help the user to find his way in the heterogeneous content of the records and to get a better retrieval result. This feature is undoubtedly of immense help in retrieval, but it cannot overcome all search problems in such a composite file. In some cases only a firm linking structure could do this. Three examples taken from the place names may illustrate this. Homonymous names (like Frankfurt am Main, Frankfurt an der Oder, sometimes only called "Frankfurt" as a variant) create huge problems in assisted searching and falsify the retrieval results. Homonymous name variants create the same kind of confusion. For example, Lugdunum is a variant for Lyon and for Leiden (Lugdunum Batavorum). Fictitious place names (especially coded) cannot be used for assisted search facility. A fictitious name like "Utopia" or "Eleutheropolis" can be used for several real places or to describe a separate (unidentified) entity. Fictitious names of the type "Rom i.e. Schwabach" would give wrong search results in assisted searching as all imprints published in Rome would be included, and by a special marker (410 11) they can be excluded from assisted searching. In order to obtain acceptable, albeit not perfect results careful mapping between the search queries of the questioning system and the indexing of the Thesaurus needs to be done and designed in the query routines. Imagine the number of false hits you get when your querying system translates a name like “Victorius, Petrus” ($aVictorius$bPetrus) into a search “Victorius or Petrus” instead of “Victorius and Petrus”. Even worse things can happen when parts of the name are not taken into account, particularly surnames, in the CERL Thesaurus in the subfield $r, e.g., “$aThomas$r Aquinas”, as a query was not answered because the CERL Thesaurus listed Aquinas in $e and not $b. The integration of the CERL Thesaurus into another Search application is in no way an easy and automated procedure but needs careful intellectual defining and monitoring.

The CERL Thesaurus is also used for assisted searching within the CERL Portal. On the advanced search screen the search for “persons” and “places” can be extended by clicking the “add variant forms” link next to the search field. Here the application is a bit different as the user himself may choose name forms which he feels are helpful to get a better recall of records. This is a useful feature as some records – for places and persons – contain a huge number of variants, taken from all kinds of sources, and which are not necessarily present on any bibliographic file. Automated searching for all these many forms is machine time consuming and easily leads to time-out results (which do not help at all) especially addressing remote indexes via Z 39.50, or brings up false results if only part of the files provided show hits. The use of the CERL Thesaurus in the context of the CERL portal also brings up the question of relevant content. As the CERL portal also gives access to manuscripts – both mediaeval and modern – the entities of the CERL Thesaurus are no longer sufficient.

Further development of the CERL Thesaurus – Semantic Web

The value of the CERL Thesaurus is also found in itself – in a tool that gives us the possibility to bring together and to edit authority information for early printing in a single and authoritative environment which can be moved closer and closer to research context. The Thesaurus allows not only editing of existing records – even by using the annotation facility – but creation of new records for information not yet available in the file by all sorts of procedures, to link to all kinds of external resources in order to enhance the impact of the information, but it also provides the structure to bring in new and different entities relevant for early printing.

Enhancing existing content

There are lots of wishes and examples: new records could be created and added by checking the names present in the HPB and the CERL Portal which are not yet included in the Thesaurus. The records can be enhanced, e.g., by geographic coordinates from the Bernstein project to be added to the place names. With these coordinates we can create an electronic map which would free us from the historically doubtful use of country codes and maybe give a better result to research questions like "French imprints of the 16th century". Geographic historical information is also provided by other projects not limited to the history of printing. Bavaria, for instance, creates an electronic tool for its regional history, Bayerische Landesbibliothek online, Ortsdatenbank. This information can be linked to records in the CERL Thesaurus so that you can switch from one instrument to the other. The imprint name records allow for further connections. All started by linking to the digitised images of printers' devices of the Italian project in the context of EDIT16. Since then a number of reference works for printers' devices (other examples of predecessors of authority files, by the way) have been added and much more can be done in this area. The links to digital images available on the internet through full text digitisation may not only be interesting for access from the bibliographic record to the full text but also for printers' devices and examples of printing characters to be related to a particular printer. The records for persons can be linked to portraits of persons, more and more accessible in different files, or digitised copies of people's handwritings, important both for provenance and autograph studies. And there are many more ideas and possibilities...

Particular care will be given to develop the CERL Thesaurus to better accommodate information on manuscripts, to better serve the CERL Portal which includes manuscript information. The Thesaurus already has important assets as the names of mediaeval and ancient authors from the German authority files PAN and PMA are included. The place name section would have to be developed for regional information about production places for manuscripts. The personal names must be expanded to include scribes or manuscript illuminators and the corporate names file to include manuscript holding institutions, both modern and historical, scriptoria, monasteries, etc. A large number of these standardised name forms are available in the records of the manuscript files.

More entities can be added in both the place names and the imprint name files taking into account information on bindings – again providing places, workshops and digital images, e.g., through the German file for bindings, Einbanddatenbank – or on paper production in the context of the Bernstein project, again providing places, workshops and digital images. In order to maintain the relevance, special codes for different kinds of places will be introduced for printing places.

The CERL Thesaurus is not a completed authority file but a growing and inspiring tool for information on early printing. Therefore nowadays it is very much at the heart of CERL's activities.

Files for new entities

Further development goes even beyond enhancing the files which are already there. The CERL Thesaurus may need to become hospitable to other kinds of authority records. For some time already we have been discussing about a file for uniform titles – so very important in a FRBR environment, and vital for finding a way through manuscripts and early printing traditions of the core works of the European cultural heritage.

And the need already arises – especially through the Portal development – to have multilingual subject approaches in all kinds of areas, to mention only book illustration, book binding vocabularies, provenance information, manuscript cataloguing terminology, historic events, etc. I am not saying that the Thesaurus is the instrument to be developed into a multilingual dictionary for all information of this kind, but it already provides structures which are useful for this kind of development.

Inclusion into the CERL Research Portal

The CERL Thesaurus is also the core element in the development of what we call the CERL Research Portal giving an even better access to the various and rich information gathered by CERL for the users. It might allow them to enter a search term and receive information about persons, when the name is found in the Thesaurus personal name file, about organisations, if found in the corporate name file, about titles using data coming from the HPB. Information can be further differentiated into books showing titles from HPB, book ownership from the Thesaurus provenance data, related publications from the subject headings in the bibliographic record, libraries which own copies from the holding information in the HPB, etc.

Semantic Web

In February 2009 I was invited to demonstrate the CERL Thesaurus to a community of researchers – mediaevalists – interested in Semantic Web applications. They all did quite different research projects, creating databases and web pages for their particular concerns. Our concerns – as librarians – and their concerns wanting an ongoing impact of their findings may be joined in a common care for the CERL Thesaurus. In fact the value of the Thesaurus and its future lies in its role of providing on the European level authority data to organise intellectual content.

The CERL Thesaurus provides an object identifier (and maintains all object identifiers of contributing libraries). It gathers all kinds of name forms (thus having a dictionary or vocabulary function), it provides the necessary (basic) information about an entity in a multilingual environment. It allows the establishment of relationships between entities, both controlled: e.g., predecessors, successors, pseudonyms, fictitious name forms, and machine processed: related place names for printers, etc. The CERL Thesaurus has a pathfinder function and works as a finding aid. It points to the relevant material and allows for "post-coordination" in a context where pre-coordination – the usual library and cataloguing task – is no longer sufficient, this means in the WWW. It thus helps to discover more. This requires a sophisticated implementation so that the useful functions of the CERL Thesaurus help the user to navigate the interlinked cosmos.

In the European context the CERL Thesaurus invites both reuse and cooperation in the area of early printing and – one day – in the manuscript tradition. Authority records are expensive to build and to maintain. It is necessary to join forces for better and fuller information, serving not only one's own particular purpose but multiple interests. Therefore it is better to standardise – using existing tools – than to reinvent. Every name form is admitted in the Thesaurus – but it must be integrated into one entity, into one name record. The common denominator is the object identifier, not any name. Individual projects may use any free text, standardised entries – provided usually by libraries – to ensure long-term retrieval and access. Tools – like the CERL Thesaurus – allow searching of any structured information with a wide vocabulary. The researcher describes, the librarians standardise in order to provide wider access. So everybody is invited to enrich the CERL Thesaurus as a backbone of Semantic Web application, thus caring for its growing relevance in content and ensuring its long-term sustainability and effectiveness.

References

Anderson, Dorothy. Universal Bibliographic Control : a long term policy, a plan for action. Pullach/ München : Verlag Dokumentation, 1974.

Anonymous classics : a list of uniform headings for European literatures / compiled by the IFLA International Office for UBC ; edited by Rosemary C. Hewett. London : IFLA International Office for UBC, 1978.

Beaudiquez, Marcelle; Françoise Bourdon. Management and use of name authority files (personal names, corporate bodies and uniform titles) : evaluation and prospects. München : K.G. Saur, 1991.

Bourdon, Françoise. International cooperation in the field of authority data : an analytical study with recommendations. München : K.G. Saur, 1993. See also French version: Bourdon, Françoise. International cooperation in the field of authority data = Coopération internationale en matière de données d'autorité auteurs. // BBF 4(1994), 142-144 [online]. Available at: http://bbf.enssib.fr/ [cited 2010-02-08].

Functional requirements for authority data : a conceptual model / edited by Glenn E. Patton ; IFLA Working Group on Functional Requirements and Numbering of Authority Records (FRANAR). Final report, December 2008 / approved by the Standing Committees of the IFLA Cataloguing Section and IFLA Classification and Indexing Section, March 2009. München : K.G. Saur, 2009.

Functional requirements for bibliographic records : final report / IFLA Study Group on the Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records. München : K.G. Saur, 1998. Available also at: http://www.ifla.org/VII/s13/frbr/frbr.pdf [cited 2010-02-08].

Guidelines for authority and reference entries / recommended by the Working Group on an International Authority System, approved by the Standing Committees of the IFLA Section on Cataloguing and the IFLA Section on Information Technology. London : IFLA International Programme for UBC, 1984.

Guidelines for authority records and references / revised by the Working Group on GARE Revision, 2nd ed. München : K.G. Saur, 2001.

RDA: Resource Description and Access [cited 2010-02-08]. Available at: http://www.rda-jsc.org/rda.html; Full Draft 11/24/08 [cited 2010-02-08]. Available at: http://www.rda-jsc.org/rdafulldraft.html

Statement of principles adopted by the International Conference on Cataloguing Principles, Paris, October 1961. // Report / International Conference on Cataloguing Principles, Paris, 9th–18th October, 1961 ; edited by A. H. Chaplin and Dorothy Anderson. Reprint. London : IFLA International Office for UBC, 1981.

UNIMARC manual : authorities format. 2nd revised and enlarged edition. München : K.G. Saur, 2001.

UNIMARC manual : authorities format. 3rd ed. / edited by Mirna Willer. München : K.G. Saur, 2009.

Readings and website references

Bourdon, Françoise. Modelling authority data for libraries, archives and museums : a project in progress at AFNOR. // Cataloging & classification quarterly 38, 3/4(2004), 505-516, and in: Authority control in organizing and accessing information : definition and international experience / Arlene G. Taylor; Barbara

B. Tillett, editors. New York [etc.] : The Howarth Information Press, 2004. Pp. 505-516. Available also at: http://www.sba.unifi.it/ac/relazioni/bourdon_eng.pdf [cited 2010-02-08].

CERL: Consortium of European Research Libraries [cited 2010-02-08]. Available at: http://www.cerl.org/

CERL Thesaurus (Homepage information) [cited 2010-02-08]. Available at:
http://cerl.sub.uni-goettingen.de/ct/; http://www.cerl.org/web/en/resources/cerl_thesaurus/main

Fabian, Claudia. The CERL Thesaurus File. // Cataloging & classification quarterly 39,1/2 (2004), 413-420, and in: Authority control in organizing and accessing information : definition and international experience / Arlene G. Taylor; Barbara B. Tillett, editors. New York [etc.] : The Howarth Information Press, 2004. Pp. 413-420. Available also at: Authority control: definizione ed esperienze internazionali / Atti del convegno internazionale, Firenze, 10 – 12 febbraio 2003. Firenze, 2003. Pp. 327-333 [cited 2010-02-08]. Available at: http://www.sba.unifi.it/ac/relazioni/fabian_eng.pdf

Library of Congress authorities [cited 2010-02-08]. Available at: http://authorities.loc.gov/

MARC 21 format for authority data [cited 2010-02-08]. Available at: www.loc.gov/marc/authority

Patton, Glenn E. FRAR : extending FRBR concepts to authority data. // World Library and Information Congress: 71st IFLA General Conference and Council,14-18 August 2005, Oslo, Norway [cited 2010-02-08]. Available at: http://archive.ifla.org/IV/ifla71/papers/014e-Patton.pdf

Tillett, Barbara B.; Corey Harper. Library of Congress controlled vocabularies, the Virtual International Authority File, and their application to the Semantic Web. // World Library and Information Congress: 73rd IFLA General Conference and Council,19-23 August 2007, Durban, South Africa [cited 2010-02-08]. Available at: http://archive.ifla.org/IV/ifla73/papers/147-Tillet_Harper-en.pdf; German translation: Kontrollierte Vokabulare der Library of Congress, der Virtual International Authority File und ihre Anwendung im Semantic Web [cited 2010-02-08]. Available at: http://archive.ifla.org/IV/ifla73/papers/147-Tillet_Harper-trans-de.pdf

VIAF: The Virtual International Authority File [cited 2010-02-08]. Available at: http://www.oclc.org/research/projects/viaf/; Beta search engine [cited 2010-02-08]. Available at: http://viaf.org/

Biographical sketch

Dr Claudia Fabian has worked in the Bavarian State Library, Munich, Germany since 1984, after receiving the MA and teaching degree in Classical Philology and French. After being responsible for cataloguing and authority control for years, she was Head of Users Services, and since 2004 she has been the Head of the Department of Manuscripts and Early and Rare Printed Books. She is a member of several groups in national library committees and represents the Bavarian State Library in CERL's (Consortium of European Research Libraries) committees.

NOVI KONCEPTUALNI MODELI ZA ORGANIZACIJU INFORMACIJA AUTORIZIRANIH PODATAKA U EUROPSKOM KONTEKSTU

Sažetak

Na opisu Tezaurusa Konzorcija europskih znanstvenih knjižnica (CERL Thesaurus) rad prikazuje izgradnju europske datoteke autoriziranih podataka za stare tiskane knjige. Opisuje se sadržaj i struktura Tezaurusa, načini na koji se prikuplja njegov sadržaj, postupci uređivanja datoteke, daljnji razvoj, uporaba računalne tehnologije (potpomognuto pretraživanje, pristup lokalnim katalozima, mehanizam mrežnih veza s drugim relevantnim izvorima informacija), te uloga datoteka autoriziranih podataka za organizaciju intelektualnog sadržaja.

Ključne riječi: autorizirani podaci, stara tiskana knjiga, CERL-ov Tezaurus, europski kontekst

IV.

Conservation and Preservation of Cultural Heritage

THE EVOLUTION OF THEORY, PRACTICE AND RESEARCH ON ARCHIVAL PRESERVATION AND ACCESS IN A DIGITAL WORLD

Anne J. Gilliland
University of California, Los Angeles, Department of Information Studies, USA

Abstract

New technologies are making it possible to provide unprecedented global access to and information about the world's recorded heritage. At the same time, these technologies are facilitating the generation, dissemination and multi-versioning of an abundance of potential archival material across the spectrum of human endeavors, often in emergent forms and media. The identification of what to preserve, how, and how best to provide access to it has become perpetual archival endeavors. Around these dynamics, a rapidly developing research front in Archival Studies is addressing everything from the nature of the contemporary human record and its appraisal, to the preservation and curation of the by-products of digital technologies, to the very nature and role of archives in a plural, digital world. This article identifies some major areas of change for archives and their content; reviews what has been happening to key traditional archival ideas and principles in this new world; discusses some major areas of current research in Archival Studies, and identifies areas where more research is needed to support archives and archival practices in the future.

Keywords

archival studies research, digital archives, digital curatorship, digitization, electronic records management, metadata management

Introduction

This is a time of great change, challenge and development for archives and special collections,[1] as well as for research in Archival Studies. New

1 This paper will primarily address archives containing accumulations of organizational records, but acknowledges that many archives, especially those in academic institutions and community-based archives, hold, or are paired with special collections of primary source materials such as manuscripts, personal papers, photographs and oral histories.

technologies are making it possible to provide unprecedented global access to and compilation of digital information about, and copies of, the world's recorded heritage. Archives and special collections are beginning to emerge from their sequestered vaults and "specialness" and broadly engage with the public as well as the institutional, scholarly, and various other specialized communities that previously were their primary audiences. At the same time, however, new technologies are facilitating the generation, dissemination and multi-versioning of potential archival material across the spectrum of human endeavors in unprecedented volumes and in a dizzying and constantly evolving array of digital formats, thereby making the identification of what to preserve, how, and how best to provide access to it never-ending endeavors. Around these dynamics, a growing research infrastructure, energized by a growing corpus of career academics and doctoral students in Archival Studies as well as new sources of research funding, is addressing everything from the nature of the contemporary human record and its appraisal, to the preservation and curation of the by-products of digital technologies, to the very nature and role of archives in a plural, digital world.

The distinctive role of managing and preserving recorded evidence of enduring value, and the evolution of this role in recent centuries, has endowed archives with tremendous power over the human story and its recounting in and across time. As novelist Virginia Woolf once wrote, "Nothing has really happened until it has been recorded", and archives today not only are responsible for what is retained and made accessible from that which has been recorded, but also have input into the very shape of the record. Contemplating this role and how it is faring in the current digital environment, this article will identify some major areas of change for archives and their content; review what has been happening to key traditional archival ideas and principles in this new world; discuss some major areas of current research in Archival Studies, and identify areas where more research is needed to support archives and archival practices in the future.

The expanding role and nature of archives

Many definitions of archives have been offered over the past century. Charles Samarand, Professor of Bibliography and Archivistics, École nationale des Chartes, Paris and future Director General of the National Archives of France wrote in 1938:

> Authors in the Nineteenth century who sought to give a more precise meaning to the word archives gave contradictory definitions of it because they followed preconceived ideas, like Ménage and Le Duchat before them. We have seen that in the predominant thought of the first of these etymologists his conception of archives was that of ancient documents; for the second, it was the idea of precious documents. Several modern authors attach to the word archives other conceptions just as little satisfactory in themselves, e.g., that of official documents, of historical documents, of authentic documents, of documents in substantiation of rights.
>
> In actual practice, if archives are in fact composed above all of documents in great part in one or another of these categories and sometimes in all of these, it does not mean that there may not be found in the archives documents which are neither ancient nor precious nor official nor authentic nor such as substantiate rights [...][2]

A few years later, in 1944, Sir Hilary Jenkinson of the United Kingdom Public Records Office wrote of:

> [...] the possibilities of Archives as evidence, as correctives of the more or less *ex parte* statements of contemporaries or later commentators on events [...][3]

More recently, both scholars and archivists have been pointing out the sociological and anthropological as well as evidentiary roles that archives play. Sociology scholar Thomas Osborne writes in 1999:

> Whether as a notion, impression, concept or anti-concept, the image of the archive is a useful focal point for bringing together issues of representation, interpretation and reason with questions of identity, evidence and authenticity; in other words, just those issues that tend to concern those who work on those kinds of problems that typically characterize the history and historiography of the human and cultural sciences.[4]

2 RG 64 Records of the United States National Archives and Records Administration, Subject Files of Solon J. Buck Relating to Archival Principles, Practices and Institutions, 1789-1956, Box 1.

3 Jenkinson, Hilary. Reflections of an archivist. // A modern archives reader / edited by Maygene F. Daniels and Timothy Walch. Washington, D.C. : National Archives and Records Service, U.S. General Services Administration, 1984. (Original work published 1944.)

4 Osborne, Thomas. The ordinariness of the archive. // History of the human sciences 12, 2(1999), 51-64.

Archivist and archival educator Terry Cook has written that:

> A collective shift has taken place during the past century from a juridical-administrative justification for archives grounded in the concepts of the state to a socio-cultural justification for archives grounded in wider public policy and public use.[5]

Professionally, archives today are widely conceived of as either cultural heritage or information institutions or both. As such, they are often grouped together with museums, historical societies, galleries, and libraries. However, as the previous quotes indicate, their distinctive and original role in society was as the preservers of non-current, but still administratively, legally and fiscally valuable recorded evidence. Historically, that evidence was generated in the form of administrative records first by monarchs and governments, and later also by commerce, religious establishments, and other kinds of institutions. These records were retained by institutional archives in order to support the continued functioning of that institution as it pursued its interests at home and abroad. With the growth of nation states, archives became part of the infrastructure that supported the promulgation of a national identity and they are still very much associated with national, community and personal identity formation today. However, a key conceptual augmentation occurred with the French Revolution, which overtly acknowledged the role that archives could play as instruments of democracy by ensuring government and institutional transparency and accountability to citizens and other stakeholders. This also marked the beginning of a culture of citizen accessibility to records that pertained to them. The scholarly role that is now so closely identified with archives was widely recognized only comparatively recently, in the Nineteenth Century, with the development of the professional discipline of History within the academy and the rise of the modern scientific historical method that relied upon the availability of original primary source material such as the records that could be found in archives.

As can be inferred from the above, archives, or at least repositories of records, have been around for several thousand years. During this time a body of practices has developed that has managed to accommodate or adapt to considerable change in media production, dissemination and use. Fundamental archival principles formally enunciated and

5 Cook, Terry. Archival science and postmodernism : new formulations for old concepts. // Archival science 1, 1(2000), 3-24. Available at: http://www.mybestdocs.com/cook-t-postmod-p1-00.htm [cited: 2010-04-04].

codified in the last three centuries as the basis of practice in Europe and the so-called New World included the Sanctity of Original Order, *Respect des Fonds*, and the Principle of Provenance.[6] These principles have been discerned also in some examinations of records repositories of antiquity and it has been argued that they naturally emanate out of the practices of recordkeeping and should, therefore, be reasonably expected to hold across future changes in media production, dissemination and use. While change is nothing new for archivists, what is different in the Twenty-first Century is the speed of change that is occurring. The practices of recordkeeping are also evolving, in large part due to the kinds of reformulations, re-use and data compilations that are made possible by digital technology. All of this raises some pivotal questions for archivists – does the set of principles that has guided their various practices for centuries still hold good? Does the entire archival paradigm need to be reconceptualized? Perhaps some principles of practices are more robust in the digital environment than others?

The impact of digital technology does not end there, however. It has played a large role also in reshaping bureaucracies and blurring key boundaries, for example, between collaborating institutions, official and personal documentation, and spatial and temporal dimensions of recordkeeping and records transmission. Such reshaping and boundary-blurring have major implications for the nature of the very object at the center of archival practice – the record. A prevalent archival definition of a record is that it is data or information in a fixed form that is created or received in the course of individual or institutional activity and set aside (preserved) as evidence of that activity for future reference.[7] The record was also classically considered to be the unconscious by-product of a bureaucratic act (although many archivists today would argue that the record is a purposive document that is very consciously designed and generated). However, in the digital realm, where objects have no tangible form, mutability is innate, form is fluid, multiple originals of the same object can co-exist, and there may be no physical way to extract the data that comprises a single record or series of records in order to preserve it within an archival system, identifying what exactly comprises the record, fixing it, and then acting to set it aside can be

6 For further discussion of these principles, see Gilliland-Swetland, Anne J. Enduring paradigm, new opportunities : the value of the archival perspective in the digital environment. Washington, D.C. : Council on Library and Information Resources, 2000.

7 See Society of American Archivists Glossary [cited: 2010-04-04]. Available at: http://www.archivists.org/glossary/

highly problematic. These problems are exacerbated outside the auspices of the individual bureaucratic institution. Multi-institutional and multi-sector scientific and other scholarly collaborations hosted on wikis and other multimedia collaborative software, artist and musicians' mashups and remixes, social networking and online gaming sites, online video and imagebases, and personal and official blogs and web pages all pose conceptual and practical challenges for archivists who are engaged in capturing evidence of these sorts of endeavors. What is more, in the absence of professional archivists, who tend to work within formal institutional structures, "avocational archivists" have been appearing in some of these situations, taking on the task of "archiving" the digital activities of online groups or communities (albeit that this is not a long-term solution to the preservation of such materials). Social tagging has also become a prominent form of end-user description of resources. If archivists do not step up to manage these kinds of digital environments or to incorporate user practices such as social tagging into their activities, are they in danger of relegating themselves to the role of solely serving as custodians to certain tangible kinds of institutional bureaucratic records? Who should be responsible for and who has the skills and resources to undertake the wider documentation of human endeavor, documentation that today is greater than it ever has been before? How much change is actually occurring or should actually occur in the nature of archival activity?

The changing nature of archival activity

Appraisal

In the first half of the Twentieth Century, innovative technologies of mass production, Depression-era government programs, and massive war efforts began to generate vast quantities and ready duplicates of records in increasingly vulnerable formats. Responding to these issues, archivists in the United States pioneered appraisal and records management techniques for identifying which records really needed to be retained permanently in the archives and which could be discarded or otherwise destroyed. These techniques represented the first time that archivists systematically began to influence what would be retained for the future about the past, as well as the first concerted effort, through records retention scheduling, by archivists to get involved with the creation and management of the active record rather than being passive recipients of inactive records.

The continuation of appraisal as a viable and appropriate activity in the digital domain has now come into question, however. Arguments have been made that it is possibly cheaper and easier to store everything than to try to eliminate certain materials out of digital collections, yet at the same time, legal, social and emotional imperatives remain to eliminate certain kinds of information or documentation from the record. The actual elimination itself is also problematic, given the difficulties in this era of forensic computing of making something digital go away completely. What is more, archivists find themselves faced with a new abundance of documentation – this time created using digital technologies, that captures more aspects of contemporary society and institutional and disciplinary practices, especially more ephemeral and individual practices, than do their traditional archival holdings. Digital editing capabilities result in a lack of drafts (what previously might have been considered to be the manuscript material that formed the basis of literary and personal paper collections) and yet at the same time a multiplicity of versions and compilations. Automated rather than manual accessioning, preservation, arrangement and description, together with more sophisticated end-user retrieval algorithms are becoming a necessity.

The trajectory of engagement with the active record through records management, on the other hand, has become even more central to archival work as archivists have sought in recent decades to be involved at the design stage for electronic record-keeping systems in order to ensure that these systems are capable of identifying, segregating, and setting aside for archival preservation records of enduring value. Archivists have been working with software developers, systems designers and the actual creators of the material to ensure that any documentation created will be in an environment as little dependent upon proprietary software as possible; systems have sufficient security controls and metadata to document their reliability and authenticity in and over time; systems capture and describe accurately their provenance, content and any rights considerations; and materials that need to be preserved can indeed be "fixed" in an unalterable way and removed when appropriate from an active system to an archival system.

Arrangement and description

Unlike libraries, archives have not spent the past several decades responding to challenges as to why they still should continue to exist as physical institutions. That may well happen in the future, but it seems to be apparent to most people who have reason to contemplate these things that these repositories of centuries of primary evidence must remain – but maybe only as secure and environmentally-appropriate storage sites. The push is on for archives to digitize their hundreds of kilometers of content and make it available online, generally without any significant enhancement to their budget. This is in many ways a highly laudable objective. For most of the history of archives, the general public did not have ready access to their contents, even when those contents concerned them directly. Digital capabilities now provide even expert archival users with the ability to collocate, analyze and publish traditional as well as new documentary sources in unprecedented ways. What is often underrecognized in the rush to provide digital access, however, is that not all preserved material merits digitization; some of it, for legal, ethical, and cultural reasons may not be publicly displayed; and most of it cannot be understood by non-expert users without considerable mediation on the part of a detailed archival finding aid and an experienced archivist.

Detailed description, therefore, has become a priority for archives, both as a surrogate for materials that cannot be disseminated in digital form, and as explication for those materials that can. Description, however, has changed considerably in recent years. To begin with, it has a more complex relationship than previously with what was once its constant companion – arrangement. Traditionally, arrangement and description were the processes by which archivists elucidated and documented not only the content of archival holdings, but also the various contexts and original order and structure of those holdings, including documentary relationships within and between *fonds* and series. By so doing, archivists were able to relate newly described materials to other holdings and also to establish a basis for documenting the continued authenticity of those materials in their custody. But as archival holdings are increasingly digitized or born-digital, archivists are finding that these materials may have multiple possible arrangements over and above their original order; they may have much more complicated documentary relationships; and they may even lack any meaningful original order altogether.

To facilitate the kind of description necessitated in online environments, several developments have occurred:

1. New interoperable descriptive standards have been developed at the national and international levels. The International Council on

Archives has extended its General International Standard for Archival Description (ISAD(G)) framework with a suite of standards that lay out how to develop authority records for corporate bodies, persons and families (ISAAR (CPF)), describe functions (ISDF), and describe institutions with archival holdings (ISDIAH).[8] Together, they aspire to frame a total descriptive system. At the national level, developments such as Encoded Archival Description (EAD), which allows for the development of a digital finding aid to a *fonds*, record group, or archival collection, embodied the principles laid out in ISAD(G). It also embedded fields that could map into those contained in MARC, and links to digital objects such as digitized copies of items contained in the collection being described.

2. Collective description according to the provenance of a collection is a key aspect of traditional archival practice. This is in part due to adherence to archival principles that mandate keeping materials according to their provenance and in their original order, in part due to an awareness that in many collections – particularly collections of records rather than of personal papers – individual items may be less significant than the overall picture of what they collectively say or depict, and in part because of the pragmatic realization that it would be far too resource-intensive to describe every single item within a collection (although this has historically been the practice in some manuscript as well as some European national archives settings). However, as individual items are increasingly undergoing digitization, either selectively or *in toto*, it has become necessary to describe each with at least enough metadata to identify the item unambiguously, link it to the collection description (finding aid), and distinguish different versions of the digitized item (for example, in different resolutions or file formats). In other words, today's archivists find themselves undertaking, with increasing frequency, both collection and item-level description – a significant addition to the existing archival workload, particularly when the effort of digitization itself is added in, and often without comparable increases in resources. This all points to the labor intensivity of putting archival holdings online in order to increase their accessibility and underscores why the bulk of archival holdings still remain offline.

8 See International Council on Archives Committee on Descriptive Standards [cited: 2010-04-04]. Available at: http://www.icacds.org.uk/eng/home.htm

3. Another area of effort relates to curating material to be put online. While definitions of digital curation vary,[9] in the archival context it likely includes the act of selecting materials for digitization, deciding about the optimum digitization method and representation, addressing any policy concerns (for example, legal, ethical or cultural restrictions), and then figuring out how to present those materials to the public, especially to any specifically targeted audience. Will the materials simply be linked from a repository of digital images to a finding aid, will they be available in a gallery of similar or related items, or will they be juxtaposed with interpretive text and maybe even incorporated into some kind of online exhibit or educational programming? If the latter, to whom is the exhibit or education directed? Is the interpretive text and are the images appropriate for that audience? Many of these activities, while quite familiar in the museum world with its professional curators and education experts are new for archivists.

4. Indeed, one of the great hopes with putting archival holdings online is that they will attract new audiences as well as be more accessible to those who cannot physically visit the archives, such as users in other places around the globe, and children and youth – who, in most cases, may not enter archives. Reaching out to these audiences, however, may take skills that archivists generally do not have, such as in developing educational materials. It may also necessitate that additional descriptive work occur, for example, including lesson plans, developing bilingual finding aids, or developing pathfinders to pertinent material that is scattered throughout the holdings, for example, relating to women.[10]

The challenges of making archives more accessible digitally are not only those relating to selecting, digitizing, describing, curating and

9 The U.K. Digital Curation Center defines digital curation as follows ([cited: 2010-04-04]. Available at: http://www.dcc.ac.uk/digital-curation/what-digital-curation):

Digital curation involves maintaining, preserving and adding value to digital research data throughout its lifecycle.

The active management of research data reduces threats to their long-term research value and mitigates the risk of digital obsolescence. Meanwhile, curated data in trusted digital repositories may be shared among the wider UK research community.

As well as reducing duplication of effort in research data creation, curation enhances the long-term value of existing data by making it available for further high quality research.

10 For a fuller discussion of ways in which archivists might re-think description to support wider accessibility, see Gilliland-Swetland, Anne J. Popularizing the finding aid : exploiting EAD to enhance online browsing and retrieval in archival information systems by diverse user groups. // Journal of internet cataloging 4, 3/4(2001), 199-225.

making their holdings available online. They also include balancing these activities against continuing to acquire and process large backlogs of traditional materials and grapple with how to identify, acquire and preserve describe and disseminate born-digital materials of archival value. Moreover, archivists need to stay abreast of increasingly complex and multinational policy questions relating to ownership, provenance, privacy and cultural sensitivities. There is, perhaps, a silver lining to this dilemma. The challenges emanating from digital technology have forced archivists to articulate and evaluate their ideas and practices much more closely than was necessary with only analog holdings. As a result, initiatives to implement preservation regimes and infrastructures, including institutional repositories, that protect institutional investment in digitization and meet stringent archival, evidentiary and policy requirements for the reliability and continued authenticity of analog, digitized and born-digital materials are imposing more rigorous and systematic approaches to archival materials of all types, digital and analog. There has also been more effort to develop economic frameworks and metrics and to collect data across repositories in order to arrive at a better assessment of the actual costs and other resources involved in operating in this new environment.

Areas of recent research

While Archival Science "studies the characteristics of records in their social and cultural contexts and how they are created, used, selected and transferred through time"[11] and centers around archival practice-based concerns, principles and techniques, Archival Studies is emerging within *i*Schools and Library and Information Science programs as the field wherein disciplinary, trans-disciplinary, and professional studies of topics relevant to archival ideas, roles and interests can take place.[12] Over the past fifteen years there has been enormous growth worldwide in the numbers of students enrolled in these programs as well as in the research being conducted by faculty and doctoral students. This growth has a natural symbiosis with developments and issues arising in the archival field and much of the research, even conceptual research, is di-

11 Ketelaar, Eric. Time future contained in time past : Archival Science in the 21st century. // Journal of the Japan Society for Archival Science 1(2004), 20-35 [cited: 2010-04-04]. Available at: http://cf.hum.uva.nl/bai/home/eketelaar/publication.html

12 For further discussion of this phenomenon, see White, Kelvin; Anne Gilliland. Promoting reflexivity and inclusivity in archival education, research and practice. // Library quarterly (forthcoming, July 2010).

rectly addressing questions generated out of practice, but it is bringing a greater armament of disciplinary approaches and perspectives to bear. It is also paralleled by an increased national and international investment in the curation of scientific data and the development of the digital humanities, both of which areas overlap with aspects of archival activity and interest. Government and corporate research funding in North America, Europe and Australia has supported large-scale, multinational and multidisciplinary investigations into how to capture and preserve records created using digital technologies in bureaucratic settings in ways that can meet stringent evidentiary requirements as well as how to enhance access to and curate archival and manuscript holdings through the development of online systems (including standardized online description, "digital archives", digital humanities initiatives, institutional repositories, and digital libraries). The availability of such funding recognizes a widespread need to address the capture, preservation and access implications of new record and manuscript-creating technologies, as well as the complexities of mass digitization of primary sources.

This flowering of research has also been characterized by considerable innovation in research methods – some that have been developed specifically out of Archival Science, and some that have been adopted and/or adapted from fields that range across academe. The diversity in methodological approaches itself speaks to the range of practical, technological, and theoretical issues with which the research is concerned. For example, methods and frameworks emanating out of Archival Science include contemporary archival diplomatics, functional analysis and business process analysis, macroappraisal, and recordkeeping warrant analysis; drawing from the Social Sciences methods include recordkeeping ethnography, ethnography of archival practice, virtual ethnography, theory-building, discourse analysis, bibliometrics, sociometrics and other metrics, speech act theory, and actor-network theory; from Computer Science and Engineering methods include recordkeeping systems analysis, Information Retrieval theory and techniques, iterative systems design, simulations, expert knowledge extraction, and metadata modeling; and from the Humanities and Digital Humanities, frameworks and methods include cultural, post-colonial and Critical Race theories, ethnic, gender and media studies, discourse and rhetorical analysis, and cliometrics.[13]

13 More detail on the growth and diversification of archival research and explication of the various methods can be found in: Building a research infrastructure for archival studies : special issue / Anne J. Gilliland and Sue Mc. Kemmish, guest editors. // Archival science 3-4(2004).

Some of the areas around which Archival Studies research have clustered include the delineation of the conceptual parameters of the trusted electronic record; the development and reconciliation of metadata standards for primary sources within multi-community/institutional digital repositories; the study of archival users; the utility of social tagging to enhance archival descriptive metadata; the enterprising re-use of highly structured rich recordkeeping metadata; the exploitation of new technologies for the delivery, discovery, collation, and analysis of primary and secondary sources of all types; the rise and nature of community-based archive initiatives, especially those using the web and multimedia documentary techniques; emergent cross-jurisdictional policy concerns such as intellectual property and divergent cultural protocols for managing archival materials; and the identification, documentation and analysis of "gaps" and biases, that is, communities and phenomena that are absent, under- or miss-represented, in the archival record.[14] The following more detailed delineation of some of these areas provides some more insight into the range and sophistication of current research agendas in Archival Studies, as well as the balance between applied and conceptual work:

Conceptual research addressing the implication of digitality

Identifying, capturing, preserving, describing and making available born-digital materials have been concerns of archivists for several decades now. However, much recent research has focused on the nature of trust, how it is established, and how it can be preserved and demonstrated by archives with regard to the digital and digitized records that they preserve and make available. Similarly, while archivists have always been engaged with changing media and recording practices, researchers are examining the impact of digitality on the creation of new media and on emergent recording practices and attempting to understand what is truly new, and what is merely a new manifestation of prior behaviours and phenomena. Related to this is research that seeks to identify the conceptual parameters of notions that are central to archival practice such as the record, fixity, authenticity, draft, completion, original and copy as these relate to digital documents. Another strand

14 An indication of the scope of current research can be obtained by browsing the research statements of participants in the first and second annual Archival Education and Research Institutes (AERI 2009 and AERI 2010) available at: http://aeri.gseis.ucla.edu/aeri.htm [cited: 2010-04-04].

of research examines how the concepts of collecting, authorship and ownership might be changing in the digital environment. On the other side of accumulating digital records are archival efforts to document aspects of life that are not otherwise captured in the official record. These include documenting life in a digital world and working with digital community memory initiatives in order to address absences or silences in the official record.

Metadata, metadata management, and metadata reusability

Metadata delineation and management has become one of the most complex technical areas in which archives are engaged. With the high volume of detailed trustworthy metadata that archival practice and the management of evidence over long periods of time necessitates, the burgeoning of user-created tags, as well as the diversity and dynamism of relevant metadata schemes and standards for repository, collection, and item-level description, metadata management regimes, preferably automated, need to be devised, prototyped and implemented. Some of the other kinds of questions that research relating to archival and, more broadly, recordkeeping metadata are asking include: how do we address the scalability of metadata practices for digital materials? What are the relative benefits and challenges of naturally-occurring and manually-created, as well as lay versus expert (professional or other) metadata? What balance, if any, can/should be struck between the empowerment and sustaining of traditional or locally-devised descriptive practices and professionally-developed metadata standards and structures designed to support inter-community/institutional/national interoperability and data exchange? And what kinds of end-user needs might be met through archival metadata alone (that is, without needing to consult any archival materials)?

User studies

Archives have often been criticized for promoting preservation over access and stewardship over use. Until recently, there was an embarrassing paucity of rigorous research relating to the use and users of archives. Today there is a solid research front that is investigating different types of uses and users as well as their disciplinary, social networking and tagging behaviors. However, there remains a considerable amount of research that needs to be undertaken investigating the nature and needs of emergent virtual users who potentially might come from anywhere around the globe, are culturally and linguistically diverse, and bring differing expertise, contextual knowledge and epistemological frameworks to their use and interpretation of archival materials.

Archives in a plural world

Globalization is a phenomenon that is closely linked to the development of digital communication and information technologies, but archival practice has historically been oriented very much toward local institutional and national constituencies. Archival research is beginning to contemplate the implications of globalization, demographic shifts, and technological implementations such as online archives and distance archival education for archival practice. The kinds of questions that are being asked include: what is the impact of international archival standards upon local and Indigenous archival traditions and recordkeeping practices? How should archivists evaluate, compare and potentially reconcile conflicting conceptual models and descriptive schema and other forms of metadata across communities? How awareness be raised, and policies and practices developed that address different legal traditions, national policies and community practices and beliefs? How should the records of multinational collaboration be identified, preserved and made available? How could documentary absences relating to immigrant, migrant and diasporic experiences be addressed? What kind of roles do archives and manuscripts repositories play in identity construction and formation of official or national narratives? And how can archival education, especially distance education, be developed that is culturally aware, sensitive and inclusive, and not acting as an agent of cultural change in other cultural contexts?

Conclusion and areas for further research

This article has attempted to paint a picture of the evolving role and activities of archives and Archival Studies research in a digital world. While considerable advances in both practice and research have occurred over the past two decades, however, there remain several key areas where more research and development are needed if archives are to continue to evolve in ways that solidify and sustain their place in a digital world. Among these are the following four broad areas: the development of analytical techniques to identify important changes in the records and records creation over time in form, format and function; the development and evaluation of tools for automatically processing and preserving large volumes of digital materials; the design of digital archives for heterogenous user communities and their epistemes based upon studies of how those communities create, remember, seek, and use knowledge, and the development of digital/digitized collections of, and interfaces to archival materials as well as end-user tools for manipulating those materials that are built upon sound knowledge about the needs of increasingly disciplinarily, educationally, culturally and linguistically diverse online users.

References

Archival Education and Research Institutes (AERI 2009, AERI 2010) [cited: 2010-04-04]. Available at: http://aeri.gseis.ucla.edu/aeri.htm

Building a research infrastructure for archival studies : special issue / Anne J. Gilliland and Sue Mc. Kemmish, guest editors. // Archival science 3-4(2004).

Cook, Terry. Archival science and postmodernism : new formulations for old concepts. // Archival science 1, 1(2000), 3-24. Available at: http://www.mybestdocs.com/cook-t-postmod-p1-00.htm [cited: 2010-04-04].

Gilliland-Swetland, Anne J. Enduring paradigm, new opportunities : the value of the archival perspective in the digital environment. Washington, D.C. : Council on Library and Information Resources, 2000.

Gilliland-Swetland, Anne J. Popularizing the finding aid : exploiting EAD to enhance online browsing and retrieval in archival information systems by diverse user groups. // Journal of internet cataloging 4, 3/4(2001), 199-225.

International Council on Archives Committee on Descriptive Standards [cited: 2010-04-04]. Available at: http://www.icacds.org.uk/eng/home.htm

Jenkinson, Hilary. Reflections of an archivist. // A modern archives reader / edited by Maygene F. Daniels and Timothy Walch. Washington, D.C. : National Archives and Records Service, U.S. General Services Administration, 1984. (Original work published 1944.)

Ketelaar, Eric. Time future contained in time past : archival science in the 21st century. // Journal of the Japan Society for Archival Science 1(2004), 20-35. [Cited: 2010-04-04]. Available at: http://cf.hum.uva.nl/bai/home/eketelaar/publication.html

Osborne, Thomas. The ordinariness of the archive. // History of the human sciences 12, 2(1999), 51-64.

RG 64 Records of the United States National Archives and Records Administration, Subject Files of Solon J. Buck Relating to Archival Principles, Practices and Institutions, 1789-1956, Box 1.

Society of American Archivists *Glossary* [cited: 2010-04-04]. Available at: http://www.archivists.org/glossary/

The U.K. Digital Curation Center. What is digital curation? [cited: 2010-04-04]. Available at: http://www.dcc.ac.uk/digital-curation/what-digital-curation

White, Kelvin; Anne Gilliland. Promoting reflexivity and inclusivity in archival education, research and practice. // Library quarterly (forthcoming, July 2010).

Biographical sketch

Dr. Anne Gilliland is Professor and Director of the Archival Studies specialization, Department of Information Studies, and Director of the Center for Information as Evidence, at the Graduate School of Education & Information Studies, University of California, Los Angeles (UCLA). She is also a faculty member in the UCLA School of Theatre, Film and Television and Graduate School of Education & Information Studies inter-departmental M.A. Program in Moving Image Archive Studies. Her teaching and research interests relate to the design, evaluation and history of recordkeeping and cultural information systems in diverse community and cultural contexts, digital curation, metadata creation and management, and archival education. She is currently completing a monograph The Archive in a Digital Age. Recent research activities include the InterPARES 2, The Clever Recordkeeping Metadata, Museums and the Online Archive of California Evaluation (MOACII), and Pluralizing the Archival Paradigm in the Pacific Rim Projects. She is a Fellow of the Society of American Archivists.

RAZVOJ TEORIJE, PRAKSE I ISTRAŽIVANJA O ZAŠTITI I PRISTUPU ARHIVSKOM GRADIVU U DIGITALNOM SVIJETU

Sažetak

Nove tehnologije osiguravaju do sada bez presedana iskazane mogućnosti globalnog pristupa zabilježenoj svjetskoj baštini kao i informacijama o njoj. Istodobno, te tehnologije olakšavaju proizvodnju, raspačavanje i višestruku izradu inačica obilja potencijalnog arhivskog gradiva širokog spektra ljudskog nastojanja, često u novonastalim oblicima i medijima. Identifikacija što očuvati te kako i na koji najbolji način osigurati pristup tom gradivu predstavljaju trajna arhivistička nastojanja. Njihova dinamika postala je središtem brzorastućeg istraživačkog fronta u arhivističkim studijima u okviru kojeg se propituje sve u rasponu od prirode zapisa suvremenog čovjeka i njegove procjene, do očuvanja i zaštite nusproizvoda digitalnih tehnologija pa do same prirode i uloge arhiva u pluralnom, digitalnom svijetu. Ovaj rad identificira neka glavna područja promjena koje su utjecale na arhive i njihov sadržaj; daje pregled zbivanja u odnosu na ključne tradicionalne arhivističke ideje i načela u ovom novom svijetu; raspravlja o nekim glavnim područjima suvremenih istraživanja u arhivističkim studijima i identificira područja daljnjih istraživanja u svrhu buduće podrške arhivima i arhivskoj praksi.

Ključne riječi: istraživanja u arhivističkim studijama, digitalni arhivi, digitalna zaštita, digitalizacija, upravljanje elektroničkim zapisima, upravljanje metapodacima

PRESERVATION AND CONSERVATION OF OLD BOOKS

Damir Hasenay
University of J. J. Strossmayer in Osijek, Faculty of Philosophy, Department of Information Sciences, Croatia

Maja Krtalić
University of J. J. Strossmayer in Osijek, Faculty of Philosophy, Department of Information Sciences, Croatia

Iva Gobić Vitolović
State Archives in Rijeka, Department for Conservation and Restoration, Croatia

Abstract

The paper gives an overview of the basic issues in preservation and conservation of old books through the most important questions and knowledge necessary to understand preservation systematically and comprehensively. Basic terms and definitions in the field of preservation and relations between those terms are explained in the first part of the paper. The second part deals with materials that old books are made of, their structure, basic deterioration processes and ways to preserve materials. Conservation and restoration methods and techniques are presented. Also, the role of reformatting of old books is considered in the context of preservation.

Key words

preservation, preservation management, conservation, restoration, old book

Introduction

The word "preservation" is often defined to include all the managerial, administrative, financial, and staffing considerations necessary to safeguard the welfare of library collections. This definition is derived from the *IFLA Principles for the Care and Handling of Library Materials*.[1] As

1 IFLA Principles for the care and handling of library materials / compiled and edited by Edward P. Adcock. 1998 [cited: 2010-01-27]. Available at: http://archive.ifla.org/VI/4/news/pchlm.pdf, p. 5.

we can see, there is a lot of seemingly simple terms here, such as managerial, administrative, financial, and staffing. They are, however, too general to convey a concrete meaning. Preservation should also be considered through questions like: who deals with preservation, when we deal with preservation, what are the limits (or frameworks) in conducting preservation, etc. Here we can recognise several frameworks. One is the legal framework that represents legal acts relevant for these issues. We need to know what laws are important for preservation issues and how can they be implemented. The second framework is financial, and in practice we often hear that it is the most limiting factor in conducting any kind of activities, not just preservation of old books. We must understand that limited financial framework must not be an excuse for not doing something and solutions that can fit in the existing financial framework must be found. There are two important aspects of administrative issues. One is to know the existing administrative regulations that are necessary to conduct quality preservation activities. The other is to create administrative surroundings that will facilitate organisational tasks of old book preservation. Staff policy is also a very important issue, especially from the educational point of view. We should think of efficient ways to transmit important knowledge from theory to practice. Also, there is a variety of technical prerequisites significant for the welfare of old book collections. As we can see, the seemingly simple term "preservation" includes many subterms that can easily complicate and confuse the whole story of preservation.[2]

Understanding preservation

We can fall into several traps trying to understand the term preservation, as it can be seen from everyday practice and literature. Falling in such traps leads to a gap between invested effort and results. Today we witness that many resources, much of work and time are invested in the preservation of a collection, but the results are not satisfactory. Collections are still deteriorating or waiting to be preserved, or there are not enough financial resources to complete the task.

The first trap is understanding preservation too generally. It means that it is understandable and logical that old books should be preserved, but this concern exists on some general level, without concrete actions. That kind of understanding leads to "nothing" because

2 Preservation : issues and planning / edited by Paul Banks and Roberta Pilette. Chicago : American Library Association, 2000.

it is too general, and results in leaving books to deterioration, even though we know that they should be preserved. Another trap is understanding preservation too technically. It is a very dangerous, but a very common trap. It means that we understand preservation as a technical issue. In other words, preservation refers to application of sophisticated techniques and special procedures, and we do not have anything to do with this. The next trap is understanding preservation in an elitist manner, which means that preservation is the job of specially educated professionals, not ordinary librarians or archivists. We can often hear people say, "Our technical department deals with preservation issues, it is their task". It is also a trap to understand preservation only partially, namely, to identify one preservation technique with preservation in general, and to think that it is all that can be accomplished.

Closely connected with the mentioned traps are the last three traps in which preservation is considered as highly-priced, time and staff consuming process, which is not always the case. If we wait to have enough money, people and time, we will not do anything because such ideal conditions do not exist, at least not in the real world. So, when we think about preservation of old books we must be careful not to fall into one of these traps.

The term preservation should be distinguished from the term conservation. According to IFLA, conservation denotes "specific practices taken to slow deterioration and prolong the life of an object by directly intervening in its physical or chemical make-up. Examples would be repairing damaged bindings or deacidifying paper".[3] We can see here that conservation is oriented towards the material, its properties and longevity. It is very important to understand the relations between terms preservation and conservation because it contributes to the efficiency of their application.

This consideration can be completed by some sort of terminological hierarchy (Figure 1) in understanding the term preservation. Inside the general term preservation two concepts can be seen.

There is the concept of preserving material, or artefact, and the concept of preserving intellectual content. So, this hierarchy contains a conceptual scale. The approach is next. Inside the concept of preserving material there are preventive approach and remedial (corrective) approach. Preventive approach includes all the activities that would prevent damaging and deterioration of material, while corrective ap-

3 Ibid.

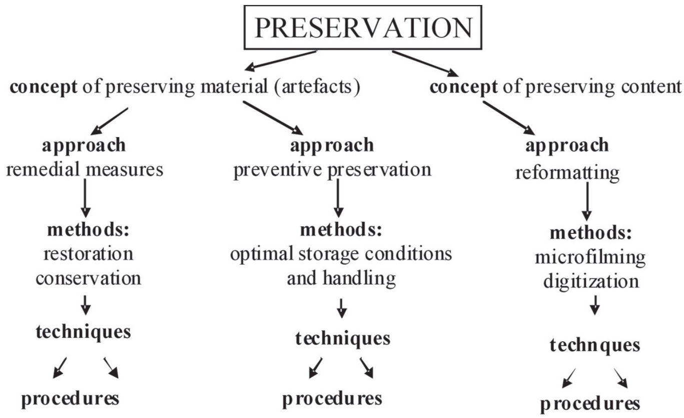


Figure 1.
Terminological hierarchy in preservation context

proach includes activities that restore the primary function of the damaged library material and prevent its further deterioration. Inside the concept of preserving content there is the reformatting approach. The next segment of this terminological hierarchy is the term method. The meaning of this term is generally much broader than the one used here. Here it should be understood as a part of the terminological hierarchy where restoration and conservation are seen as methods inside a corrective approach while optimal storage conditions and handling are seen as methods within preventive approach. The same goes for microfilming and digitisation, which are seen as methods inside the concept of preserving content, and they should by no means be considered as a concept, which is often the case. However, the terms preservation/conservation or preservation/digitisation are often considered similar, whereas they are actually on different hierarchical levels. Next segment contains different techniques used in specific methods, and different procedures used inside these techniques. It should be said that efficient preservation measures usually include both concepts and various methods and techniques.

We must notice here that two new concepts emerge out of the concept of preserving content and out of the reformatting methods, microfilming and digitisation. One is the results of microfilming and there is a need to preserve the newly made artefacts (or microforms). Here it is most important to apply preventive methods so that microforms are usable and reliable in the long term. Digitisation creates a new concept called 'digital preservation'. Inside this concept we can recognise a variety of methods and techniques applied to the content that needs to be preserved.

Next step in understanding preservation is to consider it at different levels. There are three levels, strategic, technical and operative. *Strategic* level implies issues on the national and international level, and includes different preservation initiatives, suggesting, adding and correcting legal regulation of preservation; promoting awareness, organising education of experts in the field of preservation etc. The second level is *technical* and it includes technical issues such as specificity and characteristics of materials, factors that endanger them, organisation of restoration and conservation tasks, application of various chemical, physical and mechanical methods and procedures, researching the interaction of different factors (chemical, biological, physical, etc.) and materials out of which old books were made, and so on. This level is often identified with preservation in general, but it is not enough just to conduct preservation on the technical level. Inside this level there is a great potential for scientific and other research as well as improvements of technical aspects of preservation. This is the dominant topic in the professional literature. Another important question is how to apply new knowledge and achievements on other levels. The third level is *operative*, which includes issues that are dealt with every day by information experts in heritage institutions. They are controlling and regulating microclimate conditions, using standards for storing and handling written material, educating users, safety issues (protection from fire, flood, burglary, vandalism, etc.), organising work in the legal and financial framework of an institution where material is stored, developing criteria for evaluating, assessing and choosing certain items of written material that need to be conserved or restored, etc. If preservation activities do not exist on this level, then all the technical achievements and strategic organisation are in vain. Education of the staff that will conduct preservation on this level is crucial. Interaction and intertwinement of these three levels are necessary. Only with good understanding of all these issues is it possible to create an efficient old book preservation system. Individual efforts at only one level without interaction with the others are not enough.

Understanding materials of old books

Besides defining basic terms in the general context of preservation, it is important to consider some other issues pertinent to old book preservation. This certainly refers to materials old books are made of.

Paper is the most relevant and most common material in old book collections, but there are also leather, parchment, textile, metals and other materials. The basic constitutional element of paper is its fibre structure. In the case of old books, fibre structure is made of cellulose fibres of different purity. Since a long time ago different fibril and net-like structures have been used for producing writing material. In its essence it is a very simple structure that is made of many intertwined fibres inside which there are intertwined macrofibril fibres, inside which are intertwined microfibril fibres constituting of cellulose molecules. This structure, however, is rather stable, chemically, physically and mechanically but still it can be easily disturbed by different chemical, physical and mechanical influences. In this case preservation is focused on stopping the influence of these factors on cellulose material. Keeping the original cellulose structure is actually the supreme method of preservation.

Cellulose is a polysaccharide, which means that it is built in a form of a chain of the same molecules, or saccharide units. Basic unit is a glucose molecule (grape sugar, blood sugar, or corn sugar) which is a monosaccharide composed of six carbon atoms and has aldehyde group called aldohexose. The key is in the bond between two molecules of glucose because that bond is what determines how the material will look on the macroscopic level. Cellulose is a straight chain polymer. Unlike starch, no coiling or branching occurs, and the molecule adopts an extended and rather stiff rod-like conformation, aided by the equatorial conformation of glucose residues. The multiple hydroxyl groups on the glucose residues from one chain form hydrogen bonds with oxygen molecules on the same or on a neighbouring chain, holding the chains firmly together side-by-side and forming microfibrils with high tensile strength. Microfibrils are meshed into a carbohydrate matrix.[4] Completely the same structure, but with differently oriented bond will give very different properties of this material. The best example is starch that has the same quantitative compounds as the cellulose, but different bonds between glucose units. So, cellulose is derived from

4 Perez, Serge; William Mackie. Structure and morphology of cellulose. 2001 [cited: 2010-01-27]. Available at: http://www.cermav.cnrs.fr/glyco3d/lessons/cellulose/index.html

D-glucose units, which condense through β(1→4)-glycosidic bonds. It is important to understand that breaking of this bond is the most common cause of deterioration of paper material, in a chemical sense. Breaking of glycosidic bonds leads to degradation of cellulose molecule which loses its primary properties.

The whole story of paper as a material and of its longevity is based on understanding that glycosidic bond inside the cellulose is the key factor. This is especially visible if we understand the essence of cellulose molecule stability. All the preservation and conservation measures should be oriented towards preserving this structure and preserving bonds that link cellobiose molecules into cellulose chain.

We should also mention other compounds present in paper, especially those that have harmful effect on its resistance. One of them is certainly lignin, which is the basic compound of the wood cell walls. Lignin remains in paper produced from wood cellulose fibres. It has a very reactive molecular structure. Chemical changes of lignin lead to the destabilisation of the fibre cellulose structure, and create specific coloured products that are the main reason for paper turning yellow. When we are talking about old books, it is important to understand that in the past paper was manufactured from raw materials that were of better quality then those used in mass production of paper. Raw materials used as a source of fibre such as cotton fibres and annual plants are, from chemical aspect, of a better quality then raw materials obtained from mechanically treated wood pulp that contains lignin. Knowing materials from this point of view is an important step in managing the preservation of old books.

Having in mind the stability of chemical bonds inside the cellulose molecule, specific reactions that occur during chemical degradation of paper could be understood. They are oxidation, hydrolysis and photochemical reactions. They degrade chemical bonds and cause the reactivity of lignin. Hydrolysis is an especially dangerous reaction that destroys paper. It is a consequence of acids affecting the bonds inside the cellulose molecule. The harmful influence of acids can occur as a result of the acidic character of residues created during manufacturing (intrinsic factors), but also as a consequence of acidic effects from the environment (external factors). So, it is important to determine the acidity of paper before applying other preservation measures because acids present in paper have autocatalytic character and will result in continuous degradation of paper, until they are completely removed.

Other compounds present in paper are fillers, coatings and sizes. Their role is to fill fibre cellulose structure and to enable application of materials used for writing. Chemical stability of these components also significantly affects stability and permanence of paper. In papers used for production of old books, mainly natural materials and organic sizes were used. In new papers, mainly synthetic materials are used. In the case of damaged material that needs to be conserved or restored, it is important to know which paper compound is damaged and which needs to be preserved from further damage.

Leather is also the material often found in old book collections. In the past it was used a lot, mainly for bindings. Leather is an organic material of animal origin, made by special procedure called tanning. Tanning is the procedure of chemical stabilisation of animal skin that aims at prevention of denaturalising its basic compound – collagen. Collagen is a protein with a net-like structure. It consists of many meshed fibres of organic origin. Without the tanning process collagen would deteriorate and lose its role as a building element of this material. The most visible effect of deterioration of leather material is in the loss of its elastic properties and mechanical deformations that are the results of drying out. Because of its organic origin, leather is a source of food for moulds. That is why we can often find old books collections where leather items are dried out, deformed and damaged by mould. It is necessary to recognize here the type and cause of damage, to prioritise in choosing the preservation measures and to determine the appropriate level of preservation. If materials are in such condition that they endanger the rest of collection, they should be immediately sent to technical unit to prevent further damages.

Another material used for writing was parchment. Parchment is also of animal origin, and it contains collagen. It is different from leather because it is thinner, and it was not tanned. Collagen was stabilised by immersing into calcium hydroxide solution (or lime). Thus, parchment is different from leather because it is not waterproof to such a degree, and it is very sensitive to humidity variations. So, the most important preservation measure for parchment is appropriate and stable environmental control and use of enclosures.

There are several other materials that can be found in old books, such as different textile materials mostly used for bindings, bookmarks, sawing books etc. What is interesting here is that textile materials also have fibril net structure. So, paper, leather and textile, as dominant materials that old books are made of, all have basically the same, stable, net-like structure.[5] The best preservation method is to keep this structure stable. There is no preservation method that could improve the structure of these materials, only those that can preserve it, whether by preventive or remedial measures.

Metal materials can also be found in old books. They are mostly used for decorations or as clips. Metal materials are iron, copper, tin and lead alloys subject to corrosion, the oxidation process that results in creating metal oxides and loss of mechanical properties of metal materials. Metal in old books should be restored by using remedial measures such as cleaning or replacing it with new material.

Besides the mentioned materials, there is a variety of other materials used for writing, like different types of writing materials such as various kinds of ink, Chinese/Indian ink, printing inks, lead pencil, etc. These materials can also be significant causes of damage. The best example is damage by iron-gall ink in old manuscripts that is the result of corrosion of iron ions. It is important to recognize writing material as a cause of damage and to send such damaged books to a specialist in a technical unit.

There are three possible types of damage – chemical, physical and mechanical – which are the result of a variety of causes. We need to be aware that old books were exposed to chemical degradation for a long time. Well preserved old books that were stored in good environmental condition support the thesis about quality of materials used in production of books in the past. Most of today's paper will be in much worse condition after the same period of time. The causes of damage are humidity, temperature (or temperature variations), light, atmospheric pollutants, biological causes such as moulds, insects, rodents, and humans as the biggest factor of mechanical damage. Each of these causes can create one or more types of damage. For example, light causes many chemical reactions, such as oxidation of lignin that turns paper yellow, destroys mechanical stability of paper and leads to mechanical type of damage. When our assignment is to preserve a large collection of old books we need to recognise main type and cause of damage. We also need to determine intensity of damage. This information will indicate what needs to be done next. In the case of old books, conservation is usually considered as a preservation solu-

5 Conservation science : heritage material / edited by Eric May and Mark Jones. Cambridge : RSC Publishing, 2006.

tion. From the definition mentioned earlier we know that conservation is oriented toward preserving materials of old books. Different techniques are used for this purpose.

Understanding conservation and restoration in preservation of old books

There has been considerable concern about the condition and preservation of library and archival materials over the last decade. A large portion of written heritage has already disappeared forever as a result of bad or no preservation practices. The poor condition of many documents and books make the preservation of written heritage a very time-consuming, expensive and difficult job. Even the survival of the remaining books and documents is seriously threatened by the lack of resources for providing proper storage conditions, and by wear and tear resulting from the frequent consultation of books and documents. Most damage to the archival and library objects are caused by a few reasons:[6]

- INTERNAL CAUSE: poor quality of material itself – collections in libraries and archives are mostly made of natural materials, polymers, which have a tendency to degrade. It is impossible to stop this completely. The damage it causes has its origins in the raw materials and production methods used.
- EXTERNAL CAUSES: The environment in which they are stored – air pollution, light, temperature and relative humidity; micro-organisms, insects and rodents; extensive use –people consulting original books or documents.

Most of the libraries and archives in Croatia holding written heritage have neither conservation departments nor have they had systematically and substantially applied preservation practice. As a consequence, there are conservation backlogs and no effective management strategies to clear them. Moreover, staff and resources across the sector are almost always insufficient. What can be noticed in most Croatian libraries and archives:

- Inadequate storage conditions in repositories. In most cases, storage areas are without air conditioning, thermo-hygro meters, humidifiers and dehumidifiers. Microclimate conditions are therefore not regulated, so changes of temperature and relative humidity are big, frequent and sudden. It is well known that some

6 Preservation of library & archival materials : a manual. Andover, MA : Northeast Document Conservation Center, 1999.

types of damage strengthen each other. Chemical reactions like acidification progress faster in high temperature and high relative humidity. Air pollution also contributes to degradation processes such as acidic boxing material. Bad quality of storage area is another factor that can influence life expectancy of the material in a negative way. Storage rooms are often in poor condition (dirty rooms, draughty attics or damp cellars with no heating, no window shutters, old installations (water, heating, electricity) etc.) As a result, the physical condition of a large number of our libraries and archives is poor. This means that they cannot be made available for actual use.

- Bad/poor quality of storage boxes or no protective boxing at all (acid wrapping materials and boxes, metal parts, etc). Inadequate storage furniture (worn shelves made of unsuitable formats and materials).
- Problem of accessibility of library and archival objects and their inadequate handling. The core activity of libraries and archives is the encouragement of maximum accessibility to information and materials stored there, but at the same time their protection for future accessibility. Experience has, however, proved that frequent use of written materials causes great damage to them. Many objects cannot be handled without being damaged. Insufficient quantity of protective copies (digital data carriers such as CD-ROMs or microfilms) means that the originals are still too often (if not always) in use, or some objects are, because of their damaged state, completely unavailable to users.
- Large quantities of endangered or damaged materials and their frequent use. Restoration treatments are too complicated, time-consuming and expensive, and financial means and trained staff are limited and insufficient for single-item treatment.

To overcome the problems of the size of library and archival collections, of limited budgets and time-consuming nature of conservation, choices have to be made constantly. This means, first of all, that a thorough knowledge is needed of the physical condition, uniqueness and usage frequency of individual objects, series and collections. Priorities can then be set on the basis of an analysis of these factors. A choice can also be made between various conservation methods available. Here, a cost-benefit analysis should be decisive.

A lot has happened in the field of preventive conservation over the past 20 years. A great deal of knowledge has been developed about the chemical causes of all kinds of physical degradation. Advanced conservation methods and techniques have been developed. Based upon the notion that prevention is the best solution, a lot has been invested in improved storage conditions and appropriate packaging. A lot of material has been put on film to prevent further damage to the original documents caused by repeated use. The approach can vary, from reformatting to conservation, or a combination of the two, a combination of conservation, restoration and reformatting, etc.

Conservation activities can be divided into different types of activities. Each activity needs a different kind of expertise. The preservation model looks like a pyramid (Figure 2).[7]

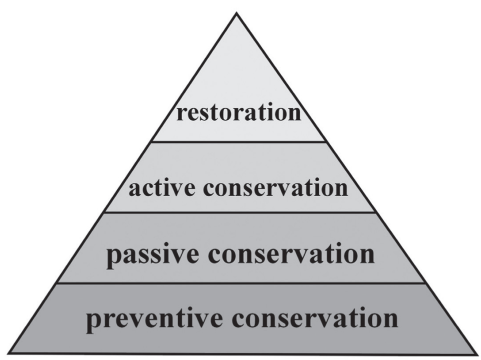


Figure 2.
Conservation pyramid

- <u>Preventive conservation</u>

The basic activity of the preservation pyramid. It comprises policy making, including training, attitude, professional thinking and actions of all personnel.

- <u>Passive conservation</u>

Good housekeeping, air purification, air conditioning, storage area hygiene and storage area monitoring for insects and moulds; these measures are beneficial for the whole collection. An important element of passive conservation is the assessment of the physical condition of the collection.

7 Conservation methods [cited 2010-01-25]. Avaliable at: http://www.tanap.net/content/archives/conservation/conservation.htm

- Active conservation

It includes re-wrapping and re-boxing of the objects, cleaning, mass-deacidification and disinfection. Most of these elements can be done by employees who are not conservators. It is essential that these employees are properly trained.

- Restoration

It is the most expensive and time-consuming part of conservation. At the same time, it is less productive compared to the other mentioned activities. The top of the preservation pyramid is the domain of well-trained conservators.

There is a hierarchy for preservation, passive and active conservation, and restoration. The most effective and cheapest is preservation followed by conservation. Restoration is the most time-consuming. The approach is like a funnel: it starts with preservation and ends with restoration, i.e. it is comparable to working from the outside of the building on each object inside.

Conservation is not a goal in itself; it is integral to the work process of an institution and has to be considered as such. Preservation is not an exclusive duty of a group of trained conservators and restorers but should be the core activity of the whole institution. It is important to implement as many protective measures as possible in regular, daily routine activities. Therefore, the compatibility of planning and implementing activities in different departments of an archive or library is indispensable for the application of a successful conservation policy.

Technical implementation of a successful conservation policy should begin with passive conservation, as all measures taken in this area are beneficial for the whole collection.

Well-built repositories and exhibition rooms, good housekeeping, air purification, air conditioning, storage area hygiene and monitoring for insects and moulds is beneficial for all collections, and it is the only affordable solution to save large number of libraries and archives over the long term.

However, climate control in repositories is expensive and unaffordable to most institutions in Croatia that hold written heritage. Nevertheless, it is possible to improve storage conditions by many inexpensive and feasible solutions and techniques (portable thermo-hygrometers, humidifiers and dehumidifiers; airing rooms by opening and closing windows for humidity exchange; custom-made window blinds of fabric or paper, UV filters for lamps, insect traps, etc.). Within the policy frame of an institution, and of course, within the limitations of the financial resources, a time schedule should be made for upgrading the housing, air quality and the manner of storing written heritage.

An important element of passive conservation is the assessment of the physical condition of the whole collection. One of the examples of such procedure is Dutch UPAA – Universal Procedure of Archive Assessment.[8] This is a statistically based damage survey, a scientific instrument to get a reliable impression of the type of damage and the level of deterioration. In order to get a better insight into the quality of a library or an archive, one can carry out a number of measurements on some of the individual items, but that process is difficult, too time-consuming (if not impossible) and expensive. This method involves the development of a measurement tool which can transform measurements on individual objects to objective statements about the general condition of an archive or library as a whole. On the basis of the result of such an assessment, an institution can make a conservation policy and determine the needs for conservation and restoration (what actions should be taken, e.g. conservation and/or restoration of the whole archive or parts of it, and the establishment of priorities between collections).[9]

When a survey is done and an idea is obtained about the condition of the entire collection, before starting the work on a particular collection or an object, it is necessary to make a selection. It is impossible to treat every single item in an archive or a library.

<u>Selection criteria</u>[10]

- High frequency of use and stimulation of use by special programmes for the public.
- Vulnerable collections or parts of collections, with a high degradation speed (degradation processes such as acidity, iron-gall ink corrosion, fire damage). Damage can be caused by external factors or by bad quality of materials the books are made of.
- Unique historical/symbolical value – single items with a high intrinsic or historical value (owing to the information or the object itself).
- Objects that require treatment for exhibition purposes.

8 Havermans, John; Pieter Marres; Peter Defize. The development of a universal procedure for archive assessment. // Restaurator 20, 1 (1999), 48–55.

9 Bruin de, Gerrit. An assessment of Deltaplan : The Dutch National Preservation Strategy. // Liber quarterly 14 (2004), 356-367.

10 Steemers, Ted. Preservation policy (a draft). Den Haag : National Archives of Netherlands, 2003.

Equal attention should be given to all factors that play a role in operational choices. Active conservation includes activities such as re-wrapping and re-boxing of the objects, cleaning objects, mass-deacidification and disinfecting. Most of these activities can be done by employees who are not conservators. It is essential that these employees are properly trained.

Acid-free boxing. Boxing is crucial to the preservation of written heritage. Protective boxes made of chemically stable materials provide both physical support and chemical protection from dust, dirt, light, and mechanical damage. Materials from which enclosures are constructed should meet the preservation standards, since poor-quality materials can cause irreparable damage. It is essential that storage enclosures are made of acid-free materials that are chemically stable, so that they do not form acids over time.

All damaged material should be packed in acid-free, calcium carbonate buffered wrapping paper and put in acid-free boxes, after removing all ironwork (staples, paperclips). It is now well known that even a bad box is better than no box at all!

Boxes can be obtained in many standard sizes, but they can also be custom-made for every single item in a particular collection (only if the collection is very important – custom-made boxes are time-consuming and therefore expensive to make).

Surface cleaning. After having selected a particular collection for conservation treatment, it is recommended to dry-clean it. Superficial grime, dirt, and soot disfigure and abrade book pages and paper in general. They can be removed with a soft dusting brush, with a powdered eraser, a soft block eraser such as *Faber Magic Rub Eraser*, or conservation sponges *Wallmaster* and *Wishab*. Secretions like insect specks and mould residue may have to be removed mechanically with a small sharp tool like a spatula or, in the case of mould, with an aspirator, which vacuums the mould. Mould removal is a delicate procedure and requires careful work hygiene to avoid spreading contamination as much as possible. Mould can also affect the health of personnel, so protective equipment such as respirators, gloves, and fume hoods should be used when removing it. Disinfecting (with ethanol) is recommended.

Mass-deacidification. Although acid-free paper has become more common, a large body of acidic paper still exists in books made after the 1850s because of its cheaper and simpler production methods. Acidic paper especially when exposed to light, air pollution, or high relative humidity, yellows and becomes brittle over time. Deacidification and alkalization of acidic paper is a generally accepted conservation practice, which can be carried out aqueously or nonaqueously.[11] The purpose of the treatment is to neutralise acids (by increasing pH of acidic paper) and to deposit in paper a buffer that will protect it from the formation of acid on a large scale in the future. Washing followed by aqueous deacidification is a more thorough treatment than nonaqueous deacidification. However, aqueous treatment requires that a volume be unbound. If the volume should not be unbound or if inks are soluble in water, nonaqueous deacidification is an acceptable alternative.

Reformatting. There are three methods to do this: photocopying, microfilming and digitisation. Each of them have its advantages and disadvantages, so it is important to know the answer to several key questions before we start reformatting old books. They are primarily the questions of purpose, aim and criteria, but also the question of preservation role.

Photocopying and microfilming were not used much as reformatting methods of old books, especially not in the form of projects, because of technical and usability issues. So I will focus here on digitisation projects of old books. Digitisation has well known benefits for users, and this is usually a very strong reason to conduct the project. Preservation on the other hand, is not the primary reason for old book digitisation projects, because old books' materials are far more resistant and durable than digital media. So the accent in these kinds of projects is moved from preservation to access, because users are faced with number of limitations when using old books' originals. When old books are digitised, the need to preserve originals still remains, but the potential damage caused by inappropriate handling and excessive use are removed. Digitisation in this case is a supplement to other preservation measures, not the only solution. There is another important question here. Since digitisation is considered inside the concept of content preservation, what are the actual needs for the old books' content? Who are the users of old books and how are they using them? User needs should be as clear as possible when we are dealing with projects of digitising old books. Digitisation of historical newspapers is, on the contrary, a different example. Their material is not as durable, but the need for their contents is highly demanded by a variety of user profiles. I would like to

11 Cheradame, H.; S. Ipert; E. Rousset. Mass deacidification of paper and books. I: Study of the limitations of the gas phase processes. // Restaurator : international journal for the preservation of library and archival material 24, 4 (2003), 227–239.

stress once more the importance of establishing appropriate selection criteria for digitisation of old books. Professionals that deal with history of book and other similar disciplines can be very helpful here.

Damage inventory. While doing re-boxing and surface cleaning of a particular collection, it is recommended and useful to make inventory of damage of individual objects by describing book constructions, types and level of damage in special forms. On the basis of such documentation it is possible to determine priorities within the collection that need to be brought on the next treatment level – restoration.

Restoration is the most expensive and time-consuming conservation method. At the same time, it is less productive when compared to the other mentioned activities. Restoration consist of a wide variety of book conservation-restoration treatments, with work ranging from basic stabilisation to extensive chemical, structural, and cosmetic treatment of both paper and bindings. Conservation standards (such as reversibility) are employed and only materials that are stable and durable must be used. This kind of work can be done only by well-trained conservators, professional staff that has extensive knowledge and experience in both book and paper conservation techniques.

Treatment documentation (Detailed book description and damage report documentation). Preparation of written and photographic records is a requirement of responsible conservation treatment of valuable materials. The purpose of documentation is to record the appearance and condition of a book prior to treatment, to describe the treatment that was done, and specify the materials that were used in the treatment. The purpose is also to identify the book that has been treated and to provide information helpful to conservators who may further treat that book in the future, especially as new improved techniques and materials become available. Documentation includes a written description of the condition prior to treatment, a listing of the procedures and specific materials used in treatment, and a statement of where and when the treatment was done. Written records are supplemented by photographs taken before, after, and sometimes during treatment. These records should be retained permanently.

Collation is an important part of documentation because it includes careful checking of each page of a book to document the number and order of pages, plates, maps, etc.; to check for missing pages; and to note serious tears, stains, or other types of damage or irregularity. Treatment of books can range from minimal to extensive.

Minimal treatment (Basic stabilisation). Basic stabilisation is the minimal level of treatment required to slow down the deterioration of a book. It excludes all cosmetic treatments and many structural repairs as well. For example, a book with detached boards and fragile paper may only be microfilmed, nonaqueously deacidified, and boxed. Basic stabilisation is frequently chosen for books of limited value or for those that are rarely used. It is also appropriate for books that are valuable as historic objects or artefacts. Since treatment always results in at least slight alteration of the original object, boxing is sometimes preferable to treatment of artefacts.

Extensive treatment. This refers to full treatment of both pages and binding. Restoration treatment may include chemical and physical treatment, structural repairs, some of which may be cosmetic. Partial or complete unbinding, surface cleaning, removal of old repairs and tape on book pages, washing the book pages, aqueous or nonaqueous deacidification, mending and protection of pages (manual restoration with Japanese paper and a starch paste or leaf-casting with paper pulp), and resewing are techniques that may be undertaken to stabilise the text block. For books that have partially or completely detached boards or spines, repacking is a means of repairing the original bindings and reattaching them to the text. If the original binding is too deteriorated to be reused, the book is rebound in one of a variety of binding styles (case, split-board or laced-in structure) and titled. Extensive treatment is usually reserved for books of high value.

Boxing. Books with bindings of historic or aesthetic value, which should be retained as much as possible in their present condition, should be boxed. Damaged books, which are rarely used and do not warrant treatment or repair of the binding, should also be boxed. Boxes should be constructed of durable materials of conservation quality and should be custom-made to fit a book's dimensions exactly.

Conclusions

In practice, organising and implementing conservation policies and activities within an institution and setting up a conservation-restoration workshop, is often, despite the knowledge, good will and enthusiasm, a slow and difficult process, encumbered by the lack of money, time and professional staff.

Restoration is still the most common policy in place even though financial means, time and trained professional staff for single-item treatment are absolutely insufficient. To make matters worse, objects after restoration (done in or outside the institution) are, in most of the cases, placed back to inadequate storage conditions, and thus they are exposed to damage again.

As a result of such practice, there is no overarching conservation plan or policy across the sector, no knowledge about the conditions of whole collections, and consequently no prioritisation.

Growing awareness and training of people is therefore very important. Legislation and regulations covering storage area arrangement, information media, packaging materials and storage methods are necessary to help overcome the ever growing problem of safeguarding written heritage.

In order to be efficient, preservation must be considered systematically and comprehensively. As such, it includes five basic aspects which reflect all issues given in this paper. The first one is strategic and theoretical aspect. It includes planning and developing preservation programmes, plans and policies on national and institutional level, and taking into account contemporary theoretical knowledge about preservation, as well as examples of good practice. The second is economic and legal aspect which includes managing available financial resources and finding additional resources, but also following, changing and implementing legal documents relevant for preservation. The third is educational aspect such as training staff to conduct regular preservation activities and, if necessary, educating them for specific preservation activities, educating users and including knowledge about preservation issues into formal education of information experts. The fourth aspect is technical and operative and it implies estimating storage conditions and deterioration rate, conducting collection condition surveys, handling material and applying preservation methods and techniques. One remaining element that lies in the essence of preservation purpose is cultural and social aspect. It focuses on establishing and applying evaluation and selection criteria for preservation, offering new services or services with added value as a contribution to the social development.

As it was shown in this work, efficient preservation of old books includes many different issues. Understanding and applying them in the right way is the best solution for old book preservation.

References

Bruin de, Gerrit. An assessment of Deltaplan : the Dutch National Preservation Strategy. // Liber quarterly 14 (2004), 356-367.

Cheradame, H.; S. Ipert; E. Rousset. Mass deacidification of paper and books. I: Study of the limitations of the gas phase processes. // Restaurator : international journal for the preservation of library and archival material 24, 4 (2003), 227–239.

Conservation methods [cited 2010-01-25]. Available at: http://www.tanap.net/content/archives/conservation/conservation.htm

Conservation science : heritage material / edited by Eric May and Mark Jones. Cambridge: RSC Publishing, 2006.

Havermans, John; Pieter Marres; Peter Defize. The development of a universal procedure for archive assessment. // Restaurator 20, 1 (1999), 48–55.

IFLA Principles for the care and handling of library materials. / compiled and edited by Edward P. Adcock. 1998 [cited: 2010-01-27]. Available at: http://archive.ifla.org/VI/4/news/pchlm.pdf

Perez, Serge; William Mackie. Structure and morphology of cellulose. 2001 [cited: 2010-01-27]. Available at: http://www.cermav.cnrs.fr/glyco3d/lessons/cellulose/index.html

Preservation of library & archival materials : a manual. Andover, MA : Northeast Document Conservation Center, 1999.

Preservation : issues and planning / edited by Paul Banks and Roberta Pilette. Chicago : American Library Association, 2000.

Steemers, Ted. Preservation policy (a draft). Den Haag : National Archives of Netherlands, 2003.

Biographical sketch

Damir Hasenay is an associate professor and Head of the Department of Information Sciences, Faculty of Philosophy, University of J. J. Strossmayer in Osijek, Croatia. His main research interest is material science, especially preservation and conservation of books and other materials of written heritage.

Maja Krtalić is a research and teaching assistant at the Department of Information Sciences, Faculty of Philosophy, University of J. J. Strossmayer in Osijek, Croatia. She obtained a Bachelor's degree in Library Science and Croatian Language and Literature, and a Master's degree in Information Sciences from the Zagreb University, Croatia. She is writing a PhD thesis on preservation management. Her main area of interest is preservation of library materials, specifically preservation management.

Iva Gobić Vitolović is the head of the Department for Conservation and Restoration, State Archives in Rijeka, Croatia. Her main area of interest is conservation and restoration of archival and library materials.

ZAŠTITA I KONZERVACIJA STARIH KNJIGA

Sažetak

U radu se daje pregled osnovne problematike zaštite i konzervacije starih knjiga kroz najvažnija pitanja i znanja potrebna za njihovo sustavno i sveobuhvatno razumijevanje. U prvom dijelu rada objašnjavaju se temeljni pojmovi u zaštiti te njihovi odnosi i značenje. Drugi dio rada bavi se materijalima stare građe, njihovom strukturom, procesima propadanja kao i načinima kako ih zaštititi. Predstavljene su neke osnovne metode i tehnike konzervacije i restauracije. U kontekstu zaštite starih knjiga razmotrena je i uloga preformatiranja.

Ključne riječi: zaštita, upravljanje zaštitom, konzervacija, restauracija, stara knjiga

V.

Old book collection management

COLLECTION MANAGEMENT OF SPECIAL COLLECTIONS MATERIAL
EMPHASIS ON DIGITAL PROJECTS

Laila Miletic-Vejzovic
University of Central Florida, Special Collections and University Archives, USA

Abstract
The main purpose of the article is to discuss the role and management of Special Collections in an emerging university environment. Furthermore, it is to introduce principles and practices of collection management of Special Collections material with an emphasis on digital projects goals, digitization criteria, and management of digital assets. As per the premise that good digital collections are created according to an explicit collection development policy, the article provides specific guidelines for developing a collection development policy. There are numerous benefits for scholarship and preservation resulting from creating digital collections that dramatically broaden access to unique and rare materials from Special Collections holdings. However, for the material to be discovered, metadata is essential, because there is no digitization without metadata, and good digital collections must include descriptive searchable metadata, created based on best practices and available standards. Google and search engine have revolutionized the way our patrons access information, therefore Special Collections must bring their content to the desktops and process their hidden collections.

Keywords
academic libraries, special collections, collection development, digitization, collection management, United States

Introduction

In this paper I want to discuss the role and management of Special Collections in an emerging university environment. Furthermore, my desire is to introduce principles and practices of collection management of Special Collections material with an emphasis on digital projects goals, digitization criteria, and management of digital assets. Decisions regarding collection development policy have implications not only for researchers, but also for digitizing projects, and collection management. The paper provides an overview of the issues, including guidelines for developing a collection development policy, as well as identifies some institutions that have set collection management priorities based on their collection development policies, and digital initiatives.

The aim of the paper is also to discuss numerous benefits for scholarship and preservation resulting from creating digital collections that dramatically broaden access to unique and rare materials from Special Collections holdings. As per the premise that there is no digitization without metadata, good digital collections must include descriptive metadata accompanying digital items. Accordingly, the paper explores numerous issues involved in such projects from the perspective of standards, best practices, creation of metadata, and workflow for departments.

Special collections

Before anything else, I need to define Special Collections which is an integral part of an academic library – a heart of a research university. Therefore, let me define all of the three entities.

"A leading research university is one that obviously excels in the heavily funded research fields. But it is also a university that finds excellence in all fields of academic pursuit. A research university is one that values all forms of scholarship, but also places a premium on world-class teaching, mentoring, and the training of the next generation of scholars."[1] Academic library is a lot of things but most importantly it supports research and promotes the development of new knowledge. Academic library is a set of collections and services that people value and use; set of spaces that people value and come to; a research library collects so that the key advances of knowledge come to it. Special Collections as broadly defined by Association of Research Libraries (ARL) –"include distinctive material in all media and attendant library services." As per the dictionary definition, special collection is "a collection of materials segregated from a general library collection according to form, subject, age, condition, rarity, source, or value".

1 Spaniolo, James D, President of University of Texas at Arlington (UTA). His remarks during the Fall Meeting of the University Faculty and Associates, at UTA, September 26, 2005 [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.uta.edu/undergrad-assembly/UF05_09_26.html

In June of 2001, I attended the Association of Research Libraries (ARL) Symposium, "Building on Strength: Developing an ARL Agenda for Special Collections," at Brown University. This Symposium was a tipping point for us working in Special Collections, and we all agreed that what distinguishes academic or research libraries from each other are their Special Collections due to the unique resources that they hold. It was a very validating and inspiring experience, and it left me with a great feeling of optimism that finally special collections will come to be more recognized and visible, and stop having to justify *le raison d'être*.

As a result of this Symposium, ARL issued *Special Collections: Statement of Principles, Research Libraries and the Commitment to Special Collections*, stated below, and available on their web site.[2]

"Scholarly research depends ultimately on the availability of primary sources. Academic libraries preserve and provide such primary resources as part of their fundamental mission. Manuscripts or printed books or other artifacts or objects "born digital" are tangible marks of prior cultures, literary growth and development, and turning points in history. They are the means by which scholars document, investigate and interpret all our histories and cultures.

Members of the Association of Research Libraries (ARL), like other research libraries in this country and internationally, embrace the complex set of obligations imposed by our mission to provide primary resources. We collect, organize, maintain and preserve these primary research materials to meet the needs of our parent institutions, like them, to serve the needs of national and international scholarship. We view our commitment to primary resources as a critical component of our institutional mission and as an enduring contribution by research libraries to scholarship and learning.

As ARL libraries carry out these important functions, our Special Collections play a critical role. While many of our general collections are remarkable in their comprehensiveness or age, our Special Collections tend to the unique. They comprise manuscripts and archival collections unduplicated elsewhere and one-of-a-kind or rarely held books. They also include items precious through their rarity, monetary value, or their association with important figures or institutions in history, culture, politics, sciences, or the arts.

2 Association of Research Libraries (ARL). The unique role of special collections. Special collections. Statement of principles, 2003 [cited: 2010-19-02]. Available at: http://www.arl.org/rtl/speccoll/speccollprinciples.shtml

Special Collections extend beyond paper to other formats of cultural significance, for example photographs, moving pictures, architectural drawings, and digital archives. [...] Special Collections represent not only the heart of an academic library's mission, but one of the critical identifiers of an academic library. In academia scholarly research depends ultimately on the availability of primary sources."

Yes, it is very inspiring to realize that Special Collections departments which historically have been in the periphery of events, somewhat marginalized, are now emerging as leaders in the academia. Librarians working in Special Collections are very optimistic and excited at the opportunities and potential of Special Collections because in recent years Special Collections have increasingly been recognized as central to the research and teaching missions of major libraries, and ultimately to their respective universities.

This renewed interest in their potential has raised a wide range of questions about the role and management of special collections. What do we expect of them and their curators? What level of resources should be allocated to them? How should those resources be managed? How can additional funding be obtained to develop them and services based upon them? How can the collections be better integrated into research and teaching programs. What role should Special Collections play in the digital library environment?[3]

Role, management & challenges of special collections

What is different about the role of Special Collections in an emerging research university environment, what has changed since their role in a traditional university environment?

The fact is that the main role, functions and services in special collections have not changed, i.e., to acquire and preserve material, to process it, and to provide access to it. Also, outreach activities, exhibits, lectures, etc., remain very important functions of special collections, and finally the fundraising and development activities. Accordingly, the main operations and services have not changed but the new tools and the delivery of new innovative services have emerged in the digital age, with a new infrastructure, co-existing with the traditional one.

3 Between cultural management and research : special collections in the 21st century. Organisation, services, resources. A series of workshops held in Weimar, Germany, November 22-25, 2005 [cited: 2010-09-03]. Available at: http://www.initiativefortbildung.de/pdf/2005/sondersammlungen_engl.pdf

Most importantly, the new technology has changed how users interact with the library. Further, digital access has allowed an increasing number of users to locate and access our resources. For example, students indicate that Google is the search engine mostly used to begin their searches. So typically, when they type in a search query, if relevant to our holdings it brings our content to their desktops, informs them about copyright, permission request, reproduction options, policies, etc. This type of interacting with us represents the "new school" of users, which blaze through the Internet.

The main challenges, however, facing Special Collections in the 21st Century remain very similar to the ones that were facing them even in the former century, but augmented by new ones. Just to enumerate a few: limited resources, existing backlogs/hidden collections, under described material, complicated legal issues, "old school users" vs. "new school users", and, swiftly evolving technological landscape. On the other hand, Special Collections should consider challenges as opportunities; therefore the opportunities are as never before to expose truly unique research materials by publishing finding aids online, e.g. Special Collections & University Archives at the University of Florida Central Libraries[4]; developing digital collections (both through institutional and consortia efforts), e.g. Central Florida Memory;[5] creating virtual exhibits, e.g. Smithsonian Institution Libraries' Library and Archival Exhibition on the Web.[6] In addition, they can enhance access to their material by creating added value features to bibliographic records in the online catalogs, e.g. links to: finding aids from bibliographic records, annotated pages within a book, images of maps folded within a bound item, a full image of a manuscript document, and so forth.

The 21st century belongs to Special Collections and this is the century when they will flourish, and become essential centers for research and scholarship. They hold the unique primary source material, records of civilization, and of the cultural heritage. 'This is our time," so eloquently exclaimed Gary Strong, the University Librarian at the University of California (UCLA), to the audience filled with special collections

4 Special Collections & University Archives at the University of Florida Central Libraries [cited: 2010-09-03]. Available at: http://library.ucf.edu/SpecialCollections/Collections/ManuscriptsAlpha.asp#AD

5 Central Florida Memory Project (CFM) [cited: 2010-09-03]. Available at: http://www.cfmemory.org/

6 Smithsonian Institution Libraries. Library and Archival Exhibition on the Web [cited: 2010-09-03]. Available at: http://www.sil.si.edu/SILPublications/Online-Exhibitions

librarians and archivists, during his opening remarks at the 2008 RBMS (Rare Books & Manuscripts Section) Preconference in Los Angeles.[7]

Yes, for us working in Special Collections this is our time but we must also realize that Google and other search engines have revolutionized the way our patrons access information. As per the commonly applied saying by the 21st century consumers in regard to any information, which actually applies perfectly to Special Collections material, " ... if it's not [described] online, it does not exist." We in Special Collections must bring our content to their desktops, and mostly provide access to our hidden collections.

Based on a report by Cathy De Rosa et al., submitted to OCLC:[8]

- Students started their searches using a search engine, i.e. Google.
- Only 48% ended up at a library Web site.
- Of which only 41% went on to use the library Web site.
- But only 10% indicated that the library Web site fulfilled their information needs.
- While 27% indicated that they had to use other resources.

The data from the Report confirms that libraries are not reaching the millennium generation which they must target and bring to their resources, to ensure that they discover their materials. Further, based on the above data, numerous other surveys, and assessments, Special Collections have realized that libraries are not seen as a top choice for access to electronic resources. "Undergraduates live on the Web. They begin, and often finish their research with Google, and mostly use the library as a place to study."[9] Therefore it is essential that Special Collections become proactive and that they react to this millennium generation.

What steps must Special Collections undertake to ensure that they fulfill their mission in the digital age? Special Collections must work with Systems departments to develop a digital research information structure enabling them to better connect to the global digital space housed on the web, and to take advantage of the opportunities

7 Rare and special bytes : special collections in the digital age, the 49th Annual RBMS Preconference, June 24-27, 2008, Los Angeles, California [cited: 2010-09-03]. Available at: http://unitproj.library.ucla.edu/special/rbms/

8 De Rosa, Cathy [et al.]. College students' perceptions of libraries and information resources : a report to the OCLC membership : a companion piece to the perceptions of libraries and information resources. Dublin, Ohio : OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc., 2006 [cited: 2010-19-02]. Available at: http://www.oclc.org/reports/pdfs/studentperceptions.pdf

9 Lewis, David W. A strategy for academic libraries in the first quarter of the 21st century. // College and research libraries 68, 5(2007), 424.

for exposing their collections within that rich, interactive digital environment and opening it up to the world.[10] Furthermore, partnerships and collaboration are critical to every aspect of their agenda. Where are their partners? Everywhere: in other library departments, in their colleges, in the administration, even in private sector, and, in the community. Lewis proposes, "... [a] Scholar's Collective would address the dual challenge of creating useful tools for humanities scholarship, while simultaneously creating capacity for collaboration [...] The Scholar's Collective is not a place; rather, it is a set of tools for the discovery, gathering, creating, and sharing of information. It will be web based, and, while it will have some traditional library functions built into it, it will not be the library."[11] Therefore, Special Collections must bring their content to the desktops. Also, linking strategies have to be used, e.g. from the Web site to our online catalogs. The searching must be cross-referenced, and transparent. Special Collections must integrate their tools and resources into course management systems. Embed their resources into individual faculty courses, and explore Blogs aimed at individual courses, and even create a Facebook.[12]

Special Collections still have to cater to the "old school users" whose activities involve immersing into research in Special Collections departments. However, the combination of the "old" and "new school" seems to be the most common approach, especially for our students who do their work in front of a computer searching the Internet, at the same time reading from books laid next to the computer, and text-messaging, e-mailing or talking with their friends on cell phones.

The workload in Special Collections has increased due to the demands for maintaining the old infrastructure, and embracing the new one. In this digital environment, Special Collections have truly democratized access to their holdings, with a desire to make their primary sources available electronically worldwide. Now they must stay current with digital information management and adapt to millennium generation who consider the world of "amazoogle", to be everything they need and want, as noted earlier.

10 Brindley, Lynne. Paper assets in the digital age : speech given at the opening of the underground stacks west at the Swiss National Library Bern, 20 August 2009 [cited: 2010-19-02] Available at: http://www.newsservice.admin.ch/NSBSubscriber/message/en/attachments/28467/58266/16500/Brindley_EN.pdf

11 Lewis, David. Op. cit., p. 424.

12 Special Collections & University Archives, University of Central Florida Libraries [cited: 2010-09-03]. Available at: http://www.facebook.com/pages/Orlando-FL/Special-Collections-University-Archives-UCF-Libraries/123996688633

The mission has not changed either because in concert with the University mission and goals, Special Collections continue to support teaching, research, scholarship, to ensure development of new knowledge, and to contribute to the social economic growth in our society. It has never been a better time to work in academic libraries, and especially to work in Special Collections. **The 21st century belongs** to Special Collections, and this is the century when they shall flourish, and become essential centers for research and scholarship. They hold the unique primary source material, records of civilization, and records of cultural heritage.

At the end of 1990s, a survey was conducted among the scholarly community, and the respondents indicated as the highest priority to have the finding aids available online. Teen years later, we still hear comments from our users who are very grateful to have the finding aids available online, and able to browse through them down to the folder or even to the item level. Few years ago, while still at Washington State University Libraries, I assisted a patron from Switzerland with a reference inquiry, which ended up being a reproduction request. He was searching for a particular "Serenade fur Streichtrio" (a serenade for a string trio) by Hans Rosbaud, a deceased German composer. Through a Google search he discovered that exact "serenade" in the Hans Rosbaud's Papers. The patron was ecstatic learning that we had it, and that it was so well described down to the item level. He immediately contacted me to inquire about our reproduction policies, and reproduction options.

Yes, in this digital environment Special Collections have truly democratized access to their collections, with a desire to make their primary resources available electronically worldwide. We all know that in democratic society Special Collections' resources have always been available to patrons but often only reserved for in-house elite. Now everyone with an access to the Internet can browse through finding aids, and do a preliminary search to narrow down their needs, or to request reproductions. Another phenomenon has occurred, i.e. the increased reproduction requests – up by 75%, after having digitized so much of the content, which includes digital manifestations of photographs, maps, artifacts, documents, and oral history interviews through streamed audio, and even video (high cost/high value.) The off-site reference inquires have also increased by an average of 75% for Special Collections.

All of these new services have multiplied the workload and forced Special Collections to constantly evaluate their workflow, and to streamline processes because as stated earlier they still continue to offer traditional service for their on-site users. It is a balancing act since the "old" and "new" must coexist. But again for any of us working in Special Collections it is very rewarding that we still continue to serve a steady and large population of on-site users, and to offer personal reference face to face in our quiet and elegant quarters. We are not threatened by the notion of old vs. new because old tools, service and infrastructure are nicely complemented by new innovative services via online reference inquiries, enhanced access to our resources, with the ultimate goal to bring content to the desktops.

As I am talking about Special Collections in this new emerging environment, you can see that I am constantly talking about traditional services and the new ones because they co-exist, and there is a seamless transition between the two. There are also links between the two, as well as between the online catalog and the web sites, so that the searching is transparent.

Having discussed Special Collections and their position in this new era, let me say a few words about what makes Special Collections great? Their collections, spaces and services make them great. What would it take to get from great to greater? As we talk with our patrons, we learn from them that they have great expectations for what they need to find. They expect to have access to many other things that we do not necessarily own. They also expect to have access to information from where ever they might be, whenever it might be, and whatever they might need. So, the delivery of information must be to where ever, whatever, whenever. This is a measure that Special Collections must strive for. Of course they need resources, which are declining so they need additional resources from administrators, and from donors who respond very well to demonstrated success and vision. Special Collections need to approach them with request for additional funding based on the things that they have put to good use: their digital databases, emphasize their success, stress their strengths, i.e. job expertise, and their service ethic/service orientation, and, return on investment, e.g. professional training and development. It is imperative that Special Collections inform University administrators, boards of trustees, legislators, and other members of the community about the obligations and responsibilities an institution assumes when it undertakes the stewardship of Special Collections of international importance.

Collection development

Decisions regarding collection development policy have implications not only for researchers, but also for digitizing projects, collection management, and development of digital collections, "A good digital collection is created according to an explicit collection development policy."[13]

Special Collections must have a Collection Development (CD) policy document (which should be a "live document"), to ensure that they: acquire material in concert with the mission of their university; that the existing collections, gifts, and purchases fulfill their main obligation, i.e. to support teaching and research; and, that they continue to support international community, due to its unique and rare material. The purpose of the collection development policy is intended to guide the selection of materials to be added to collections, whether by purchase, or through gifts. Also, the collection development policy is used: in the allocation of funds and in an effort to obtain additional funding from endowments, gifts, or grants; as a source of information for those both within and outside the Library community on the strengths of its collection; to identify those areas of lesser collecting interest; and, to assists in resource sharing and cooperative collection development arrangements with other libraries. The CD policy should always include Department's mission statement, e.g.: "The mission of the University of Central Florida Libraries Special Collections and University Archives is to: provide services to the Library and University community in support of research, teaching and service. Special Collections acquires books that have a central function to the curriculum and that cannot be replaced and primary source materials that support long-term research goals. The University Archives is the official repository of all aspects of life at the University of Central Florida."[14] Furthermore, it should include the scope both for the primary sources and printed collections, e.g.: African Americana; Book Arts and Book Artist's Archive; Caribbean and the West Indies; Floridiana; Travel & Tourism; and, University Archives. General guidelines for collecting should include the language, chronological period, geographical scope treatment, and types of material. The

13 National Information Standards Organization (NISO). A framework of guidance for building good digital collections. 3rd ed., Dec 2007. Collections Principle 1, p. 4 [cited: 2010-05-03]. Available at: http://www.niso.org/publications/rp/framework3.pdf

14 University of Central Florida (UCF). Special Collections & University Archives, at University of Central Florida Libraries, website [cited: 2010-26-02]. Available at: http://library.ucf.edu/SpecialCollections/AboutUs/CollectingPolicy.asp

observations and qualifications must be specified, as to how the department's resources should be acquired; address collaboration with other repositories to ensure the appropriate home for the materials; and, clearly state terms under which the material should be accepted. There is a very useful resource available at the Rare Books & Manuscripts Section (RBMS) website which addresses some frequently asked questions about rare and older books and their values.[15] Important additional documents include the Deed of Gift Form;[16] the Memorandum of Understanding (MOU); the Records Transfer Form; and, the Gift in Kind Form. In addition a couple of examples of very brief CD policies available are available on web sites of Special Collections & University Archives at University of Central Florida Libraries,[17] and Manuscripts, Archives and Special Collections at Washington State University Libraries.[18]

Consequently, Special Collections must build their collections in keeping with institutional collection development policies, existing strengths, and regional or national commitments, and enter a new collection area only if there is a firm commitment to develop the collection and make it accessible to users. Therefore, Special Collections librarians must fulfill their liaison responsibilities by reaching out to their teaching faculty, and engaging with them, consulting with them in regard to new gifts or purchases. Furthermore, librarians must work collaboratively with appropriate partners to build collections in emerging areas of scholarly interest; and must broaden access to special collections by designing the most effective standards-based digitization projects. Finally, the University Archives chronicle and document the University's history and serve as the institutional history record or its "memory". The new challenge facing Special Collections is that currently the culture is changing, and the bulk of university correspondence, policies, etc., is being exchanged via e-mail. As we know, the president's papers have been invaluable resources among university archives holdings.

15 Rare Books & Manuscripts Section (RBMS) website [cited: 2010-09-03]. Available at: http://www.rbms.info/yob.shtml

16 Society of American Archivists (SAA). A guide to deed of gift [cited: 2010-05-03]. Available at: http://www.archivists.org/publications/deed_of_gift.asp

17 Special Collections & University Archives at University of Central Florida Libraries [cited: 2010-09-03]. Available at: http://library.ucf.edu/SpecialCollections/AboutUs/CollectingPolicy.asp

18 Manuscripts, Archives and Special Collections at Washington State University Libraries [cited: 2010-09-03]. Available at: http://www.wsulibs.wsu.edu/holland/masc/generalcollectionpolicy.html

Now University Presidents mainly use e-mail for communication, and even text-messaging. How are Special Collections going to preserve the history? The same is applicable to faculty research and their papers which historically have been deposited in university archives. Librarians need to get hold of those and curate the content. Academic libraries have primarily "... purchased collections to support their local communities or organizations. [Secondly] they have curated special collections of unique or valuable items for the world. In the past, the first role was dominant. In the future it will be the second that will become most important. In the past, the collections that were curated were primarily manuscripts, and rare books. In the future, the bulk of what is curated will be digital [content]. A part will be digital versions of traditional special collections, but, increasingly, it will be born-digital documents and digital outputs of the research enterprise. Managing the former is reasonably well understood; managing the latter will be a challenge, especially as large data sets become common with real-time ubiquitous data collection in many areas of science (often referred to as e-science) and the social sciences."[19]

Policy on access

Being special does not mean that Special Collections want to restrict or limit access to their material; on the contrary, their desire is to increase the use, by becoming more flexible in terms of allowing handling of their material, with of course balancing access and preservation. They must allow students to touch their precious resources. Also, the fact that they are called special makes them exclusive rather than inclusive, and less welcoming to their users, while they must aspire to be perceived as centers for research and scholarship.

Special Collections and Archives community have been eager to have the ACRL/SAA Joint Statement on Access to Research Materials in Archives and Special Collections Libraries, finalized and approved by the ACRL Board during the ALA Annual Conference, July 2009.[20]

As stated earlier openness and access is very important and therefore, Special Collections material must be processed and cataloged in

19 Lewis, David W. Op. cit., p. 426.

20 Association of College & Research Libraries (ACRL). ACRL/SAA Association of College & Research Libraries (ACRL). ACRL/SAA Joint statement on access to research materials in archives and special collections libraries / approved by the ACRL Board during the ALA Annual Conference, July 2009 [cited: 2010-04-03]. Available at: http://www.ala.org/ala/mgrps/divs/acrl/standards/jointstatement.cfm

order to be accessible. However, Special Collections must always balance preservation vs. access to ensure longevity for future access but again there is nothing like an excitement expressed by an undergraduate student when touching and holding an incunabulum or a rare manuscript. Nothing can really replace that feeling of holding and touching the original physical item.

It is very commendable that faculty continue to bring their students to Special Collections, and request presentations because they want them to learn about the history of the book, the history of printing, and different formats that Special Collections hold, which is in support of the "old school". They feel that at this time and age, students more than ever before must be offered the opportunity to connect with physical, old and rare items. It is so gratifying for librarians to see the expression on students' faces, as they touch, and hold the original items in their hands, which is often followed by a comment: "this is so awesome!" They immediately develop a connection to history, an understanding of the past, and an appreciation for the material, which constantly proves to be an invaluable educational experience, and a tipping point for bringing the students back to Special Collections.

Exhibits

The exhibits have always been one of Special Collections programs, which have served as outreach efforts and to publicize their collections. In addition, Special Collections have often worked with faculty to develop opportunities for graduate student-curated exhibits which has been very beneficial both for students, and for curators. Special Collections still install and curate exhibits in-house, but they also put them on their web sites, therefore they become accessible to a much larger audience, which allows viewing after hours. Mostly, as exhibits become virtually available on web sites, they serve as the best advertisement of Special Collections resources and attract more patrons to their departments. There is even a link from the Smithsonian Institution Libraries web site to individual exhibits online, called "Library and Archival Exhibitions on the Web".[21]

21 Smithsonian Institution Libraries. Library and Archival Exhibitions on the Web [cited: 2010-09-03]. Available at: http://www.sil.si.edu/SILPublications/Online-Exhibitions/search.htm

Planning and managing digital projects in special collections

The digital infrastructure is in place, with databases, equipment, and new standards for creation of metadata. The scanning process in itself is inexpensive once you have the equipment and the library staff but what makes the information searchable, discoverable and functional is the integrated metadata, which must be robust and good. Creation of metadata is very expensive but there is no digitization without metadata! Also, the digital environment offers tremendous opportunities for collaboration among institutions, libraries, museums, and archives. We librarians have always been very good at collaborating and it is something that comes natural to us, so we must cease the moment and embark on joint projects. The state libraries, and other funding agencies, e.g. Institute of Museum and Library Services (IMLS), love collaborative projects, and are much more willing to fund those, rather than of a single library funding request (e.g. CFM, PALMM, dLOC).[22] So everyone gains with the high cost/high value effort. Special Collections get much needed external funding, and users get a "one stop shopping" in a web site that virtually displays, and pulls together all scattered collections among different institutions.

As Special Collections embark on creating digital databases or engage in any digitization efforts, it is important to have the "pre-production" phase in order to consider: type of projects, e.g. manuscripts, visual images, and artifacts; state of collections in terms of access and description level, e.g. at item or folder level; physical condition of items; copyright status; infrastructure to include production and publication in-house or outsourced; the level of staff training depending on their experience with technology, engaging professional staff vs. students and volunteers; funding either to be provided by institutional or external funds (e.g. endowments, monetary contributions, or grants). Once the above enumerated steps are fully addressed and accomplished, a given Special Collections Department must have: digital project goals, digitization criteria, management of digital assets, and, standards for which guidelines are freely available online. Important to note is that

22 Central Florida Memory Project (CFM) [cited: 2010-26-02]. Available at: http://www.cfmemory.org/; Publication of Archival, Library, Museum Material (PALMM) [cited: 2010-26-02]. Available at: http://palmm.fcla.edu/; Digital Library of the Caribbean (dLOC) [cited: 2010-26-02]. Available at: http://web1.dloc.com/ufdc/

metadata standards[23] should be followed for description purposes, and for the usage of metadata which is essential for the material to be discovered. The digital content, i.e. digital collections must be curated in the same fashion as any other physical collections. The primary purpose of descriptive metadata is to assist researchers in the discovery of resources relevant to their research objectives, and to assist general and/or potential audience in discovery of resources relevant to their needs. Metadata is essential and it is the backbone of digital curation. Without metadata a digital resource may be irretrievable, unidentifiable or unusable. Metadata is descriptive or contextual information which refers to, or is associated with, another object or resource. Metadata consists of a structured set of elements which describe the information resource and assist in the identification, location and retrieval of it by users, while facilitating content and access management. Metadata standards formalize the element structure to ensure that the aims of a user community can be fulfilled. The use of metadata standards ensure: rich, consistent metadata which will support the long-term discovery, use and integrity of digital resources; as well as effective searching, improved digital curation and the possibility of sharing. The metadata standards enable interoperability – metadata from a variety of sources can be integrated into other technical systems or machine read by compatible ones, also, the potential for resource discovery is much greater. There are different types of metadata standards which are used interdependently to achieve the following aims: metadata structure standards ensure consistent structure across individual entries, and enable data searching to be implemented and data sharing across a discipline. Hierarchical structure standards enable context as well as content to be described. *Metadata content rules* enable consistent data entry for effective searching. Content rules include: controlled vocabularies, authority files, thesauri, and classifications.

It is necessary to ensure metadata consistency and uniformity by developing: metadata guidelines for an institution or for consortia, best practices for an institution or for consortia, and, mapping guidelines for topical collections. For cost effectiveness it is also necessary to provide training opportunities, and ideally train the trainers.

23 Dublin Core (DC) [cited: 2010-05-03]. Available at: http://dublincore.org/; Metadata Encoding & Transmission Standard (METS) [cited: 2010-05-03]. Available at: http://www.loc.gov/standards/mets/; Metadata Object Description Schema (MODS) [cited 2010-05-03]. Available at: http://www.loc.gov/standards/mods/; Visual Research Association data standards (VRA) [cited: 2010-05-03]. Available at: http://www.vraweb.org/projects/vracore4/

Why do Special Collections digitize their resources? The answers are over simplistic but still important to note. They digitize to provide: better access, added value to their holdings, preserve fragile materials, support educational and research activities of institution, fulfill strategic mission and goals of institution, support collection management and preservation, make information and assets more readily available, provide material for educational programs and address curriculum needs, provide materials for curators and researchers (internal and external), and eliminate redundant work and creation of redundant assets (photographs, slides, digital images, etc.). The types of digital projects include: special and archival collections, reformatting content from other non-print resources, born digital projects, and digitization projects in a consortium. For any types of digital project, a selection criterion considers: scarcity – how scarce or rare is a given item or collection, access relative to research availability, physical condition and format, intrinsic/monetary value, evidential value, and archival/historical/continuing/enduring value. With budget constraints, it is important to think about cost effectiveness, e.g. scanning and color mode, pdf versus html for text documents, text searching, variety of formats, and identify projects. Contributing any digital content on the Internet constitutes "publishing" on the Internet. Accordingly it must be determined who owns the copyright, is it in the public domain, has the copyright on the item expired, and finally, is it possible to obtain permission and to publish it with or without conditions/restrictions?

The planning of the workflows is of utmost importance for cost effectiveness and successful completion of digitized projects. The items to consider: is the collection ready to go, is there a finding-aid, e.g. HTML or encoded archival description (EAD), does the material require any preservation/conservation treatments? It is highly recommended to develop a Time Table which should ensure efficiency and streamline the process. Also, to determine the linear line fashion model vs. parallel tracks, time line for scanning, metadata, and quality control.

It is important to note that once the material is published on the Internet, it can be "misused". Therefore, provide good quality image but not good enough for publication use, e.g. smaller size, and provide hi resolution images on demand. Each special Collections department should have the Reproduction Cost Form, and the Reproduction Request Form that states terms of use. Having material digitized, has a direct impact on public services due to increased digital and web pres-

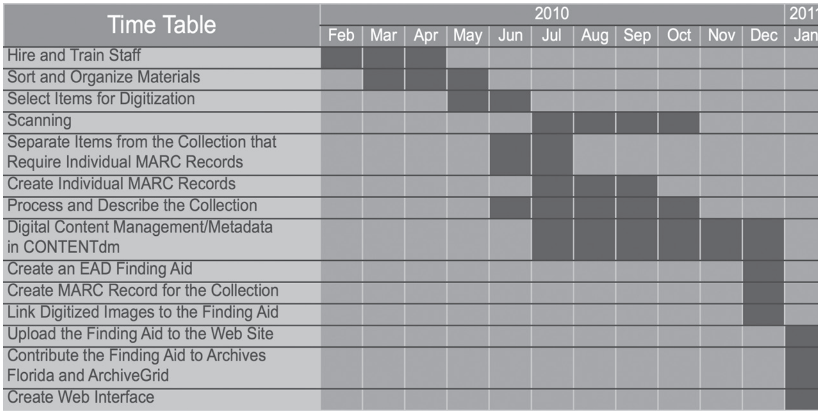


Table 1.
Sample Time Table for creating digital collections

ence which requires more time and staff to handle questions, reproduction orders, permission requests, etc., and it is recommended to have policies, reproduction costs and permission request forms available online. In summary, I would like to stress again that any digitization project should start with a project plan, goals and objectives to achieve, selection process and criteria, research time, digital image creation, metadata creation, promotion and assessment, and long-term preservation/sustainability. At present there is a wealth of resources available freely online, e.g. *A Framework of Guidance for Building Good Digital Collections* (3rd ed., December 2007), a NISO Recommended practice, prepared by the NISO WG with support from IMLS.[24]

Conclusion

To conclude I want to state again that Special Collections have traditionally existed to collect and to organize information, make access to knowledge more democratic, and to preserve the record of ideas for future generations. Now information is ubiquitous: 500 million web pages are just a keystroke away. Their content mutates constantly, and it is subject to no structure. Google and other search engines have revolutionized the way our patrons access information. How do we redefine the role of Special Collections in such a rapidly changing environment?

24 National Information Standards Organization (NISO). A framework of guidance for building good digital collections [cited: 2010-19-02]. Available at: http://www.niso.org/publications/rp/framework3.pdf

Clearly, we will continue to collect print, manuscripts, and other traditional material. However, in today's new environment that is not sufficient, and there are new challenges that we must address. What steps must we take to ensure that we fulfill our mission in the digital age?[25]

"You've got to be very careful if you don't know where you're going, because you might not get there." – Yogi Berra (one of baseball greatest treasures).[26] Well, we know where we are going but before we get there, we have yet a long way to go. We need the means and the tools to get there. So, we need to stress upon you our administrators, that we need their strong support for future development of special collections (**to get there**), i.e. to become centers for research and scholarship.

To get there, it is essential that we market our services and highlight our unique material, to demonstrate Special Collections' value to the institutional mission, and to advocate the institutional advantage of having Special Collections – the only collections that distinguishes one library from another.[27] We must realize that our patrons do not care about silos, they want to find the "staff" – therefore we must increase access, and provide access to digital material; process our hidden collections (collections only acquired have only potential value); consider "new ways" of cataloging printed material; link scattered collections among institutions; forge new partnerships with our constituencies; get out of the reading room, into the classrooms; collaborate with digital services to bring more content to the desktops.[28]

Furthermore, we must become creative due to the current "budget crisis"; become more selective with purchases and gifts – tend to uniqueness, reassess what we bring through the door; start collecting what is most threatened, e.g. ephemera, punk memorabilia, born digital – as a service to our users; provide internship opportunities to students – return on investment, e.g. processing, exhibits, digital projects, etc.; collaborate, develop partnerships, and build consortia.[29]

25 British Library. Redefining the library : The British Library's strategy, 2005-2008:8 [cited: 2010-19-02]. Available at: http://www.bl.uk/aboutus/stratpolprog/strategy0811/blstrategy20052008.pdf

26 Berra, Yogi. The Yogi book. New York : The Workman Publishing, 1998. P. 102.

27 Association of Research Libraries (ARL). Transformative issues for special collections in ARL libraries, webcasted on July 7th, 2009. (please confer the News Press Release [cited: 2010-19-02]. Available at: http://www.arl.org/news/pr/spec-coll-10june09.shtml. N.B. This webcast is no longer available.

28 Ibid.

29 Association of Research Libraries (ARL). Special collections in ARL libraries. The full text of the original report of the ARL Special Collections Working Group is freely available. [Cited: 2010-19-02]. Available at: http://www.arl.org/bm~doc/scwg-report.pdf

Now, I would like to share with all of you just a few additional points. Couple of years ago, I was reading an article by David Levy *Contemplating Scholarship in Digital Age*. He talks about the fast pace that we live in, and all the gadgets that occupy us. His concern is that people engage less in scholarship: "Today's academic life, I have discovered firsthand, is hardly leisure. Almost entirely missing is the time to read and reflect; the time to muse and to absorb; the time to *think*. The slow time needed for scholarship is consistently overridden by the fast time of teaching and administrative duties."[30] Then he refers to Josef Pieper, a German philosopher and theologian, who in 1948 published *Musse un Kult* (English translation: Leisure the Basis of Culture).[31] But by leisure Pieper did not mean what is typically meant today: pursuing recreational activities and time off. Instead he meant the recovery of the Greek notion of leisure because for the Greeks, leisure was the highest good, the ultimate aim of human life, and work was a lesser, though still necessary, form of activity. Work was what needed to be done for the sake of something else: spinning wool in order to make clothing, lighting a fire in order to keep warm, building a house in order to be sheltered from the elements. Leisure, by contrast, was that which required no justification beyond itself; philosophy, the arts, and the celebration of festivals fell under this category for the Greeks because they were simply an expression of the human spirit and its true life in the world.

"[Pieper] noted that the words *school, scholar,* and *scholarship* are all derived from the Latin *schola*, which is itself derived from the Greek word for leisure (*skhole*)."[32]

Levy also discusses a library as a peaceful place and to support his argument he mentions a two-page advertisement in the Sunday *New York Times* magazine (August 2002) for the IBM ThinkPad laptop. It showed a man wearing a business suit sitting with his laptop open on his lap in the stacks of a library. The ad copy read, "In deep halcyon repose", and below this it gave the dictionary definition for *halcyon* as "peaceful." What the ad was saying seemed clear enough: You can take this laptop anywhere, even to places such as the library, where you'll get some peace and quiet.[33]

30 Levy, David. Contemplating scholarship in the digital age. // RBM : a journal of rare books, manuscripts, and cultural heritage 6, 2(Fall 2005), 70.
31 Pieper, Josef. Leisure : the basis of culture. South Bend, Indiana : St. Augustine Press, 1998.
32 Levy, D. Op. cit., p. 73.
33 Ibid., p. 75.

Locher, Jacob.
Panegyricus ad Maximilianum.
Strassburg, 1497.

…that perfect tranquility of life,
which is nowhere to be found
but in retreat, a faithful friend,
and a good library…

--Aphra Behn--

Illustration 1.
Locher, Jacob. Panegyricus ad Maximilianum.Tragoedia de Turcis et Soldano. Dialogus de heresiarchis. Strassburg, Johann Reinhard Grüninger, 1497.

It is naturally, that when we think of scholarship we think of going to the library, the peaceful and quite Special Collections quarters and plunging into its resources. "There is nothing like [...] that perfect tranquility of life, which is nowhere to be found but in retreat, a faithful friend, and a good library [...]" – Aphra Behn (English dramatist, novelist & poet, 1640-1689).

Yes, we aspire to position libraries as a person's "third place." The first place is the home, the second place their work place, and the third place should be a library, a protected physical place, a sanctuary, where one can read, reflect, study, and contemplate. Also a fun place where one can have cappuccino and visit with friends, as wells as a place where people seek and find information, what they need, when they need it, from wherever they might be, at whatever time of the day it might be. In the new digital age that third place is not only limited to a library building but also to a virtual site, which nicely segues into my final statement for special collections in digital age, **we must bring the content to the desktops and process our hidden collections.**

References

Association of College & Research Libraries (ACRL). ACRL/SAA Joint statement on access to research materials in archives and special collections libraries / approved by the ACRL Board during the ALA Annual Conference, July 2009 [cited: 2010-04-03]. Available at: http://www.ala.org/ala/mgrps/divs/acrl/standards/jointstatement.cfm

Association of Research Libraries (ARL). Special collections in ARL libraries [cited: 2010-19-02]. Available at: http://www.arl.org/bm~doc/scwg-report.pdf

Association of Research Libraries (ARL). Transformative issues for special collections in ARL libraries, webcasted on July 7th, 2009 [cited: 2010-19-02]. Available at: http://www.arl.org/news/pr/spec-coll-10june09.shtml [N.B. This webcast is no longer available.]

Association of Research Libraries (ARL). The unique role of special collections. Special collections. Statement of principles, 2003 [cited: 2010-19-02]. Available at: http://www.arl.org/rtl/speccoll/speccollprinciples.shtml

Berra, Yogi. The Yogi book. New York : The Workman Publishing, 1998.

Between cultural management and research : special collections in the 21st century. Organisation, services, resources. A series of workshops held in Weimar, Germany, November 22-25, 2005 [cited: 2010-09-03]. Available at: http://www.initiative-fortbildung.de/pdf/2005/sondersammlungen_engl.pdf

Brindley, Lynne. Paper assets in the digital age : speech given at the opening of the underground stacks west at the Swiss National Library Bern, 20 August 2009 [cited: 2010-19-02] Available at: http://www.newsservice.admin.ch/NSBSubscriber/message/en/attachments/28467/58266/16500/Brindley_EN.pdf

British Library. Redefining the library : The British Library's strategy, 2005-2008 [cited: 2010-19-02]. Available at: http://www.bl.uk/aboutus/stratpolprog/strategy0811/blstrategy20052008.pdf

Central Florida Memory Project (CFM) [cited: 2010-26-02]. Available at: http://www.cfmemory.org/

De Rosa, Cathy [et al.]. College students' perceptions of libraries and information resources : a report to the OCLC membership : a companion piece to the perceptions of libraries and information resources. Dublin, Ohio : OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc., 2006 [cited: 2010-19-02]. Available at: http://www.oclc.org/reports/pdfs/studentperceptions.pdf

Digital Library of the Caribbean (dLOC) [cited: 2010-26-02]. Available at: http://web1.dloc.com/ufdc/

Dublin Core (DC) [cited: 2010-05-03]. Available at: http://dublincore.org/

Levy, David. Contemplating scholarship in the digital age. // RBM : a journal of rare books, manuscripts, and cultural heritage 6, 2(Fall 2005)

Lewis, David W. A strategy for academic libraries in the first quarter of the 21st century. // College and research libraries 68, 5(2007)

Manuscripts, Archives and Special Collections at Washington State University Libraries [cited: 2010-09-03]. Available at: http://www.wsulibs.wsu.edu/holland/masc/generalcollectionpolicy.html

Metadata Encoding & Transmission Standard (METS) [cited: 2010-05-03]. Available at: http://www.loc.gov/standards/mets/

Metadata Object Description Schema (MODS) [cited: 2010-05-03]. Available at: http://www.loc.gov/standards/mods/

National Information Standards Organization (NISO). A framework of guidance for building good digital collections, 3rd ed., Dec 2007 [cited: 2010-05-03]. Available at: http://www.niso.org/publications/rp/framework3.pdf

Pieper, Josef. Leisure : the basis of culture. South Bend, Indiana : St. Augustine Press, 1998.

Publication of Archival, Library, Museum Material (PALMM) [cited: 2010-26-02]. Available at: http://palmm.fcla.edu/

Rare and special bytes : special collections in the digital age, the 49th Annual RBMS Preconference, June 24-27, 2008, Los Angeles, California [cited: 2010-09-03]. Available at: http://unitproj.library.ucla.edu/special/rbms/

Rare Books & Manuscripts Section (RBMS) website [cited: 2010-09-03]. Available at: http://www.rbms.info/yob.shtml

The Society of American Archivists (SAA). A guide to deed of gift [cited: 2010-05-03]. Available at: http://www.archivists.org/publications/deed_of_gift.asp

Smithsonian Institution Libraries. Library and Archival Exhibition on the Web [cited: 2010-09-03]. Available at: http://www.sil.si.edu/SILPublications/Online-Exhibitions

Spaniolo, James D, President of University of Texas at Arlington (UTA). His remarks during the Fall Meeting of the University Faculty and Associates, at UTA, September 26, 2005 [cited: 2010-03-05]. Available at: http://www.uta.edu/undergrad-assembly/UF05_09_26.html

University of Central Florida (UCF). Special Collections & University Archives, University of Central Florida Libraries, website [cited: 2010-26-02]. Available at: http://library.ucf.edu/SpecialCollections/AboutUs/CollectingPolicy.asp

Visual Resources Association data standards (VRA) [cited: 2010-05-03]. Available at: http://www.vraweb.org/projects/vracore4/

Biographical sketch

Laila Miletic-Vejzovic, MLS, heads Special Collections and University Archives at University of Central Florida (UCF) Libraries. She joined the UCF library faculty after 19 years at Washington State University (WSU), where she had been head of Manuscripts, Archives and Special Collections. Ms. Miletic-Vejzovic began her career as a librarian in 1986, at the Huntington Library in San Marino, California, after obtaining her MLS from the University of Wisconsin in Madison. Her numerous awards include two Fulbright Scholar Awards in 1992 and 2004, a Fulbright Senior Specialist Grant in 2002-2003, two International Research and Exchange Board (IREX) grants in 1997 and 2000. In 1996, she was selected to attend the Summer Institute for Women in Higher Education Administration at Bryn Mawr College. She has served as a member of the Washington State Historical Records Advisory Board, and as a member of the WSU Press Editorial Board. Currently, she is a member of the *OCLC Systems & Services* Editorial Advisory Board.

UPRAVLJANJE ZBIRKAMA POSEBNE VRSTE GRAĐE S NAGLASKOM NA PROJEKTE DIGITALIZACIJE

Sažetak

Glavna je svrha ovoga rada propitati ulogu i upravljanje zbirkama posebne vrste građe u suvremenom sveučilišnom okruženju. Nadalje, svrha mu je dati uvod u načela i praksu upravljanja zbirkama posebne vrste građe s naglaskom na ciljeve projekata digitalizacije, kriterije digitalizacije te upravljanje digitalnim dobrom. Pod pretpostavkom da dobre digitalne zbirke nastaju prema jasno izraženoj politici razvoja zbirke, rad daje specifične smjernice za razvoj politike razvoja zbirke. Znanstveno istraživanje i zaštita građe uživaju nebrojene prednosti izgradnjom digitalnih zbirki koje dramatično otvaraju pristup jedinstvenoj i rijetkoj građi u fondovima zbirski posebne vrste građe. Međutim, da bi se građa otkrila bitni su metapodaci jer sama digitalizacija bez metapodataka ne može opstati, tako da dobre digitalne zbirke moraju uključivati opisne metapodatke za pretraživanje izrađene u skladu s dobrim praksama i dostupnim standardima. Google i pretraživači revolucionarizirali su način na koji korisnici pristupaju informacijama. Stoga zbirke posebne vrste građe trebaju dovesti svoj sadržaj na njihove radne površine i obraditi svoje skrivene zbirke.

Ključne riječi: sveučilišne knjižnice, zbirke posebne vrste građe, razvoj zbirki, digitalizacija, upravljanje zbirkama, SAD

Summer School in the Study of Old Books

Zadar, Croatia, 28 September to 2 October 2009
http://ozk.unizd.hr/ssob/

PROGRAMME

SUNDAY, 27 SEPTEMBER 2009

17.00 – 19.00 Registration

MONDAY, 28 SEPTEMBER 2009

8.00 – 9.00 Registration
9.00 – 9.15 Opening Session
Topic I: New Cultural History
9.15 – 10.15
Professor **Anne J. Gilliland**, PhD, UC Los Angeles, Department of Information Studies, USA
Research Trends in Archival and Manuscript Studies
10.15 – 10.45 Coffee Break
10.45 – 11.45
Associate Professor **Warren C. Brown**, PhD, California Institute of Technology, Pasadena, USA Manuscripts and the Past in Early Medieval Europe: the Case of Lay People and Documents
11.45 – 12.45
Professor **Emil Hilje**, PhD, Department of Art History, University of Zadar, Croatia
Books in Everyday Life of Zadar Citizens During the 14th and 15th Centuries: Testimonies from the Archives
Group Work C
13.00-14.00: State Archive, Zadar
Professor **Emil Hilje.** Books in Everyday Life of Zadar Citizens During the 14th and 15th Centuries: Testimonies from the Archives
13.00 – 14.30: Lunch Break
14.30 – 15.30
Assistant Professor **Zoran Velagić**, PhD, Department of Information Sciences, Faculty of Philosophy, University of J. J. Strossmayer in Osijek, Croatia.
The Hidden Author: Forms of Authors' "I" at the Early Modern Front Pages
15.30 – 16.00 Coffee Break
16.00 – 18.00: Group Work on Lecture Topics
Group Work A
Professor **Anne J. Gilliland.** Research Trends in Archival and Manuscript Studies
Group Work B
Associate Professor **Warren C. Brown**. Manuscripts and the Past in Early Medieval Europe: the Case of Lay People and Documents
Group Work D
Assistant Professor **Zoran Velagić** & Research Assistant **Marijana Tomić**, PhD Student, University of Zagreb, Croatia
The Hidden Author: Forms of Authors' "I" at the Early Modern Front Pages

TUESDAY, 29 SEPTEMBER 2009

Topic II: Old Book as a Topic for Research and Bibliography
9.00 – 10.00
Professor **Neven Budak,** PhD, History Department, Faculty of Philosophy, Zagreb, Croatia
The Advancement of Literacy in Medieval Croatia/Dalmatia and Slavonia: 12th to 14th century: examples of Dubrovnik, Split, and Zagreb
10.00 – 10.30 Coffee Break
10.30 – 11.30
David Shaw, PhD, Canterbury, UK
Who Owned This Book? Electronic Databases of Provenance Names
11.30 – 12.30
Eve Netchine, Bibliothèque nationale de France, Paris, France
Bibliography of Publishers' Catalogues: Description of a Collection of Ephemera (1473-1810)
13.00 – 14.30: Lunch Break
14.30 – 15.30
Assistant Professor **Jelena Lakuš**, PhD, Department of Information Sciences, Faculty of Philosophy, University of J. J. Strossmayer in Osijek, Croatia
Old Books and Bibliography: Dalmatina
15.30 – 16.00: Coffee Break
16.00 – 18.00: Group Work on Lecture Topics
Group Work A
Professor **Neven Budak**. The Advancement of Literacy in Medieval Croatia/Dalmatia and Slavonia: 12th to 14th century: examples of Dubrovnik, Split, and Zagreb
Group Work B
David Shaw, PhD. Who Owned This Book? Electronic Databases of Provenance Names
Group Work C
Eve Netchine. Bibliography of Publishers' Catalogues: Description of a Collection of Ephemera (1473-s1810)
Group Work D
Assistant Professor **Jelena Lakuš**. Old Books and Bibliography: Dalmatina

WEDNESDAY, 30 SEPTEMBER 2009

Topic III: New Conceptual Models for Information Organization
9.00 – 10.00
Associate Professor **Mirna Willer**, PhD, University of Zadar, Department of Library and Information Science, Croatia
Conceptual Model for Authority Data: FRAD (*Functional Requirements for Authority Data*) and its Application for Old Books
10.00 – 10.30 Coffee Break
10.30 – 11.30
Dr **Claudia Fabian,** Bayerische Staatsbibliothek, Münich, Germany
Authority Data in a European Context

11.30 – 12.30
Gordon Dunsire, Centre for Digital Library Research, University of Strathclyde, Glasgow, UK
RDA (*Resource Description and Access*) and its Application to Rare Books, Manuscripts, and Their Digital Surrogates
13.00 – 14.30: Lunch Break
14.30 – 15.30
David Shaw, PhD, Consortium of European Research Libraries (CERL), London, UK
Presentation - CERL Hand Press Book Database & CERL Portal: Cross-searching of Catalogues of European Manuscript Materials
15.30 – 16.00: Coffee Break
16.00 – 18.00: Group Work on Lecture Topics
Group Work A
Gordon Dunsire & Associate Professor **Mirna Willer**. Applying RDA to Rare Books, Manuscripts and their Digital Surrogates Using UNIMARC Formats for Bibliographic and Authority Data
Group Work B
Dr **Claudia Fabian** & **David Shaw**, PhD. Authority Data in a European Context: Using CERL Thesaurus

THURSDAY, 1 OCTOBER 2009

Topic IV: Conservation and Preservation of Written Cultural Heritage
9.00 – 10.00
Professor **Anne J. Gilliland**, PhD, UCLA, Department of Information Studies, USA
Preservation, Description and Access Concerns for Archives and Manuscript Materials in a Digital World
10.00 – 10.30 Coffee Break
10.30 – 11.30
Tinka Katić, MA, National and University Library in Zagreb, Zagreb, Croatia
Identification, Registration and Collection Level Description for Old Books
11.30 – 12.30
Associate Professor **Damir Hasenay**, PhD, Department of Information Sciences, Faculty of Philosophy, University of J. J. Strossmayer in Osijek, Croatia
Preservation and Conservation of Old Books
13.00 – 14.30: Lunch Break
14.30 – 15.30
Assistant Professor **Neven Jovanović**, PhD, Department of Classical Philology, Faculty of Philosophy, Zagreb, Croatia
Digitizing Croatian Latin Writers
15.30 – 16.00: Coffee Break
16.00 – 18.00: Group Work on Lecture Topics
Group Work A
Professor **Anne J. Gilliland.** Preservation, Description and Access Concerns for Archives and Manuscript Materials in a Digital World

Group Work B
Tinka Katić. Identification, Registration and Collection Level Description for Old Books
Group Work C
Associate Professor **Damir Hasenay**, Research Assistent **Maja Krtalić**, MA, PhD Student, University of Zadar, Croatia & **Iva Gobić Vitolović**, PhD Student, University of Ljubljana, Slovenia. Preservation and Conservation of Old Books
Group Work D
Assistant Professor **Neven Jovanović**. Digitizing Croatian Latin Writers

FRIDAY, 2 OCTOBER 2009

Day V: Old Book Collection Management
9.00 – 10.30: Workshop. Part I
Laila Miletic-Vejzovic, MA, Head, Special Collections and University Archives, University of Central Florida, Orlando, Fl, USA
Collection Management of Special Collections Material: Emphasis on Digital Projects
10.30 – 11.00 Coffee Break
11.00 – 12.30: Workshop. Part II
Laila Miletic-Vejzovic, MA, Head, Special Collections and University Archives, University of Central Florida, Orlando, USA
Collection Management of Special Collections Material: Emphasis on Digital Projects
12.30 – 14.00: Lunch
14.00 – 15.00
Introduction to the topic of the following summer school: Summer School in the Study of Manuscripts
14.00 – 15.00
Assistant Professor **Miljenko Lončar**, PhD, Department for Classical Philology, University of Zadar, Zadar, Croatia
Ancient Manuscripts in Zadar
15.00 – 16.00
Professor **Erich Renhart**, PhD, Karl-Franzens-University of Graz, VESTIGIA – Manuscript Research Centre, Austria
Tracing our Written Heritage: Challenges, Perspectives, Questions
16.00 – Closing of the Summer School followed by Coffee & Cakes

SATURDAY, 3 OCTOBER 2009

Excursion

LIST OF LECTURERS AND PARTICIPANTS

Name and surname	E-mail address	Institution	Fields of interest	PhD programme
Andreja Antonina	andreja.antonina@gmail.com	University of Zadar, University Library, Zadar, Croatia	old books, classical philology, conservation and preservation of old books	
Anita Bartulović	anita73@net4u.hr	University of Zadar, Departement for Classical Philology, Zadar, Croatia	medieval notary, manuscripts	PhD student – Medieval Studies, University of Zagreb, Croatia
Warren C. Brown	wcb@hss.caltech.edu	California Institute of Technology, Pasadena, Ca, USA	manuscripts, medieval history, codicology	
Neven Budak	nbudak@ffzg.hr	University of Zagreb, Faculty of Philosophy, History Department, Zagreb, Croatia	medieval history	
Mirko Duić	miduic@unizd.hr	University of Zadar, Departement of Library and Information Science, Zadar, Croatia	digital archives, cultural heritage	PhD student – Knowledge Society and the Transfer of Information, University of Zadar, Croatia
Gordon Dunsire	g.dunsire@strath.ac.uk	University of Strathclyde, Centre for Digital Library Research, Glasgow, UK	bibliographic organization, metadata	
Claudia Fabian	claudia.fabian@bsb-muenchen.de	Bayerische Staatsbibliothek, München, Germany	authority data, cataloguing	
Kristina Feldvari	kfeldvari@ffos.hr	University of J. J. Strossmayer in Osijek, Faculty of Philosophy, Department of Information Sciences, Osijek, Croatia	subject analysis, indexing, thesauri, descriptive and subject cataloguing	PhD student – Knowledge Society and the Transfer of Information, University of Zadar, Croatia

Name and surname	E-mail address	Institution	Fields of interest	PhD programme
Drahomira Gavranović	dgavrano@unizd.hr	University of Zadar, Departement of Library and Information Science, Zadar, Croatia	information organization (classification and subject headings systems), indexing and information retrieval, history of indexing in old books	PhD student – Knowledge Society and the Transfer of Information, University of Zadar, Croatia
Anne J. Gilliland	gilliland@gseis.ucla.edu,	UCLA, Department of Information Studies, Graduate School of Education and Information Studies, Information Studies & Moving Image Archive Studies, Los Angeles, Ca, USA	archival studies, manuscript studies, metadata for preservation and access	
Iva Gobić Vitolović	iva.gobic@pu.t-com.hr	State Archives in Rijeka, Department for Conservation and Restoration, Croatia		PhD student – Academy of Fine Arts, Studies in Restoration of Book Bindings, Ljubljana, Slovenia
Damir Hasenay	dhasenay@ffos.hr	University of J. J. Strossmayer in Osijek, Faculty of Philosophy, Department of Information Sciences, Osijek, Croatia	preservation of written heritage, preservation management	
Emil Hilje	ehilje@unizd.hr	University of Zadar, Department of Art History, Zadar, Croatia	art history, archival studies	
Neven Jovanović	neven.jovanovic@ffzg.hr	University of Zagreb, Faculty of Philosophy, Department of Classical Philology, Zagreb, Croatia	classical philology, digitization, medieval studies	

Name and surname	E-mail address	Institution	Fields of interest	PhD programme
Tinka Katić	tkatic@nsk.hr	National and University Library in Zagreb, Zagreb, Croatia	bibliographic organization, old and rare books, heritage collections	
Andrej Kristek	a_kristek@net.hr	Secondary School in Tourism and Related Services, Osijek, Croatia	book history, reading interests and habits, ex libris, autorship, monastery libraries, private libraries and collections	PhD student – Knowledge Society and the Transfer of Information, University of Zadar, Croatia
Maja Krtalić	mkrtalic@ffos.hr	University of J. J. Strossmayer in Osijek, Faculty of Philosophy, Department of Information Sciences, Osijek, Croatia	preservation of written heritage, preservation management	PhD student – Knowledge Society and the Transfer of Information, University of Zadar, Croatia
Jelena Lakuš	jlakus@ffos.hr	University of J. J. Strossmayer in Osijek, Faculty of Philosophy, Department of Information Sciences, Osijek, Croatia	history, bibliography	
Alisa Martek	amartek@arhiv.hr	Croatian State Archives, Zagreb, Croatia	old books, evaluation and preservation of old books, digitization and access on the Internet	PhD student – Information Studies, University of Zagreb, Croatia
Mirela Menges	mmenges@ffzg.hr	University of Zagreb, Faculty of Philosophy, Library, Zagreb, Croatia	cataloguing and preservation of old and rare books	
Linda Mijić	mijic.linda@gmail.com	University of Zadar, Departement for Classical Philology, Zadar, Croatia	medieval Latin, notariate	PhD student – Medieval Studies, University of Zagreb, Croatia

Name and surname	E-mail address	Institution	Fields of interest	PhD programme
Laila Miletić-Vejzović	lmiletic@mail.ucf.edu	University of Central Florida, Special Collections and University Archives, Orlando, Fl, USA	special collections, archival studies	
Ivan Missoni	ivan.missoni@yahoo.com		history, medieval history, Croatian history	PhD student – Medieval Studies, University of Zagreb, Croatia
Eve Netchine	eve.netchine@bnf.fr	Bibliothèque nationale de France, Paris, France	publisher's catalogues, book history	
Vera Pandurov	vera.pandurov@gmail.com	Primary School Split 3, Library, Split, Croatia	book history, cultural heritage, organization and preservation of old and rare books	PhD student – Knowledge Society and the Transfer of Information, University of Zadar, Croatia
Ivana Pribramska	pribrami@gmail.com	Charles University in Prague, Institute of Information Studies and Librarianship, Faculty of Arts, Prague, Czech Republic	printing and publishing, printers vs. publishers, different roles in book publishing, book distribution chain and its changes, book marketing, readers and readership, information systems in higher education, digital libraries, information seeking behaviour	PhD student – Information Science, Charles University in Prag, Czech Republic
Branka Radić	branka.radic@xnet.hr	University of Split, Library, Split, Croatia	musicology in library science	PhD student – Knowledge Society and the Transfer of Information, University of Zadar, Croatia

Name and surname	E-mail address	Institution	Fields of interest	PhD programme
Erich Renhart	erich.renhart@ uni-graz.at	University of Graz, Graz, Austria	manuscripts of the Latin, Syriac and Armenian traditions, manuscript fragments	
Siniša Runjaić	srunjaic@ihjj.hr	Institute of Croatian Language and Linguistics, Zagreb, Croatia	Croatian language, history of the language, linguistics	PhD student – History and Dialectology of Croatian Language, University of Rijeka, Croatia
Martin Seidler	martin.seidler@ gmx.net	University of Graz, Graz, Austria	ancient manuscripts, especially Syriac and Armenian liturgies	Graduate student – University of Graz, Austria
David Shaw	david@djshaw. co.uk	Canterbury, UK	book history, provenance information	
Alenka Šauperl	alenka.sauperl@ ff.uni-lj.si	University of Ljubljana, Faculty of Arts, Department of Library and Information Science and Book Studies, Ljubljana, Slovenia	old books, old cataloguing principles	Faculty
Marijana Špoljarić	mspoljar@gmail. com	City and University Library in Osijek, Osijek, Croatia	organization of information, cataloguing of old and rare books	PhD student – Knowledge Society and the Transfer of Information, University of Zadar, Croatia
Jasna Tingle	jasna.tingle@ carnet.hr	E-learning Academy, Zagreb, Croatia	education, e-learning, information technology in working with old sources	PhD student – Knowledge Society and the Transfer of Information, University of Zadar, Croatia

Name and surname	E-mail address	Institution	Fields of interest	PhD programme
Marijana Tomić	mtomic@unizd.hr	University of Zadar, Departement of Library and Information Science, Zadar, Croatia	book history, medieval studies, cataloguing of old and rare books, new models of cataloguing, monastery libraries	PhD student – Medieval Studies, University of Zagreb, Croatia
Nada Topić	ntop@net.hr	Solin City Library, Solin, Croatia	organization of information in heritage institutions	PhD student – Knowledge Society and the Transfer of Information, University of Zadar, Croatia
Željko Vegh	zeljko.vegh@kgz.hr	Zagreb City Libraries, Zagreb, Croatia	bibliographic description of old and rare books, Croatian national heritage in monastery libraries	
Zoran Velagić	zvelagic@ffos.hr	University of J. J. Strossmayer in Osijek, Faculty of Philosophy, Department of Information Sciences, Osijek, Croatia	book history, publishing	
Bernd Wegscheider	bernd.wegscheider@gmx.at	University of Graz, Graz, Austria	ancient Syriac manuscripts, Eastern Christian liturgies	Graduate student – University of Graz, Austria
Mirna Willer	mwiller@unizd.hr	University of Zadar, Departement of Library and Information Science, Zadar, Croatia	bibliographic organization, theory of alphabetical catalogue, bibliographic conceptual models, standards	

INDEX

N

O

P

R

S

Š

Compiled by Drahomira Gavranović

Grafičko oblikovanje
Ljubica Marčetić Marinović

Priprema za tisak
Denis Gospić

Tisak
Naklada
200

Graphic design
Ljubica Marčetić Marinović

Computer processing and layout
Denis Gospić

Printed by
Issued by
200